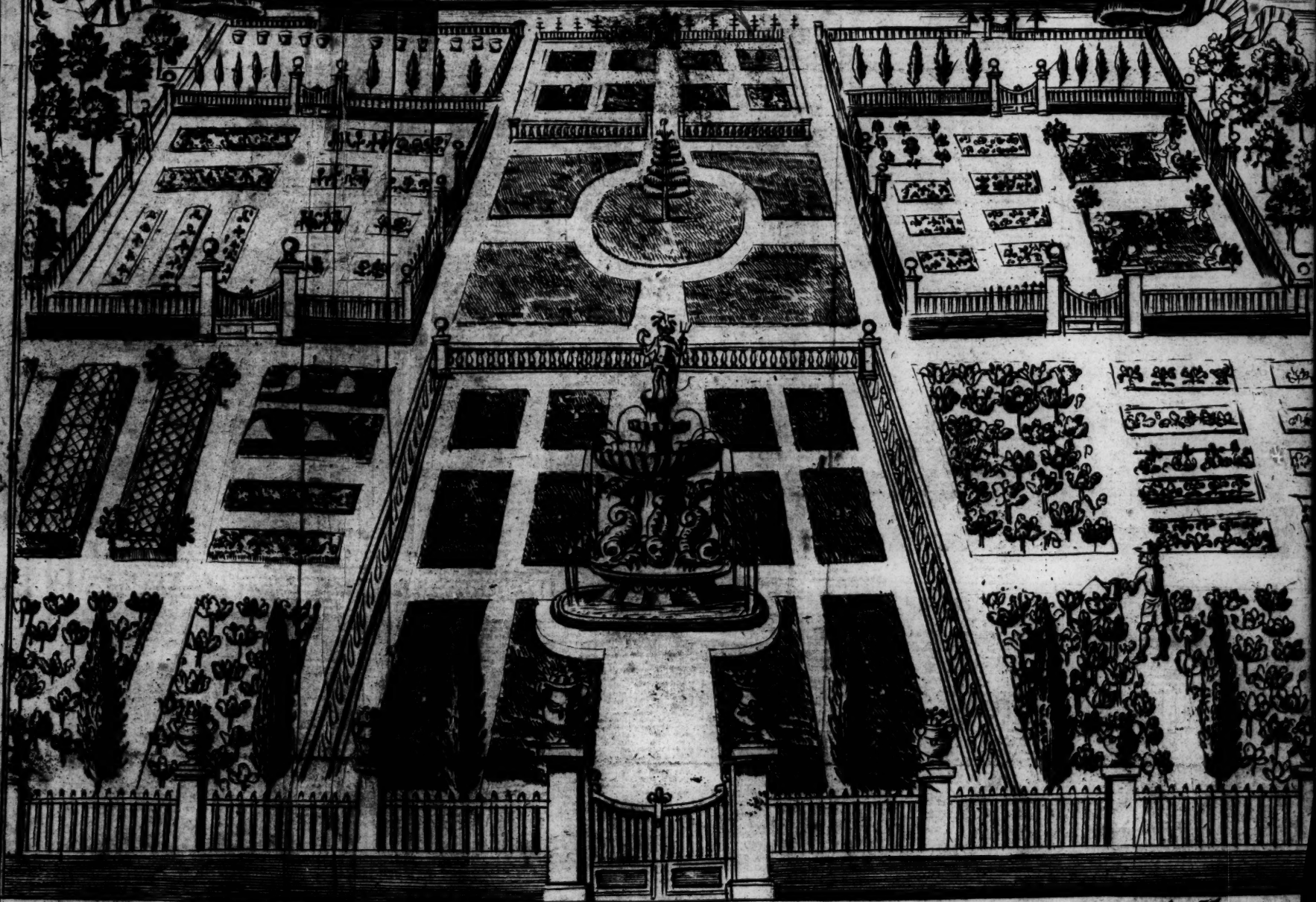


*The new Art of Gardening, with  
the Gardeners Almanack.*



London Printed for Henry Nelme at the Leg and Star in Cornhill.





The New ART of  
**GARDENING,**  
WITH THE

*Gardener's Almanack :*

CONTAINING

The true Art of **GARDENING** in  
all its Particulars.

I. The Site of a proper Plat of Ground, for planting Fruit-Trees; with the Manner of Planting, Grafting, Imbudding, Inoculating; and Ordering all Sorts of Fruit-Trees, and Fruits in all Seasons.

The Art of making Cyder, Perry, and Wines of divers Sorts of Fruits.

II. Of the Kitchen-Garden, and what things are proper to be done in it, as to Herbs, Plants, Roots, Berries, Fruits, &c.

III. Of the Flower-Garden; how to order it, and rear choice Flowers, Slips, Layers, sow Seeds, make Off-Sets; and plant them in their proper Earths, Seasons, and due Waterings; with the Names, and Description of the most Material ones.

IV. Of Greens, how to order and preserve them; with Rules for the Conservatory, and Green-House.

To each Head is added an Almanack, shewing what is to be done every Month in the Year.

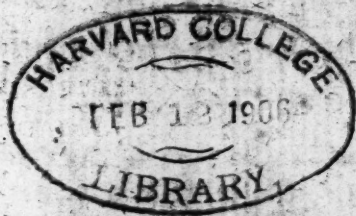
By **LEONARD MEAGER.**

**L O N D O N :**

Printed for Henry Nelme, at the *Teg and Star*, over-  
against the *Royal-Exchange* in *Cornehill*. 1697.



~~V. 6491~~  
Jan 23 16.97



Price Greenleaf fund

---

---

THE  
PREFACE  
TO THE  
READER.

**G**ardening, and the pleasant Delights of a curious Orchard, has been the Delight of many great Persons, and wise Men of all Ages; who have therein contemplated the Wonders of God in Nature, and refreshed their Minds, as well as solaced their Bodies: There, by the help of Art, the Hand-maid to Nature, are produced such things as are highly worthy of Admiration, whilst the travelling Sun labours to impregnate the Earth with a kindly Heat, and enables her to produce such various Kinds of Fruits, Herbs, Plants, Flowers, Shrubs, &c. of different Kinds, Tastes, Colours, Scents, Shapes, and Virtues; ravishing to the Eye, pleasing to the Taste, and Smell, and nourishing to the Body, all which taking with admirable Delight, should incite Men not only to covet them, but to labour in moderate Exercise for improving and propagating them.

A Method, to do which, I have in this Book laid down, the better to invite the Ingenious, and Industrious, to what must needs yield them a great Measure of Pleasure and Profit, having laboured in every thing to advance this Art, as near as may be to its highest Perfection,



## The PREFACE, &c.

*Elion, omitting nothing that can be grateful to my Countrymen, as to what relates to Fruit-Trees in all their Particulars; ordering Fruit when ripe, and making curious Liquors, and Wines of them.*

*Also every thing that is proper in the Kitchen-Garden, Flower-Garden, and Green-House, not only as to English, but Out-Landish Fruits, Herbs, Plants, Flowers, curious Perennial-Greens, and others; Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Aloes, and every thing that is proper, for even a Royal Garden, to delight the greatest Princes, as well as Nobles, Gentlemen, and private Persons; with Monthly Observations upon every Particular, throughout the whole, never so exactly done in any Work yet Extant: Taken from long Experience, and upon the Judgment of those that are Practisers in this Art; some for their Pleasure more than Gain, and others, who imploy themselves therein, for Annual advantage: Having considered all things for making a compleat Gardener, either to serve himself or others, and be grateful to Gentlemen, and Ladies, who are curious in these Matters, worthy of all Persons Care, of what Degree soever.*

*A good Orchard and Garden, by all prudent Physicians, are held much to contribute to the Health, as well as Pleasure of those that often frequent them in their refreshing Walks and Umbrages. Herein likewise, I have given Directions to make in the newest Method, Knots, Borders, Walks, Green-plats, Arbours, Hot-beds, preparing Manure of all Sorts, and ordering every thing in its proper Season.*

*Reader, May the Book seller have so much Profit in the selling it, and thou the same Pleasure and Profit in buying it, that has accrued to me by Collecting, and Experience therein; I am thine to serve.*

LEONARD MEAGER.

---

The New A R T of  
**GARDENING,**  
WITH THE

Gardiner's *Almanack*:

in what is necessary for the well Ordering  
of Orchards and Gardens, &c.

---

*the Introduction; or an Incitement to  
the Planting, and well ordering Or-  
chards, and Gardens.*

**A**S Orchards and Gardens are exceeding pleasant,  
and desirable for Sight and Beauty, when  
well and seasonably ordered, so they like-  
wise bring with them large Advantages, by  
an extraordinary way of Improving Lands to a vast  
value, even to Twenty Fold in a few Years, in well  
manuring, Cultivating, and other good Management,  
which our Ancestors have enriched Posterity, in leav-  
ing behind them Orchards Planted with stately and be-  
autifully planted Trees, whose Example minds us of  
imitation, that succeeding Ages may know our Industry,  
what we leave in this Nature, as lasting Monuments  
and us.



## 2 The New Art of Gardening,-

Kings, Princes, and the wisest Men of all Ages, have some or other of them, taken singular Delight in this Exercise of Planting, Setting, Sowing, and what else is requisite in the well ordering of *Orchards*, and *Gardens*, and rejoiced to see the Fruits of their Labour. *Solomon* among the many Toyls of State and Affairs of his Kingdom, took exceeding delight in it, and to study the Works of Nature; so that 'tis said of him, he knew the Use and Virtue of all Plants, even from the Shrub to the Cedar; that is, from the smallest to the greatest.

The Planting of Trees for the bearing various kinds of Fruits, is undoubtedly one of the greatest Improvements that can be made of a considerable part of our English Soil, as *Worcestershire*, *Kent*, *Gloucestershire*, *Heresfordshire*, and other places can plentifully testify, and this is more Universal than any other Improvement, because most Land will bear one sort or other of Fruit-Trees, Herbs, Plants, Flowers, and such things as Ornamentally, or Profitably, are to accomodate *Orchards*, or *Gardens*, for the Pleasure and Sustenance of Man.

As for the Charge of raising and planting Fruit-Trees, considering the Years they may stand, and the continual Encrease, I look upon it as Trivial, considering the Recompence they will soon make, besides the abundance of Pleasure it must be to any generous and active Mind, to see flourishing Trees of his own Setting, and peaceably enjoy himself in Contemplation, under the cooling Shades of their spreading Branches, to admire and adore the wonderful Goodness of God, in giving such Virtue to the Earth, for the producing rare and various kinds of things conducing to the Food and Pleasure of Man. And that it must be of singular use on sundry occasions, as appears by God's first placing Man in a Garden, which himself had caused to spring up, and bear Fruits, as the fittest place for the Reception of him, even in his State of Innocency; and no doubt, *Adam* was exceedingly grieved to part with it, when his Disobedience had forfeited the Possession.

## With the Gardiner's Almanack. 3

These, and many other things I might urge, to promote this part of Industry, accompanied with so much pleasure, and Profit; but designing this only as an Introduction to the Practical part, which immediately follows in all its Generals, and Particulars, so that nothing useful, or necessary, being omitted, I shall not detain you longer from entering, as it were into (If I may so term it) another Earthly Paradise, where every thing Smiles, and looks Gay to the Imagination, even in Reading. How much more then will it exhilarate the Mind, when by Practice it is enjoyed in its Perfection, and flourishes to gratifie the Sight, Taste, and smell of the Beholder, with a fair Prospect, pleasant smells, and fragrant Flowers, wherein Nature is refined by Art.

---

### CHAP. I.

*Of the good Site of a piece of Ground, intended for an Orchard, &c.*

**T**HE Site, or standing of an Orchard greatly advantages it, that the Sun and free Air may have power over it, and yet so well defended with Shelter, that Storms and bleak Winds may be in a great measure kept from injuring it; and this good Site or standing will help even a bad Soil.

The best Site I account to be in plain Ground, lying not so low, as the wet and dampness may too much infect it; nor so high as to lye lyable to too much dryness, the injury of Storms, or sharp Air to nip the tender branches, and Buds; high Grounds are not naturally fertile, and if they be Manured with Dung, the Rains a little time wash down the fatness, and leave them poor, so that the one part will have over-much, and the other grow sterile for want of it; and it will be



## 4 The New Art of Gardening,

convenient it be sheltered with wild Trees round the  
Verges of a good growth, if possible, that they may  
break the turbulent Wind, especially the South-West  
and North-West Winds, which are usually violent in  
March, and September, when the Air is free from e  
stream Heat, or Colds; and a fitter place cannot be ch  
sen for an Orchard, if it may be done, than on a cur  
ous Level by a River side, or some pleasant Brook, n  
too near a Marsh, or Moory Grounds, whence frequen  
ly Fogs and Mists arise, which hinder the growth of t  
Plants, and much injure them by ingendering poy  
nous, or infectious Air, at certain Seasons.

The Suns long lying on the Trees greatly refresh and  
enliven them in Winter, as well as Summer; let it  
therefore so chosen, that it may not be destitute of t  
Morning and Evening Sun at any time when it shine  
and this appears by such Trees as are placed again  
Walls, where the refracted Beams give a greater heat  
make them Blossom, and Leaf very early, and to spre  
their Branches so Luxuriant, that they require often c  
ting; or they take up so much Sap, as not only hinde  
the Fruit in growth, but in kindly ripening, as shall  
more plainly shewed in the Progress of this necessa  
Work.

---

## C H A P. II.

*What Soil is most fit for an Orchard, and  
ordering it in that kind.*

**W**HEN you have found a proper and commo  
ous Site for Planting of Fruit-Trees, then  
quire into the Nature of the Soil, and though Fru  
Trees will grow in almost all Soils, yet they will  
undantly better thrive in one sort than in another;  
Apple, Pear, red and white Plumb, Philbert, Da

## With the Gardiner's Limbeck. 5

bully Barbery, and the like, require a black, fat, and yellow, and clean tempered Soil, wherein they may gather plenty of good Sap.

W<sup>e</sup> The Soil may be bettered by digging, breaking, and well melting, being cast up, or laid level, which with a little Dung, destroys those Weeds that are Enemies to Plants: If the Ground be much over-grown with Weeds, or subject to any Incumbrances of the like Nature, then pare up the Surface with the Roots of them, lay them in heaps to dry, with a hollownes underneath like an Oven, or Furnace, and when by turning, the Air and Sun have passed on them, that they are pretty dry, put dry Fuel amongst them, and burn the Weeds and Earth, then break the Chumpers, and scatter them with the Ashes over the Ground, and they will prove good Manure; then sprinkle a small sprinkling of fine sea-cole-ashes, or unsacked Lime, and when the Rain has pretty well soaked them in, dig up the Ground, and scratch it with a little Dung, and if it be indifferent good Soil, it will be excellent for the Production of Fruit-Trees, and if your Orchard be subject to dryness in extreme Droughts, it will be very advantageous, if it be so lye, that by Sluces you can over-flow it with Water twice in the Summer, and let the Water pass over it twenty four Hours, and then draw it off; and fine Grass growing in an Orchard, keeps the Ground very moist, but let it not grow thick about the Roots of the Trees, lest it breed Motes, shelter Vermine, to injure them, or they be prejudiced by keeping the heat of the Sun from them, for the Sun's coming to the Root is an enlivener of the Tree. It is not proper to dig very near Fruit-Trees that are well grown, unless by a careful and skilful Hand, for fear of cutting, or wounding the Roots that spread in the Ground, which often makes the Trees languish, abate of their growth, and yield less Fruit.

The Crust of the Earth tempered with Heat, Cold, and Moisture, is a great helper to Trees, for in that they chiefly spread their Roots, especially those parts that mostly suck in, and send up the Sap, and this is in some

some Soil Eighteen Inches, and in others less ; for lower the Ground is not so fertile.

### CH A P. III.

*Quantity of Ground, and Shape, manner of Fencing, and other Matters tending to the preservation of your Orchard.*

**A**S for the quantity of Ground to be employed in an Orchard, I account the larger the better, for the Trees growing up, fence each other ; and if the Verge be blasted, the rest are frequently sheltered as well from it as the Winds shaking down the Fruit when ripe, or hurting the Trees when young, by loosening their Roots ; but the proportion of Ground I cannot limit, because it must be according to Conveniency, the Planter's Ability, or Pleasure ; and in the same manner I must in general leave the Form to his Discretion, for that which pleases one, another dislikes ; some Round, some Square, some Triangular, others Long ; and indeed, Plots of Ground cannot be every where exactly chosen, but they must be contrived as they fall out, to the best advantage.

As for Fencing, in this you must be diligent, as well to preserve your Fruit from Thieves, as Trees from Spoil, by the breaking in of Cattle, and likewise that it may be a good shelter to the young Plants ; Stone Walls, where Stone is plenty, may be cheaply raised, or those of Brick ; but above all, I recommend a good thick and well-grown Quickset of white Thorne, and thickening Brambles ; black Thorne, or dwarf Shrubs at the bottom, especially where Wall Fruit is not required ; and by skilful Setting, and Continuance, it will grow so thick, that it will be a great Security, more far than pales, Railes, or Walls of Earth ; and growing high,

## With the Gardiner's Almanack. 7

igh, it may on the top be cut with Shears, in Turf<sup>s</sup> and Pyramids, and become a pleasant Ornament to the Orchard: As for Walks, I shall describe them in that part of this Book, that particularly relates to Gardening; though in Orchards, curious green Walks kept short by Mowing, and Rowling in Summer, are of good Esteem; and such may be raised so above the common Surface, that the Wet may have little influence in staying on them, even in Winter, after a shower of Rain is past. A Mote or large wet Ditch round an Orchard is very serviceable, if it can be conveniently done, and continued with Water: But from these things I proceed to what comes somewhat nearer to my purpose, viz. The getting, ordering, and planting of Sets, &c.

---

### C H A P. IV.

*Sets, how to be Chosen and Ordered, either to grow up to Trees, or to be Grafted on, &c.*

**T**HE best and most usual kind of Sets are young Plants, which have been brought up in a Nursery, whether of Apples, Pears, Plumbs, or the like, having good Roots, for they are more certain than Slips; or such Suckers as were taken from the the Roots of grown Trees; and in removing them, get all the Root you can out of the Ground, for if a main part of the Root be lost, as some regard it not, then it follows, the Tree cannot thrive so well, though upon the transplanting, some of the Top be taken off; for the Root has a sympathy with the Branches, as to the greatness, or smallness; and when the Sap is straitned, or lessened, then is it that the Tree pines for want of its free Currency and Communication; and when you take up the Root, divest it not, as little as may be, of the Earth it grows in; for that, upon the transplanting, will be

## 3 The New Art of Gardening,

nourishing to it, till it become better acquainted with the new Ground. Too much Topping, or Stowing, approve not of, because it very much hinders the growth of the Tree; and when you cut off any Branches, do it upwards, that slanting, it may shoot off the Way and not any way rive or split; and if Clay, and fine sifted Horse Dung, or Cow Dung, were well mixed and clapped on the Cuts of the Branches, it would be very proper to keep them from the Cold and Wet, till they grow and begin to thrive, unless you intend these Plants for Grafting, and then you may let the Top grow till you cut the Stem for Inoculation, in which you shall hereafter be instructed, with all that is proper relating to it; and set these in Rows by a Line, in such Holes as you have prepared, laying the Earth then lightly upon them, after they are well placed in the Hole; and heap it higher than the Surface, that it may well settle by degrees, and keep the Tree from the Roots, being much shaken by the Wind; to which end, whilst the Trees are young, you must also use Stakes, or Poles well fixed in the Ground, fastned to the Plants, by Hay-bands, and some Moss, or soft thing claped between, to prevent the fretting that may accrue by the rattling, or shaking of the Wind.

Slips which some use, are not so good by much, to plant, for either many of them miss to take Root, or if they do, the Root being the main Wood, doats and rots in the Ground, when the Tree comes to growth, so that they are but of short continuance, or at leastways, will but weakly bare, and those chiefly in Apple-Trees; yet a Bur-knot kindly taken from an Apple-Tree, is much better and surer, and this you must cut close at the Roots end, a handful under the Knot, then cut away all the Twigs, except the main one, and set it deep in the Ground, that it may only rise a little above the Surface, and it will shoot up, and become a good Stock, especially for Grafting on, if you like not the Fruit otherways.

As



## With the Gardiner's Almanack. 9

As for large Fruit-Trees, there is danger in transplanting them, for many times they do not thrive, by reason of the injury they receive in the Roots; for if some of the lesser Spurns take, they generally do not all; so that the Body not having sufficient Nourishment, the Heart grows blackish, or of a yellowish colour, and many times, though they bring forth fair Blossoms, they have not strength enough to form their Fruit in the natural Perfection.

It has been Experimented, that a Bough has been taken from a thriving Tree of a good bigness, and grown to be a Tree, the manner thus: Take off the Bark in a round Circle, when the Sap is in it, and make a Mortar of Clay, fine Earth, and a little Dung, and clap on the bare place, to the bigness of a Foot-ball, and let it lye till the Sap descends to the Root of the Tree; then cut off the Bough slanting on the heither side of the Mortar next to the Tree, and immediately put it into good Ground, the Mortar and all, and cover it up close, water it sometimes, and if this be done in *October*, it will take Root, and shoot forth in the Spring; and if these stand, they need not be Grafted on, but will bear good Fruit of their own.

You may Sow the Kernels, or Nuts of Trees in Nurseries, and when they come up, shelter and keep them warm, and in time they will afford you good Stocks, and Plants, either to bear of themselves, or to Graft on; though Suckers taken from the Roots of Trees, grow faster than these, till they get a Head; but above all, beware that Cattle come not into your Plantations, or Nurseries, to destroy them.

You may lay young Scions in the Ground, where many sprout from one Master-top, when cut near the Earth; and by keeping them down with Sods, one end being at liberty, and growing upward, they will be apt to take Root, and so you may have four or five out of one in a little time, and this is called a running Plant. As for the buying of Sets ready Grafted, you may mainly be deceived in them, as having only anothers Work, what manner of Fruit they are, and so you may be a

10      **The Memo Art of Gardening,**

most Cost and Labour about the worst Trees, besides it hinders the Experience you may gain, in raising and ordering them to the many singular Advantages.

---

**CHAP. V.**

*Proper times for Planting and Removeing;  
with the manner of Setting the distance,  
and placing of Trees, &c.*

**W**HEN you have made choice of your Sets, the ground being ready for Transplanting, the next thing to be considered, is the time this is most proper to be done in; and this I account to be soon after the fall of the Leaf, in or about the change of the Moon, when the Sap is most quiet, for then it is about turning; but upon occasion it may be done all Winter, in open weather, and early in the Spring, when the Buds are just putting out; though as I have said, the sooner you remove them in Winter, it is the better; some indeed do remove them before the Sap is at a stand, or about the turn, that is, in *Autumn*, before the Leafs are falling, but this I hold not so good; and were it not for the sake of brevity, could give you here many convinceing reasons to the contrary.

In setting, make the Holes sufficiently large to receive the Roots, and more, that they may have nothing at first to contend with, but the tender Mould; shake that you have dug out, lightly in, when the Plant is conveniently placed, and in the mean while let another move the Plant, that the Earth may fill into the cranies, and settle better about the Root, so press it gently down, that the Plant may be well fixed, and in a dry Season water it, which being a settlement of the Earth, will make it take the sooner. As for the distance of Trees, you must consider the nature of them,

## With the Gardiner's Almanack. 11

as to what greatness in time they may grow, how spread their Branches; as the Apple-Tree (or aspire more upright than the Pear-Tree) if they be such as you intend shall continually stand; for if they too much drop upon one another, or the Boughs are galled by fretting or rubbing, then injury comes thereby, and the underling Trees that are overshadowed, will be stunted and spoyled; and therefore according as you conjecture their growth may be, so place them, and the Sun and free Air coming in among them, will make them thrive the better, and this distance must be as far as you conceive two Trees can spread their Boughs when grown up.

As for the placing them, let Philberts, Damfens, Bullifs, and such like, the lower Trees, stand on the outside, next the fencing: Your Cherries and choice Plums, for the Sun the sooner to ripen them, may be planted in the openest places; your Apples, Pears, and Quinces, in the most substantial places of the Orchard, possessing the best Soil. The Trees of greatest growth may be planted further from the Sun, and those of the lesser nearer to the South, that they may not be a hindrance to one another but all receive warmlike: As for the Wardens and Winter Pears growing high, they will do very well Northward, because being hard latter Fruit, they ripen leasurely, and the blasts cannot hurt them: As for the Medlers, Services, Pomgranets, Citrons, and such Trees, though they are not often seen in Orchards, yet they are very graceful and pleasant, and must be planted where the Sun has great power, and free from the dropping of other Trees: Almond-Trees are hardy and will bear the blasts, but not give their Fruit kindly, unless well sheltered: Set the Walnut-Trees on the highest ground, if it may be without overshadowing others.

C H A P.

# The New Art of Gardening;

## C H A P. VI.

### *General Directions for the right Ordering, Keeping and preserving of an Orchard.*

**T**H E first thing that will be required, as most necessary for an Orchard, will be Dunging and Watering; for the Fruit-Trees, a very few of them being only to be excepted, require these; and herein you must also be careful that you do it not in the heat of the Sun; and that your Dung be neither too new nor too old; neither must it be laid close to the foot of the Tree, but a little distance off, that the fatness of the Dung may be drunk in of the Root: Pidgeons dung, and Hoggs dung, do also heal the hurts and wounds of Trees: The water where-with we water them, must not be Fountain water, or Well water, if other may be had; but drawn from some muddy Lake, or standing Pool. Moreover, you must be sure that your Trees stand a good distance asunder, that when they are grown up, they may have room enough to spread, and that the small and tender be not hurt of the greater, neither by shadow nor dropping. The nature also of the Soil, is herein much to be regarded; for a Hill requireth to have them stand nearer together; in windy places you must set them the thicker: you must set your Plants in such a manner that the tops be not hurt, or bruised, or the Bark, or Rind flawed off; for the Bark being taken away round about it, killeth any kind of Tree. You must also have a regard of the shadow, what Trees it helpeth, and what Trees it hurteth. The Walnut-Tree, the Pitch-Tree, the Firr-Tree, whatsoever they shadow, they injure; the Pine-Tree with his shadow likewise destroys young Plants, but they do resist the wind, and therefore good to inclose Vineyards: The Cypress, his shadow is very small, and spreadeth not far, and therefore it may safely enough grow amongst

Vines.

## With the Gardiner's Almanack. 13

Vines, and so for many others; the dropping of all Trees is naught, but worst of all those, whose Branches grow so that the water cannot readily pass through: For the drops of the Pine, the Oak, and the Martholme, are most hurtful, in whose company you may also take the Wallnut: Moreover pruning and cutting is very good and necessary for Trees, whereby the withered Boughs are cut away, and the unprofitable Branches taken off; but to prune them every Year is naught, though the Vine requireth cutting every year; so also the Myrtill, the Pomegranate and the Cherry, whereby they will sooner yield Fruit; the others must be seldom pruned; Cherry-Trees may be pruned in the fall of the Leaf, after the setting of the Seven-Stars: And first, they must be well dunged, and as a help against their hurts, you must cut down the old rotten Branches that grow in the midst, and such as grow thick, and are tangled together, and all the water-boughs, and unprofitable Branches about them: The old ones are to be cut close to the stock, from whence the new Springs will arise: Scarifying also and Launcing, is very wholesome for the Trees, when they screined with their Leafs, and dryness of their Barks; at which time use to launce the Bark with a sharp Knife, cutting it strait down in many places; which, what good it doth, appeareth by the opening of the Rind, which is straitways filled up with the body underneath; you must also trim and dress the Roots of your Trees after this manner; you must open the ground round about them, that they may be comforted with the warmth of the Sun, and the Rain, cutting away all the Roots that run upwards: The Trees that you remove may be marked which way they stood at the first: As *Virgil* expresses,

*And in the Bark they set a Sign,*

*To know which way the Tree did grow;*

*Which part did to the South incline,*

*And where the Northern blasts did blow.*

Also



## 14 The New Art of Gardening.

Also you must consider well the nature of the Soil, that you remove not out of a dry Ground, into moist, and from a barren Hill, to a moist Plain, and rather fat, then otherwise: The young Plants being thus removed, must in the second or third Year be pruned, leaving still about three or four Branches untouched, so shall they grow the better: Thus must you usually do every other year. The old Tree remove with the tops cut off, and the Roots unperished, which must be helped with often Dunging and watering: Apple-Trees that b'osome and bear no Fruit, or if it bear, they suddenly fall away, you shall remedy it by sitting of the Root, and thrusting in of a Stone or wooden Wedge; also if you water your Trees with Urine that is old, it helps them very much both for Fruitfulness and pleasantness of the Fruit; if the Tree decay by reason of the great heat of the Sun, you must raise the Earth about it, and water the Roots every Night, setting up some defence against the Sun. To cause their Fruit to be quickly Ripe, you must wet the little Roots with Vinegar, and Urine that is old, covering them again with Earth, and oft digging about them. The Urine of Men, if it be kept three or four Months, doth wonderfully much good to plants, and if you use it about Vines, or Apple-trees, it doth not only bring you great encrease, but also giveth an excellent Savour, both to the Fruit and Vine: You may also use the Mother of Oyl, such as is without Salt, to the same purpose, which both must speedily be used in Winter. As Frosts and Mists also do great harm to Trees, so you must arm your self with a Remedy against them; you must lay up round about your Orchard, little Faggots made of Stalks of rotten Boughs, or Straw, which, when that the Frosts and Mists arise, may be kindled, the Smoak whereof avoideth the Danger. You must stave also dry Dung amongst your Vines, which when the Frost is great, you may set on Fire; the Smoak whereof disperleth the Frost. When your Trees are sick, pour on the Roots the Lees of Wine mingled with water, and you may, if you please, sow Lupines round about them; the Water also wherein

## With the Gardiner's Almanack. 15

Lupines have been sod, and poured round about, which is very good for Apple-Trees; - If your Trees are troubled with Caterpillers or Worms, there are divers remedies; the juice of Wormwood destroyeth the Caterpillers; the Seeds or Grain that are steeped in the juice of Sengreen, or Housleek, are also excellent receipts against the Worms: Also Ashes mingled with the Mother of Oyl, or the Stale of an Ox, medled with the third part of Vinegar; moreover the Trees that are smoaked with Brimstone, or Lime, are safe from hurtful Vermin: Galbanum likewise burnt upon the Coals, driveth them away; the blades also of Garlick, the heads being off, so burnt (as the smoak may pass through the Orchard) doth destroy the Caterpillers; some mingle Soot with the Seeds, and sprinkle them with water.

---

## C H A P. VII.

*Rules and approved Directions for Grafting after the best and most thriving Method.*

**A**S for Grafting, it is accounted the nicest piece of Skill belonging to an Arborist or Gardener; but by good Instruction and Practice becomes easie, and is done with much success: The thing signifies the reforming the Fruit of one Tree with that of another, by an artificial transposing or transplanting of a Twig or Scion; a Bud or Leaf, commonly called a Graft, taken from one Tree of the same, or some other kind, and placed or put to or into another Tree, in one time or manner; and of these there are many kinds, but the chief in use, and most certain, are Grafting, Incising, Packing on, Grafting in the Scutcheon, or Inoculating.

## 16 The New Art of Gardening,

As for Grafting, when you undertake it, you must have a fine, thin, strong and sharp Saw, made and armed for that purpose, to saw the Plant off even without splitting or jaging the Bark; it may be done a foot above the Ground, or more, as the Plant is capable of yielding a sufficiency of Sap, and then smoothed with a very sharp Knife, let it be done where there is no knot, for that is best; then stay the stock very steady with your foot and leg, cleave it gently in the middle, with a fine sharp Cleaver, by forcing it down with the stroak of a Mallet, then open it with a Wedge of Wood, Bone or Iron, about six Inches, then having your Graft cut at the great end, in a tapering flatness, the Bark left on, on two thin sides of it, thrust it in gently, and let the Bark of the Graft, touch the Bark of the stock, and come even with it to the outward side, then take out your Wedge gently, and suffer the stock to close and compress the Graft; and having a fine mixture of Clay and Horse Dung, mould them like a Past, into the form of an Egg, then divide it in equal parts, and with both hands press it equally on the wound of the Graft and Stock, closing it firm together, that it may keep them warm, as also keep out the Air and Wet, till they can unite, and the Bark spread to cover the Wound; and thus, on a pretty large stock, you may place three or four Grafts of various Fruits, though it is proper they be of one kind, as Apples with Apples, Pears with Pears, and the like of others.

C H A P

C H A P. VIII.

*Times proper for Grafting; how to chuse the best Grafts; the way of keeping and ordering them.*

**T**H E best time for grafting and gathering of Grafts are proper to be known;

As to the first, of the best time for grafting, from the time of removing your stock, is the next Spring, for that hinders a second repulse of the Sap, and a second wound in the stock; and if your stock be of a sufficient bigness, it may take a Graft as thick as your Thumb, but of larger Grafts I approve not, for they seldom stand, by reason they require more Sap than the stock (before they are well united) can afford them. The best time of the year I account, if the Weather be open, is the latter end of *February, March*, and the beginning of *April*, and about the change of the Moon, when only the Knots and Buds are seen, without any considerable appearance of the Blossoms, or Leafs; Cherries, Apricocks, Pears, Quinces, and Plums, may be grafted sooner than the latter Blowers,

The Grafts are proper to be gathered in the middle of *February*, the Weather being open, or no hard Frost on them: You may do this some time before you graft, or on the same day, for at this time of year they will keep fresh a considerable while, if layed with the greater ends in good Mould. Grafts from Elder-Trees must be taken sooner than those of the younger; for they sooner break and Bud.

Take not, when you make choice, of the proudest sprigs, unless your Stocks be answerable to their Strengths and Growths; nor out of a much warmer and richer Soil than that your Stocks grow in, lest the Sap not agreeing, or springing up fast enough, the cold Weather pine them; if they be long, cut off a little of the

## 18 The New Art of Gardening,

the top of it, for that else withering, for want of due Nourishment at first, may injure the lower part, and hinder it from sprouting out ; take not any from poor unthriving Trees, nor from the Underlings that seem to dwindle in their Growth, even on their own Trees that produced them, but midling ones that prosper, but not too fast.

If the Clay, and Dung about your Graft, be cleft in dry weather, close it again with some that is moist, lest the Emmets get in and spoil your Graft ; take it not for a certain sign, that the Graft has well taken, if it quickly put forth in the Spring, for that may proceed from the Sap it brought with it, more than from any Nourishment of the Stock ; nor can it always be determined till after the succeeding Spring, whether it will take well or not ; but when you find it has, you may discharge it of the Clay, that the Sun may come to Nourish it in all parts the better.

### C H A P, IX.

*Other ways relating to Grafting, as Incising, Packing on, Inoculating, Grafting in Scutcheon, &c.*

**A**Nother way relating to this Mystery, is incising or cutting the Bark of the Bole, Rhind, or Branch at some bending, or Knee, Shoulder-wise, with two gashes only with a sharp Knife to the Wood ; then take sharp ended Wedges to the bigness of your Graft, fasten on the one side, agreeing with the Tree, and round on the other side, and with that, being thrust in, raise the Bark, then put in the Graft just fashioned like the Wedge, close it hard with your Hand, and bind about it Clay and Horse Dung.



For great Stocks, you may cleave them cross, and put in a Graft at each corner with little straining them, and close them up with Clay, and Dung, as others; and though they are pretty large, the Stock having Sap enough to support them, some, or all of them will cut, and growing up faster than on small Stocks, will much sooner bear Fruit: And this I have seen tryed on Stocks of a good growth, that have borne bad Fruit, and in a few years the Grafts have shot up, and produced excellent Fruit.

Packing on, is when you cut sloap-wise, a Twig of the same Magnitude with your Graft, either in, or besides the Knot, two Inches long, and make your Graft just agree with the Scion, and gash your Graft, and it just in the midst of the Wound, length-ways, about a Straws breadth deep, and thrust the one into the other, Wound to Wound, so that Sap may come to Sap, and Bark to Bark, so bind them close with soft Strings, and mix Clay and Dung, and cover them over, and this way many times thrives wonderfully; and this may be done on Branches of Trees, the latter end of Grafting-time, when the Sap is risen with good Success.

The way of Inoculating is with an Eye, or Bud, taken with a pretty large piece of Bark to it, from a thriving Tree, and placed immediately on another Tree, where just the same quantity has been taken off, that it may close with the bare place of the Tree, supplying the Bark that was taken thence, and being bound on with Clay, and Dung, strengthened with a little Moss, is in great likelihood quickly to flourish: This by some, is called Imbuding.

Grafting in Scutcheon is somewhat like unto the former, only differing in this, that you must take an Eye, or Bud, with Leafs, (Note, That an Eye is for a Scion, and a Bud for Flowers, and Fruit) and place them on another Tree in a Plain, like the Letter H cut with a sharp Knife, and the Bark raise with a Wedge, and then the Eye and Bud must be put in, and so bound up: These I have known to have grown well, but it is somewhat a tedious way, and the plainer way of Grafting soonest answers Expectation.

As

## 20 The New Art of Gardening,

As for your young Grafts, you must be careful to Fence them about, for the least rudeness, or rough handling spoiles your Labour, or much impares what you have done; and this may be done with setting of Roses, Gooseberries, or such prickly Trees about them, but not so as to over-shade them, and hinder their growth, and be careful that no Cattle break into your Ground; nay, Dogs, and Cats, where they are grafted low to the Ground, may by running over them, break off the Graft, and so cross you in your Industry: And now from General, I proceed to particular Trees, &c.

### C H A P. X.

*Of the Apple-Tree, how Grafted and Crcdred  
the Advantages accruing thereby, &c.*

**T**HE Apple is commonly grafted upon the Crab-tree Stocks, or upon the wild Apple-stock, being first planted, and the year after cut off within a foot of the Earth, or more. If your Apple-trees are pestered with Worms, scrape them with a brazen Scraper, and they will never come again, provided that the place whence you scraped them, be rubbed over with Bullocks Dung: The Urine and Dung of Goats is very good for this purpose, afterwards the Lees of old Wine may be pour'd upon the Roots of the Trees. The Tree that is sick, or prospereth not, is helped with Asses Dung, and watering it six days. Apple-trees must be often watered at the setting of the Sun, till the Spring be come, when planted in dry Ground. If you set your Apple-trees too thick, they will never grow well, nor thrive kindly. The Apple declareth its ripeness by the blackness of the Kernels. The Winter Stores are gathered after the fourteenth of September, or thereabouts, according to their kinds, and not before the Moon

## With the Gardiner's Almanack. 21

Moon be seventeen days old, in fair Weather, and in the Afternoon: Those that fall from the Trees must be laid by themselves; it is better to pull them, then shake them, lest they be bruised in their falling. The best way to keep them is in fair Lofts, Vaults, or cold places, with Windows opening towards the North, that they may receive that Air; the South Winds must be shut out; they must be laid thin upon Straw, Chaff, or Mats. You must lay every sort by themselves, lest sundry sorts lying together, they should the sooner rot. They are also kept from rotting, if they are laid in Barley, or Wheat. Some, to avoid the hurt of the Frost, use to cover them with wet Linnen Clothes, which being frozen, the Fruit that lay under them is preserved. Of Apples, besides other uses, you may with Mills for the purpose, make a curious Drink, called Cyder, and a small Drink besides, with Water, and the refuse of the Apples drained; a good Drink to quench and cool the Thirst. A kind of Vinegar also may be made of Crabs, and sower Apples, called Verjuice, which mashed, and lying in a heap together three or four days, afterwards put into a Pipe, or Tun, wherewith mingle Spring water, or Rain water, and so suffer them to stand close covered thirty days, and after taking out what Vinegar the Moisture affords, by drawing off, and let it settle.

---

C H A P.

## C H A P. XI.

*Of the Pear-Tree, how Grafted, Ordered  
and Improved, &c.*

**T**HE Pear challengeth the next place, and is one of the chiefest Beauties of the Orchard. The Apple-tree spreadeth in broad Branches; but the Pear-tree riseth in height, and delighteth in a rich and moist Ground; it doth grow of the Kernel, and of the Scion, but it is a great while before it doth come unto any Perfection; and when it is grown, it degenerateth from them its old good Nature; and therefore it is better to take the wild Plants and set them in your Ground in November, and when that they are well rooted, you may graft upon them. It is said, that in some Countries, it so prospereth with often digging, and much Moisture, that it never looseth its Flower. You shall do it a great deal of good, if every other year you bestow some Dung upon it. Ox-Dung is thought to make great and massy Pears; some put too a little Ashes to make their taste the pleasanter. They are not only planted of the Roots, but also of the very little Twigs, being pluckt, will grow. If you will set young Plants, let them be three years old, or at least two years old before you set them. Some again take the fairest Branches they find upon the Tree, and set them, as has been directed. The time of Grafting the Pear, is *March and April*. *Pliny* saith, that you may graft it when the Blossom is on it, which I my self have tryed, and found true. It is grafted upon the Quince, the Pomgranet, the Almond, the Apple, and the Mulberry-tree: If you graft it on the Mulberry-tree, your Pear shall be red; and if you would have the Fruit pleasant, and the Tree fruitful, you must bore a hole through the Stock close by the Ground, and driving in an Oaken, or a Beechen pin, cover it up with Earth; if the Tree prosper not,

wash

ash the Roots, and water them with the Lees of old  
 fine, fifteen days, so shall it bear the better, and plea-  
 surer Fruit. It shall never be hurt with Worms, if,  
 when you plant it, you anoint it with the Gaul of an  
 ox: If the Tree (whose Roots have been cut) seem  
 not to prosper, *Paludius* his Remedy is to pierce the  
 root thorough, and to drive in a Pin, made either of  
 oak, or Plum-tree. If your Pears are stony, or choak  
 ears, dig up the Earth from the Roots, cleanse them  
 of Stones, and sitt in good new Mould again into the  
 place: Let your Pear-trees stand thirty Foot asunder,  
 a little less; your Apple-trees (as I have said) further.  
 You may make use of several ways to keep your Pears,  
 some dip the Stalks in boyling pitch, and do afterwards  
 hang them up: others keep them in new boyled Wine,  
 or else in a close Vessel; others in Sand; and some again,  
 covered with Wheat, or Chaff; some are of Opinion,  
 that there is no kind Fruit but may be preserved in Ho-  
 ney; of Pears there is Drink, and Sauce made, the  
 Drink is *Perry*, made as *Cyder*, of a most delicious taste,  
 the Juyce being pressed out with the Press, &c. In o-  
 ther Countries they have a pretty Dish made of Pears,  
 for their Religious Fasts, called *Castimoniale*.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the Quince-Tree, how Ordered, Grafted,  
 Improved, &c.

NEXT in order, after Apples and Pears, cometh  
 the Quince; they are planted after the same man-  
 ner that Pears and Apples are: Some affirm that the sets  
 that have been set in *March*, or in *February*, have taken  
 such root, as that they have born Fruit the year after.  
 They grow well in cold and moist Countries, in plain  
 and hilly Grounds. In hot and dry Countries you must  
 see



## 24 The New Art of Gardening,

set them in *October*. Many set them with the tops and the set, but neither of them both is very good; and being set of Scions, they soon degenerate. They are better grafted in the Stock then in the Bark; and that in *February* or *March*, they receive into their Stocks, the Grafts (in a sort) of all manner of Trees; the *Pomgranet*, the *Servise*, all the kinds of *Apples*, and make the Fruit the better. The *Quince-Tree* must be set in the order, that in the shaking of the Wind they drop not one upon another. When it is young, or newly planted it is helped with Dung, or better with Ashes; the must be watered as often as the Season is very dry, and digged about continually; in hot Countries, in *October* or *November*; in cold Countries, in *February*, or *March* for if you do not often dig about them, they will either be barren, or bear naughty Fruit; they must be pruned, cut, and rid of all Superfluities. If the Tree be sick, and do not prosper well, the root must be watered with the Mother of Oyl, mingled with the like quantity of Water, or unslack'd Lime mingled with Chalk; or Rosine, or Tar must be poured upon the Roots: You must gather them in a fair day, being sound and unspotted, and very ripe, and in the wane of the Moon. They are best kept coffened betwixt two hollow Tiles, well closed on every side with Clay. Some lay them only in dry places, where no wind cometh; others heap them in Chaff and Wheat; some in Wine, which maketh the Wine more pleasant; lay them not near any other Fruit, because, with the Air, they will corrupt them. There is also made a kind of Wine of Quinces, (being beaten and pressed) and a little Honey with Oyl put into it; there is also made of them a precious Conserve, and Marmelade, red and white, being congealed with long Seething, and boyled with Sugar, Wine, and Spices.

s-a  
d b  
e be  
at  
s, t  
ng  
e t  
th  
or  
ter  
the  
an  
be  
rch  
ei  
b  
re  
wa  
lik  
it  
th  
ine  
e o  
wo  
y  
m  
in  
em  
ey  
ne  
le  
m  
e,  
th

L



CHAP. XIII.

*Of the Medler and Service-Trees, how Or-  
dered, Grafted, Improved, &c.*

THE Medler is accounted to be of the number of  
Apple-Trees, and Pear-Trees: It is Planted in  
like manner as the Quince is: It delighteth in Hot  
places, but well watered, it will do well enough: It  
is planted of the Scion, in *March*, or *November*, in a  
dunged Ground, and mellow, so that both the  
be rubbed over with dung. It is also set of a  
stick, but then it is very long before it cometh to any  
use: It is excellently well Grafted in the white Thorn,  
Pear, or the Apple. The Medlers that you mean  
to keep, you must gather before they are ripe: And  
if suffered to grow so upon the Tree, they last a  
great part of the Winter: They are preserved in Red  
Wine, and Vinegar, and Water. Of the Wood of  
wild Medler we use to make Spokes for wheels of  
Carts; and the twigs of them serve for Carters whips.  
Next to the Medler, for Neighbourhood sake, I must  
speak of the Service, it is a high Tree, with a round  
trunk, fashioned like an Egg; this fruit grows in Clus-  
ters, as the Grape doth: The wild is better than the  
Garden-fruit to Graft on. It delighteth in Cold places,  
if you plant it in hot ground, it will wax barren.  
It hath no prickles as the Medler hath; it groweth of  
the Stone, the Ser, the Root, or the Scion, and pro-  
spereth in a cold wet Soil: It is Planted in *February*,  
*March*, in Cold Countries: and in Hot in *October*,  
*November*. It is Grafted either on its own stalk,  
on the Quince or Haw-thorn, either in the Stock or  
Bark.

# The New Art of Gardening,

## CHAP. XIV.

*Of the Pomegranate-Tree, how it must be Ordered, Grafted, and Improved.*

**A**mongst the strange Fruit, there is none of them comparable to the *Pomegranate*: The Tree is not high, the Leaf narrow, and of a very pleasant Green, the Flower Purple, long like a Coffin; the Apple that is compassed with a thicker rind, is full of grains within. The *Pomegranate* is sweet and sowre. This Tree only, as the Fig and the Vine, the body being cloven, dyeth not: The branches are full of prickles as the Gorst is: It loveth both a hot Ground, and a warm Air, and liketh not watery places. In some hot Countries it groweth wild, in the bushes: It is Planted in the Spring-time, the Roots being watered with Hogs-dung, and stale. It is Grafted upon its own Stock, and also upon other Trees. And likewise upon the Scion that grow from the Roots of the old Tree. And though it may be planted sundry ways, yet the best way is a Cubit in Length, smoothed with your Knife, at both ends, and slopewise in the ground, with both its ends well smothered with Hogs-dung and stale. It much delighteth in the Myrtle, insomuch as the Roots will meet, and entangle together with delight. The Fruit will grow without Kernels, if Grafted in the Vine, the Pith being taken out, and the Set covered with Earth, and (when it hath taken) let it in the Spring be pruned. You shall have them keep a long while, if they be first dipped in scalding water, and taken out quickly, lay'd in dry Sand, or else in some heap of Wheat, in the shadow, till they be wrinkled; or else so covered with Chaff, as that they touch not the one the other.



CHAP. XV.

Of the Citron, or Limon-Tree; how Planted, and Improved.

THE Outlandish *Citron* is here very carefully planted. This Tree doth always bear Fruit, some falling, some ripe, and some springing: Nature shewing in them wonderful fertility. There are several kinds of them from whence they have several Names; I shall only name two sorts of them; those that are long-fashioned like an egg, if they be yellow, are called *Citrons*; if they be green, *Lemons*. The Leaf is like the Bay-leaf, saving that they grow prickles amongst them: The Fruit of them is small, wrinkled, without, sweet in smell, and sour taste: The Kernels like the Kernels of a Pear. The Tree is Planted four manner of ways; of the Kernel, of the Scion, of the Branch, and of the Stock. If you will set the Kernel, you must dig the Earth two Foot deep, and mingle it with Ashes: You must make several Beds, that they may be watered, with gutters on every side. In these Beds you must open the Earth with your hand, a hand's breath, and set three Kernels together, in the tops downwards, and being covered, water them every day, and when that they spring, set them diligently in good mellow furrows, and water them every fourth day: And when they begin to grow, remove them in the Spring-time, to a gentle and moist Ground, which delighteth much in wet: If you set the Branch, must not set it above a Foot and a half in the Ground, if not. He that doth intend to cherish this Tree, let him be sure to defend it from the North, and set it towards the South, and the Sun; in the Winter in Frairs and Palaces. This Tree delighteth to be continually digged. They are Grafted in hot Places in April, in cold countries in May, not under the Bark, but cleaving to the wood, near the Root: They may be Grafted both on the Olive and Mulberry: but when they are Grafted they must

be fenced, either with a weather-basket, or some earthen Vessel. Such as you mean to keep, must be gathered the Night, the Moon being down, and gathered with Branches and all, as they hang. When the Fruit burdens the Tree, you must pull them off, and leave but few on it, which will be the pleasanter, and the kinder Fruit. If while they are young and little, they are put in earthen vessels, or glass, they will grow according to the proportion thereof: So that you may have them fashioned either like a Man or a Beast, according to your Fancy, but you must so order your moulds that the Air may come to them. They are highly esteemed of by great Persons.

## CHAP. XVI.

### *Of the Mulberry-Tree, how Ordered, Planted, Grafted and Improved.*

THE *Mulberry* of all other Trees, is accounted the fruit bearer, because it never blossometh till all the weather be past: So that whensoever you see the *Mulberry* begin to spring, you may be sure the cold weather is at an end: Yet is Ripe with the first, and buddeth out hastily, as in one night, with a noise it thrusteth out the Leafs: They dye the Hands (as *Pliny* saith) with the Juice of the Ripe Berry, and wash it off with the Green Berry. It changeth his colour thrice, (as *Ovid* alludes in his *Tragical History of Pyramus and Thisbe*) first white, then red, and lastly black: It loveth hot places, and gravelly, delights in digging and dunging, but not in watering: Roots must be opened about *October*, and the Lees of Wine poured upon them: It is set of the Stones, but it often grows to the wild; the best Planting is the Seed and the Tops, a Foot and a half long, smooth at both ends and rubbed over with dung. The places where you

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 29

our Sets, cover with Asbes, mingled with Earth, but  
 over it not above four fingers thick. I would have you  
 to set it in *March*, and to remove it in *October* or *November*.  
 is Grafted in the Beech, or the white Poplar, either  
 Grafting in the Stocks, or Inoculation: and so shall  
 the Berries be white. It is Grafted also in the Fig and  
 the Elm, which in old time they would not suffer for fear  
 of corrupting. Of the Mulbery is made a very noble Me-  
 dicine for the Stomack, and for the Gout; they will  
 longest indure kept in glasses. The Leafs do serve to  
 feed Silk-worms withal, whereof some make a very great  
 gain.

The Cornel is a reddy coloured Fruit, like a Cherry:  
 this Tree is thought never to exceed twelve Cubits in  
 height; the body is sound and thick like Horn: The Leaf  
 like an Almond Leaf, but fatter: The Flower and the  
 fruit is like the Olive, with many Berries hanging upon  
 stalk, first white, and after red: The juice of the ripe  
 berries is of a bloody colour. It loveth both High Ground  
 and Valleys, and prospereth both in moist ground and  
 dry: It groweth both of the Slip, and of the Seed. You  
 must be careful that you plant it not near to your  
 trees.

The Bay is a most grateful Tree, which chiefly garnish-  
 the House, and useth to stand at the Entrance. *Cro-*  
 taketh two kinds thereof, the *Delpbick* and the *Cypress*:  
 the *Delpbick* equally coloured and greener, with great  
 berries, in colour betwixt green and red, wherewith the  
 conquerors at *Delpbos* were used to be Crowned. The  
*Cypress*-Bay hath a shorter Leaf, and a darker green, gar-  
 dered (as it were) round about the edges, which some  
 (as *Pliny* saith) suppose to be a wild kind: It groweth al-  
 ways green, and beareth Berries; he shooteth out his  
 branches from the sides, and therefore waxeth soon old  
 and rotten: It doth not very well always with cold  
 ground, being hot of Nature: It is Planted divers ways.  
 the Berries being dryed with the North wind, are gather-  
 ed and lay'd abroad and very thin, lest they cluster together;  
 afterwards being wet with Urine, they are set in furrows  
 handfull deep, and very near together: In *March* they

are also Planted of the Slip, you must set them not passing nine foot asunder : But so they grow out of kind. So think that they may be Grafted on another, as also upon the Service and the Ash : The Berries are to be gathered about the beginning of December, and to be set in the beginning of March.

## CHAP. XVII.

of Orchard Hazlenut and Philbert-Trees; the Improvement.

**N**ut-trees are commonly Planted of the Nut, as other Shell-Fruits are. Of all Nuts the Almond is esteemed to be worthiest; they are set in February, prosper in a clear and hot Ground, in a fat and moist Ground they will grow barren, they chiefly let such as crooked, and the young Plants : They are set both of Slips of the Root, and of the Kernel. The Nuts that intend to set, must be laid a day before in soft dung. Others steep them in water sod with Honey, letting them lye therein but only one night, lest the sharpness of Honey spoil the Plant. The tops and the sharp ends must set downward, for from thence cometh the Root, the edge stands towards the North : You must set three of them in a Triangle, a handful one from the other : They must be watered every ten days, till they grow to be good. It is also Planted with the Branches, taken from the middle of the Tree. The Philbert is Grafted not near the top of the Stock, but about the midst, upon the Boughs grow out. This Tree doth soon bear Fruit, and Flowereth before all others, in January, or February : Virgil counts for a Prognosticator of the Plenty of Corn :

*When thick the Nut-Tree Flowers, amidst the wood  
Of Trees, that all the Branches bend withal;  
And that they prosper well, and come to good,  
That Year be sure of Corn shall plenty fall.*

the bitter ones (which are the wholsomer) are made sweet, if round about the Tree, four fingers from the Root, you make a little Trench, by which he shall sweat out its bitterness: Or else if you open the Roots, and pour therein either Urine, or Hogs-dung: But no Tree groweth sooner out of kind, and therefore you must often remove it, or else you must Graft when it is great.

## CH A P. XVIII.

*Of the Walnut-Tree and common Nut-Tree,  
how to Order them.*

**W**Alnuts are to be set in the Ground the seam downward about the beginning of *March*: Some think, that they will Grow as the *Hilbert* doth, either of the Slip, or the Root: It groweth well, and liketh a cold and dry Place better than a hot; the Nut that you mean to set, will grow the better, if you suffer it to lye four or five days before in the Urine of a Boy, and will also prosper the better if it be often removed: those Nuts (as it is thought) prosper best, that are let fall by the Crows, and other Birds. If you pierce the Tree through with an Augur, and fill up the place again with a pin of Elm, the Tree shall loose his knotty hardness; neither will he loose his Fruit, if you hang by, either Mallet, or a piece of Skarlet, from a dunghil. Walnut-trees are properly planted round about on the outside of an Orchard, because their Shaddows are great, and unwholesome, besides the mischief they do with their dropping. They suck a great deal of good juice from the Ground: For they are mighty high and tall Trees of growth, so as some of them are two or three fathom about; they take up a great deal of room with their standing, and beguile the other Trees of their substance; besides there are certain Trees that they agree not well withall, and therefore they are set on the

outside of an Orchard, as Standards to defend their self from tempestuous weather.

Amongst Nuts is also to be accounted the common zelnuts, a kind whereof is the Philbert ; they are Planted after the manner of the Garden Hazlenut ; they delight in clay and waterish Grounds, and upon the highest Ground being very able to abide the cold.

## C H A P. XIX.

### *Of the Chesnut-Tree, and Pine-Tree.*

**A**Mongst the Nuts also the Chesnut challengeth a place, though he be rather to be reckoned amongst Mastes, from whence he is called the Nut or Mast of France. This Tree delighteth to grow on Uplands, in cold Countries : It hateth waters, and desireth a clean and good mould : It misliketh not a moist gravelly Ground and prospereth in a Shadowy or Northerly bank, it hateth a stiffe and a red clay ground : It is Planted both of the Nut, and its Set ; it is better Planting woods of them, the Nut, then of the Set ; otherwise the safer way is with the Set, which in two Years beareth Fruit. It is Planted when the Sun is in the *Equinoctial*, both of the Set, the Branch, and Root, as the Olive is. The Chesnut that you mean for to sow, must be very fair and ripe ; the newer they are, the better they grow ; you must set them with the sharp end upwards, and a furlong asunder : the furrow must be a shaftman deep. The Tree being sowed after five Years, will prosper like the Willow : And being cut out in staves, it will last till the next felling. The Chesnut may be Grafted on the Walnut, the Beech, and the Oak : It hath been observed, that when they grow two and two together, they prosper the better. The Pine is Planted not much unlike to the Almond, the Kernels of the Keit-clocks being set as the Almond.



they are gathered in July, before the tunicular Winds, and before the Nuts, the Husks being broken, fall out, the best time of sowing them, *Palatine* reckons to be *October* and *November*. This Tree is thought to be a Nourisher of all that is sown under it.

C H A P. XX.

How to Order and Improve Cherry Trees.

THE Cherry-tree is easie to be planted; if the stones be but cast abroad, they will grow with great increase: Such is their forwardness in growing, that the ways or supporters of Vines, that are made of Cherry-tree, are commonly seen to be grown to be Trees. They are grafted upon the Plum-tree, upon his own Stock, upon the Plane-tree, and on the Abricot, but best upon the wild Cherry; it joyeth in being grafted, and beareth better Fruit. If you graft them upon the Vine, your tree shall bear in the Spring; the time of grafting is either when there is no gum upon them, or when the gum is left running. Remove the wild Plant, either in *October* or *November* and the first of *January* or *February*, when it hath taken root, it may be grafted upon. You may graft it on the Stock; but often it prospereth better being grafted betwixt the Bark and the Wood. It delighteth to be set in deep Trenches to have room enough, and be often digged about. It loveth to have the withered bough continually cut away. It groweth best in cold places, and so hateth Dung, that if it be laid about them, they grow to be wild; It is also planted of the Slips; and we say it will bear its Fruit without Stones, if in the setting of the Set you turned the upper end downward. There are sundry kinds of Cherries; some that are redder than the rest, others as black as a Cole. *Pliny* saith, that on the Banks of *Rhine*, there grows a Cherry of colour,

between black, red, and green, like Juniper Berries, when they are almost ripe: For the several invented Names, them, as Duke, Heart, &c. for more brevity, I shall pass them by at this time, and say something of them hereafter. The small Cherries are esteemed, that grow upon a branch with short stalks, round Fruit, and very red, soft, and full of Liquor. They will bear very early, if you labour about them: It is good to gather them often, that those which you leave may grow the greater. There is also found a kind of Cherries growing wild in the Woods and Hedge-rows, (and may well be planted in Gardens and much improved) with little Berries, some red, some altogether black.

## CH A P. XXI.

### Of Plum-Trees, and how to order them.

**P**lum-trees are planted from the middle of Winter to the Ides of February; but if you set the Stones in after the fall of the Leaf, let it be done in November, in good and mellow ground, two handfals deep; they may also be set in February, but then they must be steeped in Lye three days, that they may the sooner spring; they may also be planted from the young sets that grow from the bottom of the Tree, either in January, or the beginning of February, the Roots being well covered with Dung; they prosper best in a rich and moist ground; and in a cold Country, they are grafted towards the end of March, and better in the cloven Stock than in the Bark; or else in January, before the gum begin to drop out; it is grafted on his own Stock, the Peach and the Almond. There are several sorts of Plums, whereof the Damson is not the least esteemed, growing in a dry ground, and in a high Countrey it is grafted as the other Plums are. There are diverse coloured Plums, white, black, purple, and red, wheat Pl

and horse Plums ; the finger Plums are most commended, being near the length of a mans finger, and blue in colour but later. The Damsens may be dried in the Sun upon Lattises, Leads, or in an Oven ; some do dip them before, either in Sea-water, or in Brine, and after dry them.

## C H A P, XXII.

*Of the Peach-Tree, and its Ordering, &c.*

*Also of the Abricot-Tree.*

**O**F Peach-trees there are four kinds ; but the chiefest are the Duraces, and the Abricots : In November, in hot Countries, and in others in January, the stones are to be set two foot asunder in well dressed grounds, that when the young Trees are sprung up, they may be removed ; but in the setting you must set the sharp end downwards, and let them stand two or three fingers in the ground : Wheresoever they grow, they rejoyce in watery grounds, which ground if you want, look that you water them well, so shall you have great store of Fruit. Some would have them set in hot Countries, and sandy ground, whereby they say that their Fruit will longer endure ; the better will also the Fruit be, if as soon as you have eaten them, you set the stone, with some part of the Fruit cleaving to it : It is grafted either on himself, Almond, or the Plum-tree. The Apples of Armenia, or Abricot, do far excell the Peach ; used as a great dainty amongst the Nobility and Gentry, and much desired of the Sick : They are best grafted in the Plum, as the Peach in the Almond-tree : The fairest Grafts that grow next to the body of the Tree, are to be chosen and grafted in January, or in February in cold Countries, and in November in hot ; for if you take those that grow in the top, they will either not grow, or if they grow, not long endure. You may inoculate or imbud them in April or May, the stock being cut aloft, as I

many young buds set in; neither must you suffer them stand very far one from the other, that they may the better defend themselves from the heat of the Sun. The Frenchmen, and our Gardeners also, do graft the Abricot, taking a Graft (not full a finger long) or the Bud that is well shot out, with a little of the rind cut off, and slitting the rind of a Plum-tree crosswise, they set them in, binding them strongly about with Hemp, or Tow. Some do hold that they will be red, if they be either grafted in the Plum-tree, or have Roses set underneath them; they will be purpled, or written in, if seven days after that you have set the stone, when it beginneth to open, you take out the Kernel, and with Vermilion, or any other colour, you may counterfeit what you will; after the stone is closed up about it, and covered with Clay, or Hogs Dung, you set it in the ground. Again, you shall have them without stones, if you pierce the Tree through, and fill it up with a pin of Willow, or Cornet-tree, the pith being had out; but these things I will not certify as truth, but leave them to Experiment, as not having tryed them: The Roots of the Tree must be cut and dressed in the fall of the Leaf, and dunged with its own Leafs; you shall also at that time prune them, and rid them of all rotten and decayed Boughs. If the Tree prosper not, pour upon the Roots the Lees of old Wine mingled with Water. Against the heat of the Sun, heap up the Earth about them, water them in the Evening, and shadow them as well as you may. Against the Frosts, lay on Dung enough, or the Lees of Wine mingled with Water; or Water wherein Beans have been sodden; If it be hurt with Worms, or such Vermine, pour on it the Urine of Oxen mixed with a third part of Vinegar.

C H A P. XXIII.

*Of the Date-Tree, and how it may be  
Propagated.*

THE Date-tree, it groweth in a mild gravelly ground, and delighteth in a watery Soil; and though it desires to have Water all the year long, yet in a dry year it bears the better; therefore some think that Dung is hurtful unto it. About the River *Nilus*, and in the *East Parts*, it groweth plentifully, where they use to make both Wine and Bread of it: This Tree in *Europe* (for the most part) is barren, though for novelty sake it hath been planted of many, as an Adornment to an Orchard. The stones of Dates are to be planted in Trenches of a Cubit in depth and breadth the Trench fill'd up again with any manner of Dung, except Goats Dung; then in the midst of the heap set your stones so as the sharper part stand upward; others would have it stand towards the East: And after, when first they have sprinkled thereon a little Salt, they cover them with Earth, well mingled with Dung; and every day while it springeth, they water it; some remove it after a year's growth, though some let it grow till it be great. Moreover, because it delighteth in salt ground, the roots must be dressed every year, and Salt thrown upon them; and so will it quickly grow to be a great Tree. The Sets are not presently to be put into the ground, but first to be set in earthen Pots, and when that they have taken root, to be removed. Date-trees have such a delight one in the other, that they bend themselves to touch together; and if they grow alone, they wax barren. They are planted (as *Pliny* saith) of the Branches, two Cubits long, growing from the top of the Tree; also of the slips and flivers. The same Author affirmeth, that about *Babylon*, the very Leaf (if it be set) groweth.

*Of the Almond-Tree.*

**T**HE Almond-tree will grow and flourish well in *England*, if Planted in warm Soil, and exposed to the Sun. It is properly Grafted on the Philbert; when once it gets a head, it grows a pace; In time, with good diligence, in dunging the Root of it with Swine dung, and water, beareth considerably: It Flowers early, which is of a redish colour; and if for no other than that it much graces an Orchard; but it has been known to bear much Fruit, some bitter, some sweet, according to the Nature of the Tree, or Graft.

*Of the Barberry-Tree.*

**T**HE Barberry-tree challenges a place in an Orchard amongst others, by Reason of the usefulness of its Fruit, on sundry occasions. There are several sorts of these Trees, though but one only common, above which that is to be preferred, that beareth its Berries without Stones; there is likewise another sort, differing from the common kind, bearing its Berries twice as big, being the most Excellent of others, for preserving, and making Marmalade. These are best Planted on rising Banks, where too much moisture may not afflict the Root.

*Of the Goosberry, and Current-Trees.*

**O**F these that grow in Orchards, though under Trees or Shrubs, may well be accounted the Goosberry, and Current-trees, being Fruits that make Excellent Wine comparable to many others.

Of Goosberries there are many sorts, and colours; the white *Holland* or *Dutch* Goosberry, is of these the fairest and the best bearer of all others; the Berries are white and transparent, large, smooth, and round. There is a so



## With the Gardener's Almanack. 39

of green Goosberries, well tasted, and deserving commendation. These Trees propagate with little Cost or Labour, and from the beginning of *May* to the middle of *June*, their Berries are very useful for Tarts, preserving, making Sauces, to be eaten raw, for concoction, and creating of a good digestion; also to make Wine, as I have said, by clean pressing out the Juice, clarefying it, and bottling up, with a little Loaf Sugar, to feed on, and take out the Tartness: A good Spirit may be Distilled from them, when ripe, if bruised, and mixt with water coming very near Brandy. There are a Red sort, a very plentiful bearer.

As for the Currants there are the white, Red, and Black. These Trees are propagated with little charge, growing almost on any ground; and these with the foregoing, may be Planted in Intervals of *Orchards*: As the Red they are accounted the best for preserving, and being used in Confections; moreover they produce a cool Wine, being ordered as Goosberries, more pleasant to the Taste than any French Wine, and held much wholesomer: This, as the Goosberry, may be set of Slips, with little Roots, on rising Ground, where the Sun can come at them, to enlarge and ripen the Fruit; the black are mostly to be used in Physicall matters.

### Of the Raspberry-Tree.

**R**aspberries claim a place to this Book, for though it be but a Shrub, it affords a delicious Fruit, useful on sundry occasions: It delights in mellow clay or loamy Ground, mingled with other good Earth, to be set on little rising Hills, or Banks, in the out-borders of the Orchard, by Ditch-sides, but not in too moist places; for overmuch wet rots the Root.

### Of the Fig-Tree,

**T**HE Fig-tree grows upright of it self, in *Orchards*, and bears good Fruit; as the great Blue Fig, which usually

usually comes to ripeness, and is of a delicious taste; of sorts there are, but being brought out of hot Countries, and Planted here, the cold weather coming on before the Fruit can well ripen, they mostly call it, so that it comes to nothing. The Fig may be well Grafted on the Mulberry, and then it bears the pleasanter Fruit, and prospers best; and when the Fruit appears well grown, pluck off many of the shading Leaves, that the heat of the Sun coming to it, it may better ripen and eat the kindlier.

### Of the Cornelian Cherry-Tree, and Orange-Tree.

**C**ornelian Cherries much grace an Orchard; they may be set of the Stones, and will grow up to Plant, and Ingrafted on their own Stocks, they bear a pleasant Fruit, and may be kept for Tarts and other uses, the greater part of the Year, as being much harder and firmer than others, but not much Planted, but in choice Orchards, and more for pleasure than for profit. These are the principal standing or upright Trees belong to an Orchard, that grow without support, that I at present have occasion to Discourse of, bringing in at advantage to the Industrious Arborist or Gardener; only I shall add to them my Observations on some others, termed separate, and usually called Wall-Fruit, or Supported Fruit; as the Vine, and such like, who best prosper where there is a reflection of the Sun, to make the heat the stronger, and more powerful to Enliven, Impregnate, and Ripen such Fruit, which in shady places would come to little.

The Orange-trees curiously grace an Orchard, but naturally growing in hot Countries, are so tender, that they must be Planted in Pots, Wickers, or Wooden Troughs, to be removed into the Green-house in Winter; therefore when I come to speak of that, I shall be larger on this excellent Tree.

C H A P. XXIV.

*Wall-Fruit-Trees, how best to Order them, their Virtues, &c.*

THE Vine among these is accounted the Queen, proving delicious Clusters, as are not only pleasant to the taste, but reviving to the Spirits, and healthful to the Body; and it has been more Cherished in England, than at present; many spacious grounds, though now turned into Grass or Corn-fields, retaining yet the Name of Vineyards; as that on the backside the Church of Camberwell, in Surrey, and many others, from the Vines that have been formerly Planted there, though now totally Eradicated; and no doubt, Store of Wines, by well planting, maturing, dressing, and other good management of Vines, might be still produced, equally to that brought out of France and Germany; but my purpose is now to speak of Wall Vines.

The Vine is best propagated by Layers of a good bearing Vine, bent and layed in the Earth, flaked in about four or five Inches, with good mould and turf upon it, and about half a yard rising upright, which may be supported by a stick stuck in the ground, and it will take root, which being cut short, and set about the beginning of March, will grow very well; but ever observe to set them to a Wall, Pales or Houses side, &c. where the Morning, Noon or Evening Sun, or all of them may have full power; for without the Influence of the Sun this Tree beareth not to any purpose, bringing forth small Grapes, which seldom Ripen; for the Season advancing the nipping frosts come on them, and wither them before they can do much. Some Eminent Gardeners allow it may be Grafted on the Cherry-tree, or Elm; of these there are many kinds, but the best bearer in our Climate, is the rarsly Vine, bringing abundance of Fruit, with good management, to perfection. The Fox-Grape is a fair and large Fruit, bear-

ing pretty well: The *Rhenish* Grape, *Paris* Grape, small *Muscadel*, are pretty well suited to our Climate.

*Currant* Grape is the earliest and sweetest, though are but small.

Great care for the Improving of the Vine must be taken. Prune it before the Sap rises, viz, in *March*, and tie them up conveniently, with a slip of old bud, or soft cloth, that the Branches may spread conveniently to the Sun, and the warm breathing of the South and West Wind; and lay a little Horse-dung lightly about the Root in the Spring, that it may soak in and fatten the Root, which must be set out from the Wall a pretty distance, that it may have room enough to spread in without oppression.

Some pluck off most of the Leaves when the Clusters are well Knit, but this, in my Opinion and Experience, rather hinders than advantages their growth, and ripening; for the cool blasts are oftener abroad in Summer than the hot ones, and they chill and hinder the production, so that it has been seen, that the Grapes sheltered with Leaves, have been kept the warmer by their food ripening. If the Vine stands against damp Walls, wetness perishes the Clusters that touch it, or the moldy heatings musty them; and if you see one in any Cluster perished, take it away, lest it infect the rest.

There is, of those Grapes that come not to such a ripeness as Wine may be of them, a curious Vinegar nevertheless to be pressed from them. They are also very good for Sawce, pickled in Water, Salt, and a little Vinegar boyled together. The same way you may also pickle *Berries*, *Gooseberries*, *Quinces*, and *Green Plums*, &c. they, with a renewal of pickel, keep the Year about.

### Of the *Abricot-Trees*.

THE *Abricot* flourishes and thrives best against a kindly Wall, favoured by the heat of the Sun; and of these there are several kinds, as the *Musk Abricot*, the *Orange*, the *Great Bearer*, the *Ordinary*: Some bring

ripe Fruit sooner than others. These Trees delight in a free, rich and light Soil; but spreads it self much in Branches, and therefore must be diligently pruned, that the Fruit may grow the larger, there being then more nourishment left in the Stock to feed them. It is much subject to the Canker, therefore to correct that vice in the Mould, dig a large pit where you intend to Plant your Tree, and fill it a Foot thick; and within about a Foot or eighteen Inches of the surface, with Marle Chalk, or white Earth; then scatter over that fine Mould, about four or five Inches thick, and then Plant the Root upon it, and this will keep the Root from running too deep, and make it spread more near the surface of the Earth, so that not being overcharged with the too luscious Sap, it will not be subject to the Canker, which is a Disease that destroys many of these Trees in their bearing prime, and this will also make it put forth fewer Branches, and more Fruit.

There is a way to make this a Dwarf-tree, that is, so to keep it under, that it shall grow not above three Foot to the Wall, whereby being under the Wind, and receiving the reflection of the Suns heat, both from the warmnels of the Earth and Wall, it bears earlier than others, and its Fruits ripen kindlier; and this may be done by often pruning the main Branches, and Planting as before directed: This may be Grafted on the Plum, or its own Stock.

### Of Peach-Trees, Nectarins, Malacottoons, &c.

**T**Hough the Peach may properly be a Standard Tree, yet it flourishes, as for bearing Fruit, against a kindly East, South, or West Wall; as also the Nectarins: And of these there are several kinds; as the Aberge, Small Yellow, Almond Violet, Bourdin, Belle-Cheuvreuse, Elinge-Nectarine, Maudlin, Mignon, Morella Muskvicet, Murry-Nectarine, Red Roman-Nectarine, Nutmeg-Red and White, Main-Peach, Newington, Perisque, Ramillion, Syon, Orleans, Savoy Malacotton, &c. these may be Planted as the Apricot.



The Peach may be Grafted on the white Thorne, Be or its own Stock: The Peach and Almond joyned together, and Grafted on the Plum-tree, is held to produce a Peach, with an Almond in the Stone of it; but of the kinds the Nutmeg and Newington Peach are excellent in taste, and great bearers, especially the first, which amends for the smallness of the Fruit, but the latter is large, and a gallant Fruit. They may also be well inoculated on choice Plumstocks, as the White Pear-Plumstock, on Plants coming of Peach-Stones.

### Of Plum-Trees.

**D**ivers sorts of Plums, though they may also be Standards, thrive excellently well against a Wall advantageously situated to the Sun's warm Beams, as the Nutmeg, the Pear, Plum, White and Black, the Peascod, the Prun De L'Isle-Vert, the Damask-Violet, Dale-Plum, the Charaine, &c. These must be pruned as the former, and in the Spring the Roots layed open, and well dug about, a little Horse-dung layed on the Earth, when the Roots are covered again, which the Rain soaking in will much enrich and Enliven the Roots.

These Trees must be Grafted or Inoculated on Plumstocks; the White Pear-Plum-Stocks are accounted best, and the Damask-Stocks the worst, as being Stocks, so that the Graft cannot take, nor thrive upon them. Those Stocks of Plums that have large Leaves and full Shoots, I account the best.

### Of the Fig-Tree.

**T**HE Fig is both a Standard and a Wall-tree, prospering best on the latter; and of these there are several other kinds, as Wall-Fruit, than what I have named in the Standards; and in all these the Scion, White or Purple, Dwarf Blue, Yellow Dwarf, you must set the Roots pretty deep, and spreading, in a light fertil Mou



kept under from spreading too much, by often pruning, nailing close to the Wall: This Tree may be well lifted on the Mulberries Stock, but it must not be planted inst House-Walls, where drippings of Rain fall much the Root, for that will soon rot and destroy it.

*Of the Currant-Tree, as wall-Fruit.*

Currant-trees, though they are properly Standards, may be well planted against a Wall, which will en- ease their Fruit in largeness, if they are nailed up, and all pruned when the Branches grow Luxuriant. There yet other Mural-trees, as the *Lote-tree*, the *Virginia* *um*, and the *Cornel-tree*, that bear Fruit kindly, and y be planted in good mellow Ground, setting the sors some distance from the Wall, that the hardness of its undation may not oppose the growing of them; and in Seasons they must be watered early in the morning, when the Earth is cool, after the Sun's being down, h thick soily water; and now though there may be he other kinds of Fruits, yet not common, easy to be had, to bring to perfection. I think I have given a sufficient ize of Standard and Wall-Fruit, and enough I am sure furnish and beautify any Orchard, and bring it to vast rovement, with good management, in a short time; wever, I shall proceed to other matters, useful to be own, and materially relating to the well ordering of chards, &c.

CHAP. XXV.

*The Well Ordering and Right Dressing of Fruit-Trees, for their better thriving.*

THE skillful dressing and pruning Fruit-trees, is one main matter to keep them from sundry Inconveniences

## 46 The New Art of Gardening,

cies, and disorders, they would be otherwise subject to, and to preserve them in a good growth, and to bring forth good Fruit, better and more Seasonably; and this consisteth in pruning, or cutting away the superfluous Boughs, Branches, and Suckers that waste and destroy the Sap unprofitably, hindring the bearing Branches from perfecting the growth of the Fruit, and seasonably ripening it: This must be done before the Sap rises, as in *January*, *February*, or the beginning of *March*; and you must, in this case, distinguish the bearing from the Leafy Buds; and the bearing ones are known by their being more turgid than the other, fuller and more swelling. In this work cut off all the Shoots of *August*, unless the nakedness of the Tree require you to hold your hand; what you prune from the rest cut off slanting above the Bud, with a sharp Knife leaving no rags: *Those Buds in Wall-Fruit, that put forth between the Stem and the Wall, or opposite to them, rub off as soon as they appear, sparing only the colateral Branches.*

Keep your Wall and Falisado-trees from too high mounting hastily, so that they may spread, and the better form themselves beautiful, like a Fan close to the Ground. Take the Water-boughs away, which are those on the Standards that are shaded, and dropt upon, remaining smooth and naked without Buds: Cut off the unbearing Branches of Wall-Fruit-Trees smooth and slanting. As for the tender Wall-Fruit, the proper time to prune them is in *February* and the beginning of *March*.

Where Branches are Intangled and thick, that they gaul one another, or exclude the free entrance of the Sun and Air, thin that place at discretion; trim and nail your Wall-Fruit and Espaliers.

When you find any Mould on the Branches, or at the Roots of the Trees, take it off with a wooden or horn Scraper, and rub the place smooth with a woollen cloth dipped in water, wherein Ashes have been well steeped, and it will not encumber those places, at least for a long time, and see what Thrive best; open the Roots a little of those that seem to drop, and put good dung or manure to them, and cover it up with light Earth.

Keep

Keep your Trees from mounting too high, if you would have them good Bearers; for the nearer the Branches are to the Root, the Sap has the more influence to encrease Blossoms the stronger to knit them, and enlarge the Fruit: and the moderate height of all spreading Standard-Trees, should be something above two yards beyond a Man's reach; and if the middle Branches are aspiring more than the other, keep them down by cutting and pruning, so that the Tree may the better spread; and so they will be more thrived, healthful, and long-lasting Trees, grow lower, and consequently safe from the Injury of Winds; by spreading broad, yield much Fruit, not overshadowing each other, or dropping much upon each others Branches; and the Bole, by reason of its Shortness, will receive much Sap, consume little it self, and so yield a great quantity to the better producing the Fruit: for if the Tree were taller, the Sap takes its course so swiftly up, that it has little Intercourse with the lower Boughs; so that they bear but little Fruit.

When you lop old Trees, and cut off great Arms, do it close to the Tree, and leave no Snags; then make a Plaster of Tar, Tallow, and a little Pitch, on a coarse Cloth, and clap it to the Wound, to keep off the Cold and Wet, till the Bark recover the strength: if it be bark-peel'd, lay on a Searcloth of Butter, Honey, and Wax, and lay on this as a good Remedy to recover the Bark by the other means growing and closing up the naked place.

To effect this, You must be provided with a handsome Ladder, a little sharp and well-armed Saw, a little Hatchet, a broad-mouth'd Chizzle, a Mallet, and a long and sharp Cleaver, with a Notch (and which is necessary among young and little Trees) a great and sharp Knife, with a convenient Stool, Pruning-knife, and a Paring-Chizzle to smoothe the cut places.

## - C H A P. XXVI.

*Soil proper for remedying Diseases in Fruit-Trees, and destroying Vermin and Insects that infest them, &c.*

**W**HERE large Trees grow in an Orchard, there the Ground requires every four or five years to be well soiled; for those great Bodies draw a great deal of Moisture, and consequently the best heart of the Ground, and if that be not supply'd, the Trees must pine, and will want much of their Fruit. But do not overstock the Row with Dung; rather lay it somewhat near, and let the Rain wash and soak it to the Roots, especially of young Trees, for too much Dung breeds Rankness, and much hurts them, especially Apple-trees; according to this Verse,

*Manure your Orchard, let it be well laid,  
But let it never be too fertile made;  
For as a Tree due Nourishment may want,  
So too much Soil destroys the tender Plant.*

As for the Diseases and Hurts in Trees, they are many, which I shall enumerate in their order.

If the Trees be greatly subject to Moss, you must consider what may be the principal Cause of it, whether by the over Coldness of the Ground, as in a wet clayey Soil, or the Barrenness of the Earth naturally.

If Coldness, through Moisture, be the true Cause, then consider how to lay it dryer, by trenching the Ground; or if it be Clay-ground, then bring in some warm Soil to mix with it, as, Ashes, Sand, Sheeps-dung, the Dung of Dove-houses, or Poultry, and the like; and if the Soil be too barren, mix it with good fat Soil, especially near, and at the Roots of the Trees; and moss the Trees well with what is already upon them.

2. Another Hinderance of the Growth of Fruit-trees is their being bark-bound, which is known by their pining  
even

ui  
h  
t  
l  
no  
w  
o  
a  
e  
e

n  
n  
t  
c  
n  
c  
t  
o  
t  
e  
e  
n  
e  
n  
e





## With the Gardener's Almanack. 49

in fertile Ground: This happens when there is but a slow and flow passage up of the Sap, and in small quantity. In this, cut off some of the superfluous Branches, and the rest that are any thing great, also the Bole of the Tree, and the Root, with a sharp Knife, even to the hard Wood, and it will open as if loosened from Bondage, and the Rind will grow, and fill up the space to a good thickness, according to the bulk of the Tree, and still grow with it: so that it will seem to rejoyce for this Decadence, and flourish a great deal better than before. This is proper to be done in the Spring, when the Sap is arising.

The *Canker*, of which I have hinted before, is a very great Enemy to Trees, natural to some, accidental to others, bruises, &c. This hurts many and utterly spoils some. The Remedy is, to cut it out, if it be upon the great Branch or Body of the Tree; then make a mixture of Horse-dung and Clay, and cut off the small Branches that are rotten or decaying, and lay the mixture aforesaid on the wound, tainting, binding it on with Rushes, Flags, or soft Stalks of Hay or Straw; then lay Sea-cole or Wood-ashes, the ashes of Fern or Nettles, or the like, to the Root: if this be a natural Vice, and the Trees grow on gravelly ground; it will not easily be remedied without mending the Soil.

In the Spring-time *Caterpillars* breed, and are a great Enemy to Fruit-trees by destroying the Buds and Blossoms, especially in a dry season, if the Frosts come not to take them off; which if they do, they likewise commit much mischief by nipping the early Fruit, and rendering it abortive.

To destroy these, take wet Hay and Straw, place them in the Wind breaths a moderate fresh Gale, so that beset with dry Stuff layed under them, the smoak may come among the Trees, for being carried under, it will arise in the Boughs: sprinkle on this, Pitch, Rosin, and Brimstone, and the smothering will make them drop off, and

*Earwigs* are another pest, though not so dangerous as the former.

## 50 The New Art of Gardening.

To take and destroy these, lay small Kexes at the Root of your Trees, sprinkled with Water wherein a little Honey has been boiled, and break them in short pieces, the many of the Hollownesses may be open, and it will draw them from the Tree; and when they have licked up the sweet Water; they will crowd themselves for shelter in the hollow Kexes; when you perceive this, you may burn them, and so by degrees disincumber your Orchard of the

6. *Ants* or *Emmets*, much Injure Fruit, especially Wall-fruit: to destroy them therefore, find out the Hills or chief Haunts, and opening the top, pour scaling Water wherein Burdocks have been boiled; or if you cannot find their Haunts, anoint about a Foot next the Root with Tar or Oyl of Turpentine, and they will attempt to ascend the Tree, or if they do, they will be taken, and stick fast in the glutinous matter. But some may here object, as for Wall-fruit, they may run up the Wall and escape it: This I own; but then in such a case it may be prevented, by drawing a Line of the same Matter upon the Wall from one end to the other.

7. *Shell-snails* much annoy Wall-fruit: to remedy this take slacked Lime, and strew along on the Bank, and dust it on the Leaves and Branches, and where the Snail touches it he will fret and slime to Death: this is effectual likewise to Snails without Shells.

8. *Wasps* are very mischievous when the Fruit begins to ripen; and therefore if you find any Nests of them in your Orchards or Garden, the best way is to destroy them by pouring in hot Water wherein Hemlock has been boyled; or you may hang Pots with Honey mingled with Water, daub also the Insides of the Pots with Honey, and they having tasted it, repairing further to drink of the Water will drown themselves in great multitudes.

9. *Birds* are great destroyers of choice early Fruit, also in the spring the Buds; especially the *Bulfinch*, *Mouse*, and the like of those, of *Cherries*, *Plums*, *Apricocks* &c. These may be taken by Lime-twigs placed in the Trees, and then by hanging up dead ones by the heels. The Trees, the other will be scared away: Also two or three Rattle-mills, set up in the Orchard, turned by the Wind, will affright them.

10. *W*

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 51

ro. Winds and nipping Frosts in the Spring, together with Blasts, are Enemies to Fruit-trees: the best way to prevent these, is to keep smoking Fires among the standing Trees, and cover the Wall-fruit with bair mats.

### C H A P. XXVII.

#### *Of Nurseries for Stocks, and their Improvement.*

TO serve your self with a sufficient Number of Stocks to graft on, or inoculate the several Fruits you intend to propagate and advance, prepare a Bed of Earth well pressed from Weeds, proportionable to the Stones or Seeds you intend to set or sow to raise Stock from: Let them be cover'd with small crumbled light Earth, that so the tender puttings forth may the better get through it, and mix with the Earth a moderate sprinkling of Dung, to keep it the warmer in Winter. As for the Stones, let them in Rows, with the sharp End downwards, about the middle latter end of *October*, the Weather being open, and cover the Beds against the Cold with Straw that has been the Litter of a Stable; which in *April*, the Weather being a little warm, remove; and in *May*, if they prosper, they will come up; then keep them clean from Weeds, and thin them by plucking up the Underlings where they grow too thick, that the others may thrive the better; and the third Summer you may mark out in Leaving-time that you design to remove, and then in the Winter following remove them to such places as you intend to graft or inoculate on them, or to other Beds larger where they may have more room to grow till such time as your Occasions require their Removal to the places where you should have them fix'd as Stocks for Grafts.

As for the Seeds of Pears, Apples, and other Fruit not bearing Stones, take them out when they rattle in the Core upon shaking the Fruit, or when the Apple is cut;

lay them not by, but instantly sow them very thin, dropping them one by one in little Rills or Furrows; cover them over with fine Mould, and use them in all other respects as the former. These Seed Plants may be likewise set with a Setting-stick, and if they are removed when they are come pretty well up, it will be the better for their getting good Roots, else they will be apt to show one Root only, downward, and not spread. Crab-stock and Apple-stocks thus raised, furnish an Orchard better than those that are taken wild: Trees grafted on the *Gener-moile* or Cyder-stock, preserve better the Gust of the Apple than any other, but on the Crab-stock this is of long lasting, imparting more Juyce, of a tart Relish, and so many preferred before most sort of Apples: however, wild Stock does enliven the dull and phlegmatick Apple and the Stock of the *Gener-moile* sweetens and improves the Pippin, &c. and abates the tart taste of others.

The same Rules may be observed in Stocks to graft Pears, Plums, Cherries, Apricocks, and the like upon, and the more acid the Stock, the more Life it gives to the Fruit of the Graft, as the Black-cherry and the Cherry-tree is the most approved Stock for the delicious Cherry.

Though the Fruit generally takes after the Graft, yet it is somewhat altered by the Stock, for the better or worse according to its kind; therefore for your Seminary or Nursery, chuse a place of Ground that may be of a different Nature, not too sterile, nor over-much enriched with Dung, it lying warm, with light Mould, that the Stocks may the better thrive.

If you are desirous to raise Dwarf, trell them: Let the Stocks whereon you graft them for Apples be of the Paradise Apple, of the Quince, for the Pear of the *Marell*, common *English* Cherries for Cherries; and so they will be more fit, if you so design them for Wall-trees or Standards, being kept low, as now the Use is in many Orchards.

If you would be furnished with good Quince-stock for your Nursery, the speediest way is to cut down an old Quince-tree in *March*, about two Inches from the ground, and there will a number of young Suckers arise from

Root, which being taken off, with some of the Root sliced with them, and moist Earth about them, as much as may be, are easily planted, and in a little time will be fit to be grafted on for Pears, and raise a good Encrease: and this way also Plum-stocks may be raised, and you may be abundantly furnished of your own without being beholden to others.

## C H A P. XXVIII.

*Some farther Observations in the Transplanting of Fruit-Trees; with the Errors of some therein discovered.*

Hold it (tho upon necessity or emergency it may be done at other Seasons) the best time to transplant Trees is the autumnal Quarter, especially those that lose their Leaves, and are naked all Winter, whether they are young Stocks, new grafted Trees, or of longer standing; and it is a good time to do it, when you perceive they have done growing in the Branch, (which may be known) or Ends of the Branches of the Tops: if they be closed and shut, they may be removed without danger, though in August, but September is a general proper time, and also in October.

In taking up Plants, great Care and Skill is required by the Remover: see the spreading Roots be left on, though you must, according as the Root is, take off so much as the Earth may come conveniently to close about the rest, and fasten on it every way, that taking good hold, it may spread the better: and in Removal you will observe the younger Trees thrive better than the elder, and many times on an equal Soil overtake them in growth. **Remove of one and the same time.**

Plant not too deep, for the over-Turf is always richer than the next Mould ; and in very moist Ground plant nearer the Surface, that the Roots spreading may avoid the Spume ; for planting too deep in any Ground much injures the growth of the Tree, by reason the heat of the Sun cannot penetrate the Earth to its Root, thereby enliven it, and shooting mostly downward, it sucks cold damp Spume which digests not into good Sap, whereby the Tree is enfeebled, and not of force to bring forth its Fruit in proportion ; and many times, in that depth the Roots meet with Chalk or Gravel, which hinder the Progress.

In transplanting young Trees, as you leave not on all the Roots, so neither must you all the Branches, taking away the tops of the Branches of Apples and Pears, but not of Plums, Cherries, or Walnuts. It is no small check to Plants to be removed out of a warm Soil into a colder one, nor transplant Trees out of a lean Ground into a very fat Soil ; for the sudden Alteration will go near to destroy them, or much hinder them from prospering : and therefore though the Ground must necessarily be better yet it must be by such degrees as may be agreeable with the Tree transplanted.

Many plant Fruit-trees unfit for the Country or Soil wherein they plant them, and their Care is, to choose the best Grafts of the first kind, and the fairest Plants to look upon, not considering by the way, that such kinds will prosper and bear Fruit well in those Climates and places where they plant them : And hence it often is, that many who have fair and goodly Fruit-trees, have little Fruit from them.

It is an excellent Rule, to chuse those kinds of Fruit which your self or others find by many years Experience to be good bearing Trees in those parts nearest to your Orchard, although the Fruit be not altogether so good as some others at greater distance.

There is another Error in desiring the largest and fairest Plants, expecting such Trees will soonest improve and yield Encrease ; whereas great Plants, many of them are dead and others, unless rather by Chance than any warrantable



Certainty, live very poorly, whilst smaller Plants, well removed, live generally, and often thrive more in two or three years than the great ones in six or seven; for the removing great Plants is to Nature a very great Check, such as many times it is not able to recover.

Another Error is, that some unskilful Gardeners break off the Buds upon the Stocks grafted on, before the Graft puts forth, insinuating it will receive the more Sap, when whole Wounds indeed put a check to the Sap's rising, and are more properly taken away when the Graft is united to the Bark of the Stock, and has gathered Strength from the Sap, putting out Leaves and small Branches. And some there are, that graft young Plants coming of Stones or seeds where they were sowed or planted, without removing; which is not at all so proper for Growth.

THE  
GARDENER  
ALMANACK:

Containing what is to be done in or  
lating to the *Orchard* in their prop  
Seasons throughout the Year, in ea  
particular Month.

---

Aquarius ♒, or the Skinker.

*Things proper to be done in the Orchard  
in the Month of*

JANUARY.

**P** Repare such Soil as is futable to the nature of  
Earth you plant in: make ready the Ground  
gainst the Spring, by Trenching, &c. Lay  
Dung where there is occasion, as your prov  
Stores of Horle, Neats, and Sheeps Dung, of two y  
old; mingle with it, in the Lay-stall, some Loam,  
under Pasture fine Mould, mingle and stir them with

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 57

ing, and skreen it well when layed on, that it may the  
fier melt, and soak in by the falling Showers. As for  
the Fig-tree, the Dung of Pidgeons or Poultry is very  
urishing when the first Heat is passed. Let your Horse-  
ing, ere laid on, be exceeding rotten, lest it infect the  
ground with Knot-grass, which is much offensive.

*Apricocks* and *Peaches* require little, but rather a natural  
improved fat mellow Soil.

Dig Borders and uncover Tree-roots where you see oc-  
sion, as where Ablauation is required: transplant  
fruit-trees, set Quicksets for good Fencing, plant Vines,  
and make a beginning to prune old Trees, and the Branch-  
of young Orchard-fruit that are pretty well grown,  
and that towards the Decrease of the Moon; but such as  
are young and tender disbranch not till the Sap begins to  
rise, that the Wound with the Sars that the Frosts im-  
print, may be the easilier cured: cut away all the Shoots  
in *August*, especially from Wall-fruit, and observe in cut-  
ting the Fruit-buds from the Leaf-buds, and the former  
may be known by their being more fuller and swelling,  
and them you must preserve as much as may be, cut slant-  
ing upwards, that no Rags nor Splits be left, and in ta-  
king off a whole Limb or Branch take it close to the Stem,  
that the Bark may the sooner close over it; rub off the  
buds that put forth on Wall-fruit Trees between the Stem  
and the Wall, or opposite. Keep the Palisado and Wall-  
trees from too much aspiring, that they may spread the  
better, and be of a regular beautiful form, like the spread-  
ing of a Fan, and bear the better by being kept the closer  
to the Ground. Take off Water-boughs from Standards,  
and the under-bearing Branches of Wall-fruit, but do not  
prune such as are very tender till the next Month: where  
thick or intangling Branches appear, that may any ways  
hinder or fret, or keep out the Air and Sun, make them  
thinner by taking off some, as the Tree will bear it.

Begin to trim and nail your Espaliers and Wall-trees:  
rub off the Moss from Trees, the Weather being open or  
hoist: prepare your Scions for grafting whilst the Buds  
and Sprouts are not yet come; and towards the End of this  
Month, the Weather being open, graft Cherries, Pears,  
Plums.

Remove Stocks, proceeding from Kernels, to advantageous places, either in your Nursery, or where you intend they shall stand to be Grafted, taking off the part the tops and roots: Sharpen and prepare your Tools, for the work of the succeeding Months.

Fruits in their full Virtue, and still continuing.

Tears. The *Winter Norwich*, very good to bake; the *Great Surrein*, the *Winter Musk*, the *Winter Bon-Chrestien* and *Winter Bergomat*, Wall-Fruit, &c.

Apples. The *Winter Queening*, *Harvey Apple*, *Pomeroy*, *Marrigold*, *Kentish Pippin*, *Golden Pippin*, *Russet Pippin*, *French Pippin*, *John Apple*, *Pome-Roy*, *Golden Douce*, *Reinette*, *Winter Pearmain*, *Loons Pearmain*, and some others that are with good keeping well secured from the violence of the Frost, and exclude all rotting; as the *Ross*, the *Puffin*, the *Wilding*, the *Gilliflower Apple*, &c.

Pisces ♋.

## F E B R U A R Y.

**I**N this Month prune Vine, and other Fruit-trees: Bind, nail, plash, and dress, especially Wall-Fruit, especially such as are tender, for now the greatest danger of the Frosts hurting them is in a manner over; and finish the work before the Bearers and Buds swell; however Nectarins and other choice Fruit it may be omitted, till the next Month, especially if the weather be very cold, bind the collateral Branches, to put the Wall-trees in good shape, but strain them not too roughly, or unnaturally, for that hinders the Sap in its free motion; and this, and well pruning, lies one Master-piece of a Gardener as to these particulars.

The Grafts of former Years Grafting, may be now removed; Lay and Cut Quick-set, Trim up your Espaliers

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 59

and the Hedges of your Palisadoes; and hitherto you may  
 plant the Vine, and divers sorts of Shrubs.

Kernels, or Stones of Fruit, are proper now to be set,  
 or sowed. This is a proper Month for the Circumposi-  
 tion, by Baskets, or Tubs of Earth; and such Branches  
 as you would leave to take Root, may be now layed in  
 the Earth.

Moss your Fruit-trees, and apply Remedies for Can-  
 cers, as cutting them out, and laying on a Plaister of  
 Hidgeons-dung, Tar, and sweet Butter.

Drain your Orchard, and rid it of the wet that lyes sap-  
 ping at the Roots of the Trees, either proceeding from  
 Rain, melted Snow, or Springs: Cast good Earth about  
 the Roots of the Trees; cover those that were layed bare;  
 prune off the webs of Catterpillars, hanging on the Twigs,  
 or Branches: After Rain, pick up Worms and Sug-Snails,  
 and destroy them, by putting them into hot Water, or  
 Lime. About the middle, till the latter end of this Month,  
 it may be very proper to Graft in the Cleft; and this ne-  
 cessary work may be held on till the end of March, espe-  
 cially Pears, Plums, Apples, Cherries; and it is best  
 done in the new and old Moon.

Fruits in their full Virtue, and still continuing.

Pears. The *Winter Poppering*, the *Winter Bon-Chretien*,  
 the *Little Dagobert*, the *Ward-n*.

Apples. The *Reniting*, the *Loons Pearmain*, the *Kentish*  
*Kirton*, the *Holland Pippin*, the *Winter Queening*, the *Harvy*  
*Apple*, the *Golden Doucet*, the *Pome Roy*, the *Russet Pippin*.

Aries  $\gamma$ , or the Ram.

M A R C H.

YOU may yet Dung your Orchard, and Plant Trees  
 that remain yet unset, though it had been better  
 done

done in the last Month, unless in moist cold places, they are very backward.

This whole Month you may Graft, first with Pears in the beginning, and so conclude it with Apples, unless be in an extraordinary forward Spring, wherein the Trees put very early out, both Leafs and Blossoms.

Nectarins and Peach-trees may successfully be Planted but forbear to take off the top of the Root, as of other Trees is proper, by Reason it will endanger their taking Root at all, or at least hinder their growth, and thriving. Cut off the tops of your budded Stocks, and prune Grafts of the last Year. Uncover your Seed, or Kernel-beds, or if the weather be cold, or much wet, refrain it till April. Stir the new planted Ground, and well lay and order it.

Cover Tree-roots that have continued bare since Autumn, and cut your Quick-sets, trim your Fruit in the Fruit-lofts, but open not the windows, lest too great confluence of Air putrefy, and cause them to rot.

Fruits still Lasting, and in their Vertue.

Pears. The Double Blossom Pear, the Bon Chrestien.

Apples. The Winter Pearmain, the Golden Duncet, the Bon Pearmain, the Pippin, the Reineting.

Taurus  $\times$ , or the Bull.

A P R I L.

**K**eepe your Orchard free from weeds; water Trees where they are upon a dry ground, but ever do this at a distance, that the water may soak leisurely to the Roots. Hang well betimes such borders as your Wall Fruit stands in, and refresh the ground with compost; so no Flowers there, that they may not hinder your stirring the Ground; keep Weeds clear, as also Worms and Snails; only the Outverges you may adorn with a Border of

Pink



inks, or any pleasant thing, that grows low, and will not shadow the heat of the Sun from the Root of the Tree, and you may sprinkle the rest with Salleting; but when they begin to run to Seed, or aspire, pluck them up by the roots and all, or as soon as they are fit for young and tender Salleting. Graft by approach, Oranges, Limons, pomegranates, &c.

Fruits still Lasting, and in full Virtue.

Pears. The *Oak-Pear*, the *Bon-Chrestien*, the *Double Blossom*, the *Rowling Pear*.

Apples. The *Deux-ans*, *Pippins*, *Flat Reinnet*, *Westbury*, *Apple*, *Gilleflower*.

---

Gemini II, or the Twins.

M A Y.

**T**His Month, as to matters in the affairs of Orcharding, in a manner gives the Arborist rest, only be careful to keep under the Weeds, spread and bind down the Branches on Arbours; and clip such Trees as require it, for pleasantness and shade.

Bring the Orange-trees out of the Conservatory, at such time as you see the Mulberry-tree put forth, and open its Leafs, let the weather be what it will, for that is an infallible Rule for the proper Season, to transplant and remove them, but do it with care, drawing the Tree out with competent Mould sticking to it, when you have well loosened it from the sides of the case, and so with better ease place it in another, filled with earth, taking up the first half spit, just under the Turf of the richest Pasture-ground, in a place that has been well fothered, and take rotten Cow-dung one part, and mix with this, or at least very mellow Soil, well skreened or sifted; and if this proves too stiff, lift a little Loom in it, or a little Lime, with

with the small rotten sticks of Willows; then cut the two extravagant or thick Roots a little at the bottom, and set the Plant but shallow, rather let some of the Root be seen, than that it be too deep: If you cut off any Branch, make a Searcloth of Rosin, Tarpentin, Bees-wax, and Tallow, and place it upon the Wound, till it is healed.

As for the Cases, they must have such vents at the bottom, that the wet moderately pass out, and not stay in any abundance, to corrupt or rot the fibers of the Root. Water this kind of Trees, with Water wherein Sheep and Neats dung has been digested in the Sun, two or three days, and that moderately at first, and so more by degrees. Keep the Earth loose about them, for the first fortnight after they are brought out of your Conservatory, or Greenhouse, and keep them the while in the shade, and then you may expose them freely to the Sun, but not when it is too scorching, by lying too long on them, but where sometimes the intermission of shade of Trees may refresh them with coolness.

Give this Month your other housed Plants a little fresh Earth to the old, stirring that up lightly with a Fork, not injuring the Roots: Enlarge the Cases as the Trees grow bigger, from sixteen Inches to near a Yard Diameter.

Brush and cleanse off the dust, when you take them out of the Houses; and such as you transplant not, pare a little above an Inch of the surface, and lay new Earth, or rather compost of neats dung, and the ouze of the bottom of the Tanners Pit, both being old, so that the wet may wash down the strength of it to the bottom of the Root; you need you trim the Roots of any Verdures, unless much matted, or intangled; but it will be proper to change their Cases once in three or four years.

As for Fruits in Season, Prime, or still Lasting, these are,

Pears. The *Winter Bon-Chrestien*, the *Great Kereville*, the black *Pear of Worcester*, the *Double Blossom-Pear*, the *Surrein*.

Apples. The *Forward Codling*, the *Gilliflower Apple*, the *Marygold*, the *Rusling*, the *Malligar*, the *Westbury*.

the John Apple, Pippins. The May Cherry, and  
strawberries.

Cancer ♋, or the Crab.

J U N E.

**A**Bout the fourteenth Day of this Month you may begin to Inoculate Pears, Apples, Abricots, Peaches, Quinces, Cherries, &c. Cleanse the Vines of luxuriant Branches, and tenderness; crop them rather than cut 'em, and stop the second joynt, directly before the Fruit, and some under Branches that are fruitless; particularly Vines, that are young planted, when they but begin to bear, and go forward, binding the rest up to the props or staves.

Water Trees lately planted, and cover the Roots (if you can get it) with Fern, almost rotten, about a Foot of stem stem, having first eradicated all Weeds that grow about them.

Place near the Stem a Tub of impregnated Water, lap about it a reasonable length of woollen Cloth, or Flannel about it, let one end of it hang in the Water, so that thereupon the moisture ascending, the Bark will draw it in, and much cool it, in this and the two following scorching months, thereby preventing the Fruit falling off untimely, by reason of excessive heat, that wastes the moisture; and this way will recover the Verdure of a Tree that is fainting, and languishing for want of moisture, by reason of great droughts, or scorching of the Leafs and smaller boughs, by the Sun's hot beams; but do not continue the Water so long that it may sob the Bark, lest it by over-wetting injure the Tree.

If Trees that used to be often removed, or carried to and fro from your Conservatory, be hurt, or languish, you may this Month give them a Milk-dyet, viz. dilute with a part of Water, discreetly applied, as you find  
amend.

amendment; or by planing them in a hot Bed, setting the down into a pit in the Earth, two or three foot deeper than they are high, and so covering them with a Glass Frame; which refreshing, often enlivens and restores them according as the young Tree is either wanting in warmth or nourishment.

Fruits in Season, and Prime.

Cherries, Black, White, and Red. *Flanders Heart Dutch Early Flanders, Lukeware, Spanish Black, Common Cherry, Naples Cherries, &c. Strawberries, Raspberries, Currants.*

Pears. *Green Royal, St. Lawrence-Pear, the Magdalen the First Ripe of Pears, the Madera.*

Apples. *The Pippin, the John Apple, the Redfenow the Robittlard.*

Leo  $\Omega$ , or the Lyon.

J U L Y.

**W**ATER young Trees not long planted, as also Layer and the like: Re-prune Peaches and Abricot save many of the likely young Shoots, to be layed in the Ground, that they may further encrease; for now usually the old bearers perish, and are succeeded by new ones; cut them close, and even; well pruning your Wall-Fruit of the Leafs that are superfluous, hindering the Suns warmth from the Fruit, but bare not the Fruit too much, lest it prove injurious, especially to Vines.

When the Fruit requires filling, or is forming, make holes, about a Foot and a half from your Wall-Fruit without wounding the Roots, and pour in water; you may let the setting-sticks you make them with, stand them a little loose, so that water may come to the Root leisurely; or this may be done with semi-circle Trenches at a like distance.

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 63

Towards the latter end of this Month, visit the Vines again, and stop the luxuriant Branches, or Shoots, at the second Joynt, above the Fruit, if you have not finished it before; but let there be some umbrage in your exposing to the Sun, that there may not be too much of the heat: hang Bottles of cool water near your Red Roman Nectars, and other luscious Fruit, to destroy the Wasps that come to eat, and spoil them, and also Flies: Set the hoofs of Neats Feet, to take Erwigs in, which are equally mischievous; and at noon shake them into water to destroy them.

Destroy Ants, to preserve your Orange-trees when flowered, by pouring scalding Water, or rather Urine, on their hills: Pull off the Snails that you will find under the Leafs, above the Fruit; but not the Fruit that is bitten, for then they will fall to biting afresh: Have an eye upon Weeds, pull them up where they sprout; begin to hang them as soon as they peep out of the Ground; and by this means, you will rid more in a few Hours than in many when they are grown up.

Lay Lawrel, Mirtles, and other delicate green: Water choice Shrubs, and when ever you shift them, trim the Roots, and give them good store of compost; Clip Box after gentle Showers of Rain, and in watering it well hereupon, the scent will not be offensive to any thing that grows near it. Graft by approach, Inarch and Inculcate Oranges, Jesemins, and curious Shrubs, taking off the surface of the Earth; about the latter end of this Month, put cooling fresh Earth to them, that they may the better weather the hot Season.

In the dryest Season strow Pot Ashes, or sprinkle Brine, which Improve Grafts, and destroy Worms. Water your Green Walks with water, wherein Tobacco Stalks have been boiled, and it will kill Worms, and other Insects that Infest them.

Fruits in Season, Prime, or yet remaining good.

Cherries. The *Egriot*, *Brigziaux*, *Great Bearer*, *Morocco*, *Marocco Cherry*, and *Carnations*.

Peaches. The *Violet Muscat*, *Nutmeg Peach*, *Isabella*, *Newington*, *Persian*, and *Rambouillet*. Plums.

Plums. *Lady Elizabeth*, *Primordial*, *Damascens*, *Molans*, *Blue and Red*, and *Amber Violet*, *Violet or Cherry Plum*, the *Kings Plum*, *Deny Damask*, *Pear-Plum*, *Cinnamon Plum*, *Spanish Morocco-Plum*, *Tawny*, and *Abricot-Plum*.

Apples. The *Marger-Apple*, *Deux-ans*, *Winter Russet*, *Pippins*, *Andrew-Apple*, *Juneting*, *Cinamon-Apple*, *Red* and *White*.

Pears. The *Green Chest*, *Pearl-pear*, the *Primat*, *Russet-pear*, *Summer-pears*.

*Goosberries*, *Currants*, *Rasberries*, *Strawberries*, *Melon*

Virgo ♍, or the Virgin-Sign.

## AUGUST.

**B**egin now early to Inoculate; gather Buds of the Year, and do it before you remove the Stocks: Cut away the superfluous Branches, and such Shoots as are found of these second Spring, but do not disrobe the Fruit of too many Leafs, whereby they may be left too open to the scorching of the Sun: Nail up such as you leave on to cover the Wall's defects: still take away the superfluous Branches from the Vines, but not so much as to expose the Grapes too much to the Suns heat, lest they lose their plumpness, and ripen unkindly. Pluck up Suckers.

Release and unbind the Buds you have Inoculated, if they have taken; prune and stop them; make Cyder, and Summer-Perry.

Now is the exact Season for the Orange-tree's budding therefore at the commencement of this Month Inoculate upon Seed-Stocks of four Springs; and to have the better Buds, cut off the top of some aged Orange-tree, which is of a growing kind, and so get good Shoots.

About *Bartholomew-tide* lay your choice Green; as *Lemons*, *Oranges*, *Mirtles*, *Jesemin*, *Philareus*, *Arbutus*, *Oleanders*, and excellent Shrubs; as the *Pomegranates* and



## With the Gardener's Almanack. 87

And such as will not endure the nipping of the Frosts taking the Branches and Shoots of the Spring, stake them down with little hook-stakes, in very fertile Earth, well filled with Soil that is consumed; Water them during the wet weather, on all convenient times; and when this Month returns again, they will be fit to remove; transplant them into sutable Earth, and place them in the shade, that they may be kept moderately moist, but not too wet, for fear of rotting the fibers of the Roots; and at the end of three weeks, find out an Arier place to set them, till the end of fifteen Days.

**Fruits in Season, Prime, and yet remaining Sound.**

**Apples.** *Sheeps-head, Kirham-Apple, May-Flower, Seaming-Apple, Cushion-Apple, Ladies Longing, Spicing-Apple, John-Apple, Pippin.*

**Pears.** *The Slipper-pear, Burgomot, Red Catharine, Sovereign, Windsor, Orange, the Prussia-pear, King Catharine, the Deny-pear, Sugar-pear, Summer-popprings, the Lording-pear, &c.*

**Nectarins.** *The Cluster-Nectarine, the Yellow-Nectarine, the Muroy-Nectarine, the Tawney Red-Roman, the Little Green-Nectarine, &c.*

**Abricots and Peaches.** *The Savoy Mala-cotton, the Peach des Pot, the Roman-peach, Quince-peach, Man-peach, Bordeaux-peach, Crown-peach, Rambouillet, Musk-peach, Grand Carnation, Portugal-peach, Lover-peach.*

**Plums.** *The White Date, Imperial-Blew, Black Pear-plum, Yellow Pear-plum, Late Pear-plum, Great Anthony, Darky-plum, White Nutmeg, Jane-plum.*

**Some other Fruits of this Month, viz.** *Filberts, Cornelians, Cluster-Grapes, and Muscadine, Currants, Figs, Medlars, &c.*

Libra  $\alpha$ , or the Ballance.

## S E P T E M B E R.

**T**his is a proper Month to gather the ripe Winter Fruit; as Plums, Apples, Pears, &c. For if they hang longer, the Winds being boisterous, will shake them off, and spoil them for keeping, by their fall; observe to gather them always in dry weather; and if the Season forbid it, when the Sun has Sucked up the Dews and moisture from the Fruit and Leafs.

Let at Liberty the Buds you have Inoculated, especially if you perceive them pinch, for in that case it may be done sooner. Lay on your Winter-store of dung, spread it finely, and thinly, that the Rain may soak it in, to fertilize the Ground. Prune Pine and Fir-trees, between the ninth and twelfth of this Month, if it was neglected in *March*; and this will prove the more prosperous Season. About *Michaelmas*, house choice green and the tender Plants, in a convenient Conservatory; as Limons, Oranges, Barba, Jovis, Amonium, Dates, &c. ordering them with refreshing Mould, stirring up the rest, and so filling up the Cases, that they may keep the Roots warm, as consumed and rich Soil to wash in, and nourish the fibres; yet keep the Windows open, till the cold admonish you to shut them.

Set such Plants as agree not to be housed into the Earth, placing their Pots and Cases lower than the surface of the Bed, and expose them as much as may be to the Sun, that the Sun may a little refresh them in the Winter, and the cold Northren Winds be skreened off; cloath them with dry and fresh Moss, and then cover them with Glasses, but in open weather, under the favour of the Sun's warm Beams, or falling of gentle Showers, give them Air to revive and exhilarate them, and keep them from the annoyance of any Creature, that may come to break, bruise, or otherwise spoil them.

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 69

Fruits in Season, prime, and still remaining sound.

Grapes. The *Muscadine-grape*, the *little Blue-grape*, the *juice-grape*, excellent for pickling.

Peaches. The *Malacoton*, the *Laver-peach*, &c.

Pears. The *Misieur Jane*, *Beze d' Hery*, *Hambden's*, *Argomont*, *Black Worcester*, the *Rowling-pear*, the *Green*, *Id Orange*, the *Summer bon Christien*, *Frith-pear*, *Hedge-*, *Lewis-pear*, *Brunswick-pear*, *Winter Poppering*, *Bishop's*, *Bing's-pear*, *Diego*, *Emperor's-pear*, *Cluster-pear*, *Bal-*, *m-pear*, *Enelyn*, *Norwich-pear*, *Arundel-pear*, *Green-*, *elding*.

Apples. The *William*, the *Belle-bonne*, the *Summer Pear-*, *ain*, the *Red Greening Ribed*, *Violet Apple*, *Bloody-pippin*, *aruy Apple*, *Pear Apple*, *Lording Apple*, *Quince Apple*, and several others of less worth or note.

---

Scorpio m, or the Scorpion.

## OCTOBER.

NOW is the proper time for trenching Ground, in order to the well laying it for Orchards, that the Winter may mellow it. Plant your dry Trees, viz. fruit-trees, of all sorts, Wall-trees, Standards, or Shrubs, such as lose their Leaves, but let those for the Wall be not above two years grafting, smooth, and very sound. Ab-solution is now in season; as for old unthriving Trees, tear their Roots; and of those that over-hastily blow, stir well the Ground you have newly planted: Continue in the Encrease of the Moon to gather Winter-fruit that remains, always observing to gather when they are dry, and beware of pinching or bruising them with your Fingers; lest they taint and rot, lay them in fresh Wheat-straw in your Loft, and cover them warm.

Plash and make up your Quickset Fences; after the second Year remove Grafts, unless such as are intended for Dwarf.

Dwarf-trees, which may well be let alone till the Year.

Sow hard and stoney, and hard Kernel seeds, as the of the Pear-plum, Heart-Cherries, Black-cherries, Nello's, the Stones of Almonds, Apple, Pear, C. Nuts, &c. Cleanse, by sweeping, your Walks and lies of the Autumnal Leaves, lest rotting, they breed insects to annoy your Ground. Cut away the hedgey spread Mole-hills, and scrape the Moss from off your Fruit-trees.

Fruit in Season, prime, or still remaining sound.

Pears. The Lambert Pear, Roussel Pear, Green But Pear, Cow Pear, Saffron Pear, Russet Pear, Petworth Pear, Violet Pear or Winter Windsor Pear, Thorn Pear, Clove Pear with some of last Months Pears.

Apples. Pear Apple, Pearmain, Parsly Apple, Bell et Bon Honey-meal, Apis-Lording, William Costard, &c.

Bullis, and many of the last Months Plums, Pines, Grape Arbutus, &c.

---

Sagittarius ♐, or the Shooter.

## N O V E M B E R.

**N**OW get your Compost in readiness in your Orchard to secure the Roots of tender Plants from the Cold: continue planting and setting Trees: observe in transplanting, how your Tree stood before, and place it to the same Quarter, and about the same depth, fixing it well against the Violence of the Wind, especially West and South: set wet, and sow dry; plant young Trees, either Wall or Standards; provide in Nurseries Stocks to grow on the ensuing Year, and get new Stocks in a Reading for all sorts of Fruits, for Standards, Crab-stocks, &c. for Dwarf-trees, the Stocks of Paradise, or Sweet Apple, &c.

Kernel

thornels, which may be obtained from Suckers and Layers, warfs on the Portugal Quince Suckers, Pears on the thornel-stock of Pears or Suckers, Standard-cherries on the black-cherry-stone stock, Dwarfs for Palisadoes or Walls, on the black Heart or Morello Stock, or the small bly bitter Cherry-stock: Inoculate Peaches on the Plum-stock, or their own. In budding on the Almond, it is proper to do it on a Stock that has not been removed; if it is proper it should keep its Situation. Graft Nectarines on Pear-plum or Peach-stocks, Plums on their own stocks, and of these kinds the black and white Pear-plum stocks are to be preferred, and those growing from Damson-stones, or such as may be advantageously gathered from Pear Suckers: And about the middle of this Month shut up your choice Trees, and enclose tender Plants, that so you may not be oppressed with the violent Cold of the Winter; over-power their Heat and destroy them; and if they come very dry, and it be not freezing Weather, refresh them moderately with Water wherein Cow or Sheeps-dung is dissolved, but give them not too much, nor make over-rich with Dung, for both these are injurious, especially to Orange-trees: as for the Aloes, they require watering in the Winter, but only refreshing abroad in our day, how dry soever their Pots or Cases may appear to be. To know if your housed Trees want Water, by the Leaves shrinking or shriveling up, especially those underneath; and the paleness of the Leaves shew they have had too much, which lies sapping at the Root, and dangers destroying them.

This Month you may plant Forest-trees for the gracing your Walks or Avenues; sow stoney Seeds, sweep and cleanse your Walks and Alleys of Leaves, &c. and transplant Trees that are durable against Cold, taking up as much of the Earth they grow in with the Root as you can, and immediately set them in a soft Earth that may continue moist till the Rain descends to settle it.

Fruits in Season, prime, and still remaining sound. Pears. The Dead-mans Pear, Bergomont, Lord Pear, Mefsean, Burnt-cat, Warden, Lady Pear, Sugar Pear, Ice Pear, Dove Pear, Winter-Bergomont, Bell-Pear.

Apples.

Apples. *Pear Apple, Belle-Bon, the William, the Summer Pearmain, the Lord Apple, the Winter Chefnut, the Star, the Russet Pippin, the Puffin, the Cole Apple, the pin, the Pomewater, the Golding, the John Apple.*

*Services, Bullis, Medlars, Arbutus, Wall-nuts, Small-nuts and the like.*

Capricorn ♊, or the Goat.

## D E C E M B E R.

**T**His Month properly Vines may be planted; prune and fasten Wall-fruit; thin the over-spreading Branches of Standard, though you may spare them till *January*; prepare good Stocks for grafting; sow Pommes of the Cyder-pressings to raise Nurseries; you may set all sorts of Stones or Kernels; refresh your Autumn Fruit lest it taint; feed your weak Stocks, open the Windows of your Fruit-lofts in a fair day.

This whole Month you may continue to trench the Ground, and dung it, preparing thereby for Borders set palisado'd or Wall-fruit Trees.

In this Month (or you may defer it till *January*) cut off or prune well the Vine-shoots to the Root, only leaving two or three of the best Shoots, with three or four Eyes of young Wood: set up Traps to destroy Vermin, that they destroy not your Nursery-seeds, or the Roots of your tender Plants.

Keep close the Doors and Windows of your Conservatory, so matted that the piercing Air cannot enter to injure your choice Greens; and if the Weather be extreme you must have a Stove or Charcoal Fire in it in the manner as shall be directed hereafter; but do not frequently use it any more than Necessity requires.

Take Bay-berries that are dropping ripe, and set them over warm the Pipes and Cocks of your Fountains, if you have them.



8  
S  
e

-m

oru  
adi  
ll  
ma  
t a  
ru  
lo

s

o  
fa

Ev  
th  
yo

erv  
o  
ea  
ma  
nt

he  
ye  
tra

ye  
of  
are

Pe  
ju  
sc  
no  
A  
d

he  
w  
t

F y  
ab  
y o  
To  
an  
ere  
r t  
y  
al  
ur  
sk  
th  
at  
ur  
le  
TH  
eve  
W  
an

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 73

ve any in your Grounds, with much soiled Horse-litter, they are flawed and cracked by the Violence of the frost, and put you to much Charge for want of timely care to prevent it.

Fruits in Season, prime, and still remaining sound.

Pears. The *Spindle-pear*, the *Squib-pear*, the *Stople-pear*, the *White and Red*, the *French-warden*, the *Dignery*, the *Virgin*, the *Worcester*, the *Bergomoni*, the *Deadmans-pear*, the *Scarlet-pear*, the *Walling-pear*.

Apples. The *Russeting*, *Leather-coat*, *Winter Red*, *Cats-head*, *Chestnut Apple*, *Great-belly*, *Pippin*, *Pearmain*, &c.

---

*The best and safest way to gather Summer and Winter Fruit for keeping; and how to order them for that purpose.*

If you design to keep Cherries for sundry Uses, especially in Preserving, great Care must be taken in gathering of them.

To do this, it is most proper to have a Ladder with a Riser or Crutch of light Timber, that it may stand as it were of it self, without pressing on the Boughs to endanger their breaking, or the bruising of the Fruit, which may conveniently be removed to all parts: gather by the stalk, without squeezing the Cherry with any part of your hand, and put them gently into your Cherry-pot or Basket hanging by a Hook on some convenient Bough well within your reach, taking care to break no Stalk but let the ripe Fruit hang on; lay them gently in, and put them gently into your Reeiver below with as much care as you can.

This kind of Fruit is best carried in broad Baskets like Sieves, with a smooth yielding Bottom: If you carry them in Water, let not the Sieves be full, lest setting one upon another you bruise and spoil them; but if in Carts or Horse-

## 74 The New Art of Gardening.

Horse-back, well line the Bottom or Sides of the Sieve with Fern, or such other cool Vegetable, to keep them from bruising, and likewise to prevent their sweating.

### *To gather and order other Stone-fruit.*

When you are to gather Nectarines, Apricocks, Peaches, Damsons, Pear-Plums, Bullis, and the like, of several kinds, and they seem not to be ripe at once; on one Tree stay not for all of them at once, but cull out those that are, and wait for the ripening of the rest; unless you perceive they have received their full Substance, and the Tree can properly yield them no more than in a fair Day when the Sun sucketh up the Dew. - Set up your Ladder as before, and gather them with a tender hand without squeezing or bruising; place in your Basket, or broad Pan, Nettle, and lay them in gently, and so let them stand covered on the Top with Nettles also, and this Weed will be a great means to hasten the ripening of those that are yet attained to it.

### *To gather Pears the best way.*

In doing this, observe two things.

1. If you gather them for your own spending, and will have them keep, gather them as soon as they change, are, as some call it, half ripe, and no more; letting the rest that are not come to this perfection hang till they change likewise; and then gather them; and so they ripen the more kindly, and not, by many degrees, be subject to rot so soon as if you let them be full ripe on the Tree.

2. If you design to transport them far, either by Water or Land, then pluck a Pear, cut it in the middle, and at the Core you find a large hollow space, then gather the rest, and Pack them gently in such Baskets or Hampers you design to carry or transport them in, laying Wheat-Straw to secure them from bruising; for if they are gathered

## With the Gatherer's Annanack. 75

red too soon, this kind of Fruit will shrink and wither, or being too ripe, unless very hard Pears, they will be subject to rot sooner than ordinary: Lay them in your Cellar on Wheat-Straw.

*gather and order Apples in the best manner.*

To know when your Summer Apples are hasting to a decay, observe the Birds pecking at them, and with a few many will fall; or if of those you gather, the Kernels are in them, these are signs of Ripeness.

Gather these in a fair Sunshiny day, and use them in all ways as the Pear, for they will not be lasting in keeping, that they may be fair, and remain a long while, have care of bruising them in gathering.

Winter Apples are for a long Duration, gather them on a fair Sunshiny or dry day, when all the moisture are off them and the Leaves, for the least Wet will subject them to Heat, Sweat, and Rot, when layed in heaps in

the Cellar; when you have set up your Ladder, not leaning on the Tree; draw those Boughs gently to you as far as you can reach with a hooked Stick;

or then with a gentle hand, rather by the Stalks than by the Boughs, and put them leisurely into your Basket, hanging the Ladder, or on a convenient Bough by a Hook; and when you empty, do it not roughly, lest bruises, or their Stalks pricking them, cause them to rot: gather them

from Leaves or Branches, because the one mingled with the other, and subject the Fruit to rot; and the other being the Tree, and hinders it much from breeding the next year, being the Buds that would produce new Fruit.

After the Fallings that are shaken down by the Wind, or by Accidents, if upon soft Grass, they may be sorted by themselves, and laid up; but if much bruised, immediate

bury them in a Cellar, for they will not keep. Lay your Apples in a heap on Bye-Straw, in Maunds or bushels, lined with the same, and so you may be removing at any time, or preserve them from the Inroads of the Frost, and make them keep sound a long time.

Gather them without the Stalk, because with it they sooner corrupt and rot at that place, laying Sweet between every Layer of Apples, and between the several sorts of them, if more than one be in a Basket or M

*To gather and secure Quinces from rotting, &c.*

Gather these in a dry day, when the Moisture is out of the Trees and Fruit: pluck them gently from the Stalks, keep them in clean Wheat-straw, laid or pack'd as may be: Separate them a good distance from other Fruit, because their Scent is offensive to it: you may pack them in dry Casks, but so as Air may come at them, for a great Preserver of them: all Dampness makes them mouldy, and rot: when you pack them, lay Layers of Straw between them, and such as lie loose in your Lofts turn them often.

*To gather and keep Medlars and Services*

The Medlar must be plucked gently before it be full, for it will soon grow ripe of it self when off the Tree: lay them on heaps in your Fruit-Loft on dry Straw, turning or shifting them. Let them not lie too thick one on another; and if you pack them let it be in Sieves or Casks, laying small shavings or dry Straw between them, cover them with a woollen Cloth, and lay a Board or weight upon them to press them down with Weights: so being left unto a Ferment, they will ripen slowly, and take away that ripen first, and place them by themselves. If they be suffered to lie with the hard ones till they are ripe, they will grow mouldy; and so do till they are all ripe.

As for Services, you need no more than gather them before they are ripe: Stalks and all, tie them up in bunches and hang them on Lines in an airy yet warm place, and they will slowly ripen.



of the Fruit-Loft, Stowing and Managing  
Fruit for keeping.

you are to carry Fruit far by Land or by Water, do it not in hard frosty Weather nor in the Extream Heat of Summer, nor in the Month of *March*, when the Winds sharp and high.

Winter-fruit must neither lye too close nor too open, hot nor too cold, free from all offensive Smells; for Fruit will be apt to attract them, and taint.

A low Room or Cellar that is clean and sweet, either red or boarded, but not too close, I hold best to lay or put your Winter-fruit into at *Christmas* if it be open Weather, and so let them continue till *March*.

Then a Room that is ceiled over-head and from the ground, will do very well from *March* till *May*; and thence till *Michaelmas* a Cellar is very proper: keep them in all places from moist or sweating Walls, and from any other thing that is offensive.

There are some sorts of Fruit that rarely can be kept long, *Allhollandtide*, and these must be laid by themselves, as those that will last till *Christmas* by themselves, and those that last till *Shrovetide* by themselves, and *Pearmains*, *Pinar*, *Foehn Apples* and *Winter Russetings*, that will last the year, by themselves: pick out the specked or rotten ones, lest they corrupt the rest: you need not turn the lasting Apples till a week before *Christmas*, unless you have mixed them with others of a riper kind; or that Fallings be among them, or much of the first *Scraw* amongst them. The next proper time to turn them is *Shrovetide*, and then once a Month till *Whitsuntide*, and always in turning lay your Heaps lower and lower, till the Straw very thin, but handle them at no time in great Frost, except they be in a close warm Cellar.

Fruit, at every Thaw, are consequently moist, and must

not for some time be touched, unless such as you  
for present use; forbear them likewise during  
Rains, but at these times it may be proper to set  
your doors and windows, to let in the free Air, at  
in the Forenoon in Winter, and at Six in Summer  
not at all in March.

To make Curious, Pleasant, Wholesome  
Liquors, and Wines of divers English  
Fruits, growing in Orchards and Gar-  
dens.

*To make Cider.*

**T**ake the Apples you best fancy, or the best your Orchard yields, proper to this use, viz. Golden Pippins, Pippins, Redstreak, or Pear-mains, when they are indifferent Ripe, which you may try by shaking of the Tree, and their easy falling thereupon: and if you have no Mill to grind them, beat with a wooden Beater, very weighty, in a wooden trough, or Tub, well fixed and bedded in the Earth, to prevent any hollownes at the bottom, till they are become very small; put in a little Sugar, or new Wort, to make them beat the easier; and when they are Mashed sufficient, put them into a hair Bag, filling it about three quarters full; put it into a Press of equal wideness, well fixed, upon it a strong Plank, then bring down the skreen, and spindle upon it, directly in the middle, with an iron barrow, and press it by turning gradually, till the Apples are squeezed dry, having your receiver to take the Liquor runs through a Foffet fixed in the Press.

This done, strain it through a course linnen-cloth into a Cask; put to each Gallon an Ounce of Loaf-Sugar, and stop it up close for 24 Hours, in which time it will ferment, and be ready to work at that time: mix a little Flower and Honey together, as big as a Pullet's Egg; set the Cask on a stand, where you intend it shall continue,

## So The New Art of Garbening,

me, and put it in, and then let it work ; which and well settled, draw it from the Lees, and bottle it or for want of Bottles, into an other Cask, rinsed with Water wherein a little sweet Margorum has been bo and it will prove excellent Cyder.

You may make a smaller sort, or a good cooling of Drink, by steeping the pressings in Water two or three Days, often stirring them, and then pressing them before.

You may make a good sort of Cyder of Codlings in the same manner, but let them not be over ripe when you gather them ; wind-falls (presently used) will do as well as the best.

### *Pery, the best way to make it:*

**T**AKE Pears that are hasting towards ripening, but have not attained to it ; of such sorts as best please you, as Windsor-pears, White and Red Catharines, range-pears, or such as are pleasant tasted ; take off the stalks, cut them in four parts, and pour scalding hot water to them, wherein some sliced Pears have been boiled ; let them steep 24 Hours, then draw the Water off, and preserve it.

This done beat the Pears, as you did the Apples, press them in your Press ; in like manner strain the liquor you receive, and put it into a Cask, and into the Cask hang a Bag of mashed Rasins of the Sun, and a beaten Mace, for five or six days ; and when the Pery is frothed and purged, by putting a little warm new Ale on the top of it, let it settle, and draw it off in Bottles ; for this sort of Liquor keeps much better so, than in a Cask ; and so when ripe, which will be in five or six Weeks, it will prove an exceeding pleasant and whole Liquor.

Mix the pressings with the Water you drew off, they will make another good sort of Pery, though weaker and not so well to keep long.

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 83

### To make Wine of Grapes.

When Ripening-time comes, take away the most shading Leaves of the Vines, and let the Sun have full power on the Clusters for two or three Days; then in a Day pick off those Grapes that are the ripest, letting the rest hang on the stalks to ripen kindly; afterwards wase and press them in a Rat or Press made for that purpose, in a fine Canvas-bag, but not so violent hard to break the Stones if you can avoid it, for they will give the Wine a bad Taste; then strain it well, and let it settle on the Lees in such a Cask as you may draw it off without disturbing the Bottom or Settling; then season a Cask well, and dry it with a lighted Rag that has been dipped in Brimstone, fastned to the end of a Stick, and held in the Cask: then air it well abroad, and put the Wine unto it, and stop it up close 44 hours, then give it a venting or purging hole with a Gimlet, and after a day or two stop it up, and let it continue in the Cask or Bottle, and it will prove as good in two Months or ten Weeks as any French Wine.

### To make Wine of Cherries.

Take away the Stalks and Stones of your Cherries, and bruise them with a round wooden Ladle, or your hands very clean wash'd, and when they have stood about 25 hours, and fermented, make a Bag of two clean Napkins or other fine Linnen, and holding it over a great earthen Crock, or a wooden Vessel, pour the pulp and Juice into it, and hang the Bag over the Vessel, that as much as will may voluntarily drain; pour that out, and then press out the rest and strain it, then let it stand a while, and scum off what Froth arises: after that, pour it off by Inclination, and put it up into your Cask sweet and well season'd, adding a quarter of a pound of Leaf-Sugar to a Pottle or two quarts, and it will deepen the Colour; and when it has fermented, settled, and grown

## 22 The Method of Gardening,

fine, draw it off into Bottles, tying them over with  
then when corked, to keep the Corks tight, and the stoppers  
from flying out, and in 10 or 12 days it will be excellent  
cooling Wine, but the longer the better.

### To make a good Wine of Currants.

**P**ick the Currants, when they are full and ripe, and  
from the Stalks, put them into an earthen Vessel  
and pour on them hot Water, a quart to a gallon of Currants,  
bruise them well together, and let them stand to  
ferment; then after covering close about 12 hours, strain  
them as the Cherries: put the Liquor up into a Cask,  
to it a little new Ale Yeast, two or three spoonfuls;  
in other things, in all respects as the Cherry-wine:  
when it has purged and well settled, bottle it up.

### To make excellent Goosberry-Wine.

**T**ake the ripest Goosberries, deprive them of the  
stalk and blossom, and pour to a gallon a quart of  
Water wherein a sliced Quince has been boiled, and strain  
of the Goosberries; cover them 24 hours in a very close  
Vessel, then bruise them with the Water, and press out  
the liquid part by degrees, so that the Stones may not  
be broken: then to a gallon put a pound of Loaf-sugar,  
when there is a good Settlement in an earthen Jar or other  
Vessel close stopp'd, draw it off into Bottles, and it will  
keep good all the Summer and Winter.

### To make Raspberry-Wine.

**T**ake the Raspberries clear from the Stalk, to a gallon  
put a pottle of White-wine; and let them infuse in  
an earthen Vessel two or three days close covered; then  
bruise the Berries in the Wine, and through a fine line



## With the Gardener's Almanack. 83.

g strain and gently by degrees. squeeze out the liquid  
it: let it gently simmer over a very moderate Fire, or  
ace a Stein in which it is, on hot Wood-ashes or Embers,  
um off the Froth or what else arises, strain it again, and  
ith a quarter of a pound of Loaf-sugar to a gallon, let it  
ttle; then in half a pint of White-wine boil about an  
ance of well-scented Cinamon, and two or three Blades  
Mace, and put the Wine strained from the Spices into  
and bottle it up, and so it will prove an excellent  
rink and Cordial.

### *To make Mulberry-Wine:*

Take Mulberries just growing to be ripe, that is,  
when they are changing from Red to Black, to a  
Gallon put a quart of Rhenish-wine, let them infuse in a  
close Vessel 40 hours, and then in all respects use them as  
the Raspberries: and it will be a great Cooler in hot Wea-  
ter, and a Cordial in hot Diseases. If the Liquid be too  
thick, or encline to roping, at any time, even when you  
rink it, you may add more Wine as best suits your Pa-  
te, and so you will find it answer your Cost and  
labour.

### *To make Wine of Services.*

This, though not usual, is very pleasant and cordial;  
and to make it, Take the Services from the stalks:  
when they begin to be soft, bruise them with your hands:  
that you may not break the stones, infuse them in warm  
erry, a Gallon of them in two quarts, and as much  
ear Small-beer, then strain and press out the Liquid part,  
ne it, and put powder of White-sugarcandy a quarter of  
pound to a Gallon, and bottle it up for use.

Thus

## 14 The New Art of Gardening.

Thus having gone through whatever I conceive material to be practised for Advantage and Improvement in an Orchard, &c. I shall proceed to the like in the Delicacies of Gardening, as to what relates to Profit and Pleasure, which will be my succeeding Task in such a degree, that nothing in Print has hitherto come near it by many degrees.

---

# O F GARDENING:

And first of the

*Kitchin--GARDEN.*

What is necessary to be done and observed therein for Setting, Sowing, Rearing, and Bringing to Perfection Seeds, Herbs, Plants, Roots, &c.

---

## C H A P. I.

*Of the Soil, Site, and Form of a Plat of Ground futable to be improved for a Kitchin-Ground.*

**T**HE main thing in this, as in the former, is to find out a fitting Plat of Ground; and if it be not fertile of it self, so to cultivate and manure it, as it may answer your Expectations.

ons, and in this especially, at first there must be a great care taken, or you may bestow much labour and cost to little purpose.

The Soil of an Orchard and Garden may be said only to differ in this, that the Soil of the latter must be somewhat dryer than the former, because Herbs and Flowers being mostly more tender than Trees, cannot well endure too much Moisture or Drought in such excessive measures as Trees will do; and therefore choosing a moderate dry Soil, if Drought come, it is easier remedied than to take away Wetness that infests the Ground from Springs or the lowness of its lying, whereby it receives and keeps long the Rain-water.

The Soil of your Garden must be plain and well levelled at every Square, to be cast into the fittest Form; and the Reason is, the Garden-product wanting such Helps as should stay the Water, which an Orchard hath, and the Roots of Herbs being mellow or loose, is soon either washed away, or lose their Vigour by too much washing and moisture.

Again, if a Garden-soil be not clear of Weeds, especially of Knot-grass, it will never produce any thing kindly; and as the Richness or Barrenness of the Soil appears to produce, so manure less or more, at first digging it up a full Spit or something more, and trenching in the Dung; so that upon the falling of Showers it may soak indifferently alike to fertilize the whole Mass, or such Plats as your particular Materials require: and to keep down the Weeds, sow Ashes mingled with a little slack'd Lime, which will also destroy Worms and other Insects that infest Walks, Allies, Borders, devouring the Seed in the Earth, or the tender Roots or Leaves of Plants when sprung up. This must be done in *October* or *November*, that all things may be well prepared against the Spring, having your Tools and Instruments always in a Readiness, that no Occasion may be omitted to facilitate the Work in its proper Season.

As for the Site of your Garden, it may be the same with that of your Orchard, seeing they both tend to one main end, of Profit and Pleasure; however, the levelled

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 87

it lies, the more commodiously it produces. It must not be much exposed to bleak Winds, for there are many tender Herbs, Flowers, and Plants, necessary to be sowed, set, or planted, which will not live if that be admitted, and few will well prosper; and therefore the Garden-plat must be well fenced and secured from the North and North-east Winds, especially with high Walls or good Quicksets, well lined and thickned with Shrubs at the bottom, not only to keep out the Cold, but Cats, Dogs, Hares, Conies, and other things that greatly annoy Gardens, especially in their first propagating, by breaking or spoiling the tender Plants or Flowers; as likewise do Poultry, which must not be permitted to enter.

Let your Garden-plat be designed, as near as you can, in a good wholesome Air, not near any Fenney or Marshy places, or any other whence Damps, Foggs, or Stenches may arise, or blasting infectious Airs, to blite or poison the Plants, Herbs, or Flowers.

As for the Form of the whole Plat of Ground, the Square is accounted most commodious; next that the Oval, then Oct-angular; but here I can set no general Rule, because every Ground cannot be accordingly proportioned; and therefore it must be done as the Conveniency will admit; but as for special Forms, in the lesser Gardens, they are divided into many, and particularly Squares; and of these Knots, and other Fancies, there are as many Devices as the Gardeners Invention will admit of; for which the Skilful are to be commended in bringing with them Boards nailed to Stakes driven well in the Ground into various curious Figures, or to do it naturally by setting of Box, Hysop, Privet, Marjorum, Savory, Lavender, Draff, Rosemary, or the like, in various Circling, Intwining, or Mazy Forms: so that Herbs, Flowers, and curious Greens may grow in their proper order Exceeding delightful to the Eye. These may be made of green Turf planted with double Dazies or Violets, made up with Brick, Tile, Trotter Bones, or the like; but they are best raised with Boards: And indeed in Knots there are great Varieties, as the Diamond-squares, or Ground Plat; for Knots, the Cinquefoil, or many mazy Branches like the Leaves of

of Cinquefoil; the Cross-bow or four Bendings from the out-sides of the Square like the heads or bendings of Cross-bows, with a Diamond and a Square at the middle of it and other Flourishes to fill up the Vacancies of the Angles and Bends; the Interwoven, or Knot-flourished Diamond; The Oval; The Maze, or Labyrinth; and many more, which in words cannot be well Expressed, but rather require Figures, being far more obvious to the Eye than to the Ear, and of which I shall have more occasion to speak when I come to treat of Choice Flowers, &c. And therefore at present I shall proceed to other Matters.

*Further Directions for the well-ordering this kind of Garden in many material particulars: In its Sight and furnishing with Herbs, Plants, &c.*

**A**S for the Quantity of a Plat of Ground to make a sutable Garden there can be no particular Rule given, but every one may take such a proportion of Ground as conveniency will admit: but let me caution all, not to undertake more than can be well looked after with hands enough, for the well Management of things in their proper Seasons; for a small plat of Ground well ordered turns to greater Advantage than a large one neglected or that upon sundry Occasions cannot be so well compassed in due time: for if the Weeds get the mastery by want of hands to rid them, it will not be easy to root them out: also watering a large Garden in droughthy Weather requires much time and pains; and therefore my Opinion is, that one of a moderate quantity of good Ground is to be preferred, and may produce a Sufficiency of Herbs and Roots for use, and a Supply for the Market. But to come nearer to the intended Purpose.

Herbs are of two sorts, one for Scent and pleasant Prospect, the other for Food; and therefore it is proper the



be sowed or planted separate, and not too much mingled together, to hinder each others growth by the greater's overtopping and shadowing the lesser: and therefore the Garden for Flowers and curious Herbs ought to be separated from the Kitchen-Garden by some distinction (tho one Plat of Ground may contain them both) because your Garden-flowers will not only suffer Disgrace, but be annoyed, if among them you sow Onions, Lettice, Carrots, Parsnips, and the like, which drawn in their due Season, must moreover leave Roughness and Deformity on the Earth, and if not set at convenient Distances, take up the Roots of the Flowers with them, and make a Confusion and Disorder where Order and Comeliness should be; besides, the times of setting and ordering them are various, and the Ground being much stirred for the planting the one, injures the other; Cabages, Colliflowers, Colworts, and the like, making great Shadows to keep out the Sunbeams: Asparagus, and the like, runs its Root much spreading, which drawing up, brings away with it those lesser Plants and Flowers it has undermined or entangled: and so many other things which in their fading time are to be drawn, and others planted in their steads. And in the Kitchen-Garden you need not be at the trouble to raise your Beds so high as in the Summer-Garden, yet it is requisite you leave Alleys to go between, for the Advantage of Weeding, and gathering what is necessary in due season, without treading on or any ways bruising what remains, for these kind of Herbs and Roots will go deeper into the Ground, as requiring more wet than the other, and will better endure it: yet here you must observe to place your Herbs of the biggest growth by themselves, that all may have a proportion of the Sun's Heat, and the freshness of the Air, to make them thrive, and come kindly on for use, setting the biggest in the out-parts of Squares or Borders, and the lowest in the middle.

The several Growths of Herbs and Plants distinguished, to know the better how to place them.

**T**Hough Garden Herbs, Flowers, &c. are various and very numerous, yet in some measure they may be divided into two sorts; and briefly thus:

Of the Tallest Growth are,

Angelica, Fennel, Tansy, Holly-hocks, Elecampane, Lavender, Succory, Lillies, French Poppy, Endive, French Mallows, Clary, and such like.

Of the Middle Growth are,

Alexanders, Cardus, Benedicinus, Langdibies, Oculus Christi, Aniseeds, Coriander, Featherfennel, Wallflowers, Gilliflowers, Bugloss, Parsley, Marigolds, Beets, Berage, Lavender, Camphire, and the like.

Of the Smaller Growth are,

Pansy, Hearts-ease, Marjorum, Savory, Leeks, Chives, Chibbels, Liquorice, Strawberries, Hyssop, Peniroyal, Scurvy-grass, Fennel, Wood-sorrel, and many others, too tedious here to enumerate; and therefore I have given these as a Taste, and many others will follow in their due place. In the most sunny places of your Garden place the tenderest Plants, or such as you would have very forward; observing to keep them as warm as their Nature requires, either with Soil or Covering; when sharp Winds are abroad, the Weather is nipping, or that Blites or Blasts are expected.

Sunday

*Sundry sorts of useful Herbs, their Encrease, well-Ordering, and Preserving, &c.*

It will now be convenient that I give Instructions for the well-Ordering and Renewing Herbs, &c. proper for the Kitchen-Garden. And of these in order.

*Angelica* is renewed, with the Seed which it bears in plenty, the second Year, and then fades. You may remove the Roots the first Year: and in this manner you may use *Alexanders*.

*Aniseeds* make their growth the first Year, and bear much Seed, by which they must be renewed the next: and also *Coriander*.

*Borage* and *Bugloss* are wholesome Pot-herbs, and very cordial Herbs otherwise used: they are also renewed by Seed.

*Camomile* will easily grow being set of divided Roots on Banks not too moist; and the more it is pressed, the better it will thrive.

*Chibbals*, or *Chives*, part in the Root like *Lillies*, and must be renewed by transplanting the smaller Roots every 3d or 4th Year.

*Clary* is produced of the Seed, and seeds every second Year.

*Coast-root* parted may be set in March, and then it will bear the 2d Year.

*Elecampane* and *Lewage* are long lasting; they seed yearly, and in transplanting you may divide the Roots.

*Endive*, *Succory*, and *Fennel*, divide their Roots, and you may remove them before they put forth their Shanks.

*Featherfew* encreases by the shedding its Seed, without sowing.

*Hysop* may be set by Slips or young Roots, and is long lasting, growing indifferently in most grounds.

*Leeks* seed the second Year unrenewed, yet unless you remove them, they die.

*Lavender Spike* is proper to be removed every seven or eight Years: Slips twined of these, as also *Hyssop* and *Sage* take Root, if set warm, at *Michaelmas*. *White Lettuce* must be sooner removed or transplanted.

*Lettice* seeds the first Year, and dies; yet you may transplant them for Winter-Lettice, and prevent their running to Seed.

*Mallows*, French or Jagged, seed the first or second Year. Sow them in *March*.

*Marigolds* are usually produced of Seeds, and you may transplant them when two Inches grown.

*Oculus Christi* seeds and dies the first Year.

*Parsley* is sown of Seed the first Year, and seeds the second.

*Penroyal* or *Pudding-grass* lasts long, spreading new Roots, which may be divided into multitudes, removed, and is an excellent Pot-herb.

*Rosemary* may be improved by Seed; or set in Slips, immediately after *Lammas-tide*, in a moist good Earth.

*Rue*, or *Herb of Grace*, is an excellent Preserver of Health, as also *Carduus*; this will grow of Slips.

*Saffron* is proper for this Garden, or being a great Cordial at need. Remove the Roots every three Years: flowers at *Michaelmas*, when the Chives of *Saffron* may be gathered.

*Sage* may be kept from seeding, by cutting the aspiring tops; then it will spread, encrease in Leaves and Sprouting.

*Savory* seeds the first Year, and dies.

*Sweet Sicily* is either to be sown of Seeds, or the dividing of Roots; and transplanting, it lasts long.

*Thyme* may be encreased either of Slips, Roots, or Seeds; and if you let it not run to Seed, which you may prevent by topping, it will last 3 or 4 Years at least.

*Sweet Marjorion* is produced best by Seeds, but not lasting; seeding and dying the first Year mostly.

*Charvel* is improved of Seed, and will continue for time.

*Tansy*, or *Garden-Mint*, are easily propagated by Slips or divided Roots, and will flourish and continue a long time.

ime. And though there are others I might set down, let  
his suffice as a sufficient Store for this kind of Garden.

*Rules in general for ordering Herbs, &c.*

IN setting Herbs, ever observe to leave the Tops no  
more than a handful above the ground, and the Roots  
a foot under the Earth.

Twine the Roots of Herbs you set, unless too brittle.  
Observe always to sow dry, and set moist.

Set Slips without Shanks at any time except very hot  
Weather, as about *Midsummer*, and in hard Frosts; and  
prevent such from seeding as you would have continue  
long, for that weakens and decays the Root by drawing  
the Heat from it.

Gather Herbs when the Sap is full in the top of them.  
Place *Pennyroyal*, *Camomile*, *Daffies*, &c. on Banks.

*Artichokes*, *Cabages*, *Parsnips*, *Carrots*, *Saffron*, *Skirt-  
steaks*, *Onions*, *Colliflowers*, *Colworts*, *Savoys*, &c. require  
whole Plats of ground for their better thriving; though,  
set at distance, they may be interlined with other things  
of low growth. Gather all your Seeds ripe and dry, and  
not heaps of Dung to the Roots of Herbs, lest the  
Over-sunkness burn them up.

Set Herbs and Plants distant according to the greatness  
or smallness of them.

Such Herbs as you intend to gather for drying to keep  
for Use all the Winter, do it about *Lanmas-tide*: dry them  
in the Shade, that the Sun draw not out their Virtue, but  
in a clear Air, and brezy Wind, that no Mustiness may  
taint them; then on Lines hang the Bundles pretty thin  
cross a Room where usually there is a Fire made in the  
Winter.

Thus far having directed you in what is most material  
for the furnishing and ordering the *Kitchen-Garden*, as to  
Herbs, &c. I shall now shew you what is proper to be  
done relating to Roots and other things, not, or but very  
lightly, touched on.

*Of Roots proper for the Kitchin-Garden, their well-Ordering and Improvement.*

**R**oots are one of the main things to be considered in the Kitchin-Garden; and the chief of these for Sweetness and good Nourishment is the

*Parfnip*. This is proper to be sown in the Spring, in rich and well-fir'd mellow Soil that is deep dug; so that their Roots, with little Interruption, may descend, and grow in compass: and when you perceive they are grown to some Bigness, tread down the tops, that the Roots may grow the larger. In the Winter-season, when you take them out of the ground, beware of cutting them. Take off the Mould clean; and if you are to keep them, you may put them in Sand, which will preserve them a long time: The fairest you may let go to Seed to supply another Crop, trenching and mellowing the ground in which you sow them, to keep them as much as may be from Wet.

The *Skut-root* is a very sweet Root, much nourishing and provocative: It is well raised in a light and airy Mould, which may be done of Slips planted in Rows or Ranges in the Spring-time, about half a foot distance. In Winter, when you take up the Roots, it will not be amiss that you lay the Tops in the Earth till the Spring, for your further Encrease.

*Radishes* are easily produced of Seed, yet require a good black mellow Mould, that they may grow large and deep; and such Ground as no Soakings or Spewings of Water are in, to rot or spoil them.

*Potatoes*, in a good fat Garden-mould, thrive amazingly; and if the Roots be accidentally cut with a Spade, or otherwise, each part of it will grow, and recovering the Wound, turn to a perfect Root: and so little Care they require, when once well taken in the Ground, that they can hardly be got out.



*Jerusalem Artichokes* are somewhat of the Nature of *Potatoes*, but more soft and fleshy when boiled, and will grow as *Potatoes* in any good Mould, and continue with-  
out renewing for many years; and to propagate these, set  
them with a Stick, the growing End upward.

*Onions* are necessary for Sallets or (shread with Pot-herbs)  
Broth, Sawces, or divers others Uses. They best thrive  
in a fat warm Soil, and are proper to be sown in *March*,  
at the beginning of *April*; for if sown sooner, they must  
be covered at first to keep them from the Chills of Extream  
Cold; and where they grow very thick, they must be drawn  
up young, for the Use of the Kitchen, or be transplant-  
ed, and when they are grown to a reasonable Bigness, you  
may tread down the Spindles or Stalks, that the Root may  
grow bigger. They prosper well when sown with  
a little salt, and are fit to be drawn the latter end of *August*  
in a dry season; and being rubbed clean, tyed in Bunches,  
and hung up in a moderate dry Out-house, or laid thin on  
a Straw, that so being well dried they may be made up in  
Bundles or Ropes, or disposed of by Measure, as the Cu-  
stomer for Sale is; some of the largest you may let stand for  
a while, to gain a fresh Supply the next Season.

*Garlick* is a very useful Root in many cases, but most  
in a medicinal. In any rich ground it prospers with little more  
care than sowing or setting taken of it. It produces  
in a little time a wonderful Encrease, and despises the  
Fury of Weather above all Roots: and if the Tops be  
cut down, the Roots will grow much the larger.

*Turneps*, though usually growing in the Field, yet pro-  
sper best in a good Garden soil, being propagated from the  
Roots; and when they come up, which may be earlier or  
later, as you sow them, they must be howed, and kept  
very thin, the better to propagate. Sow a little flacked  
lime with the Seeds, to keep the Insects from destroying  
them on the Ground, or to prevent worm-eaten Roots;  
and if the Caterpillar, Slug, or Snail, take the new-sprung  
plants, do the like upon them, and a few Showers will  
wash them up apace. When you draw them, leave the  
best for Seed.

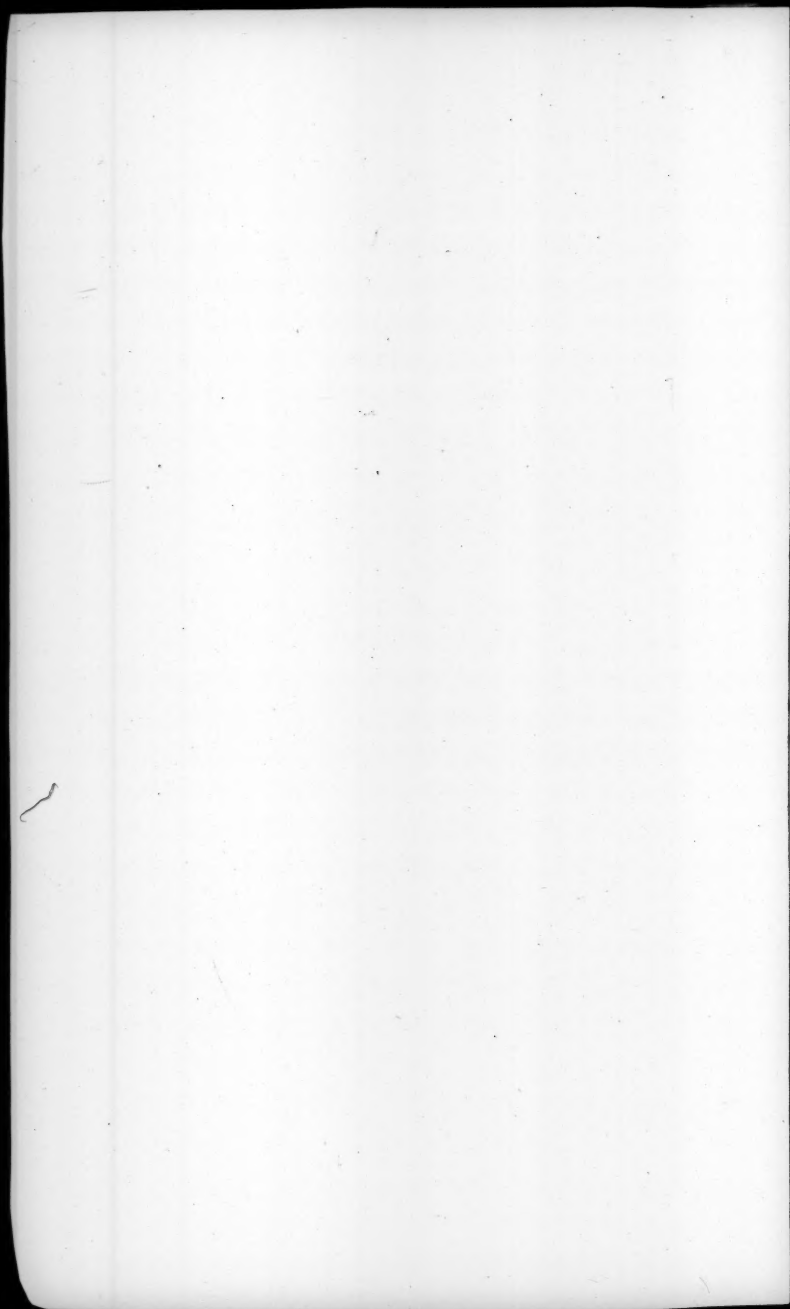
*Beans, Pease, Artichocks, Asparagus, Cabages, Colliflowers, Savoyes, Lettice, &c. to order and improve.*

**B**EANS are proper to the Kitchen-Garden: set them in distant Rows in the outmost parts of it with a setting stick. They thrive best in rich stiff Land, and are to be put in, to make them forward and large, about five or six inches in the ground, between St. Andrew's Day and Christmas, observing to do it at the Wane of the Moon, especially in an open Winter; but if the Frost comes hard after your Beans are sowed, it will go near to destroy them, or stint their growth when come up: and therefore if you apprehend this Danger, you may delay your setting them till Candlemas. Set them at an equal distance one from another by a Line, that they may have room to grow up without encumbering each other, and the Air pass more freely between them; as also the Sun's warm Beams to mature them. Range them for a better conveniency of the Sun, from South to North; and between the Ranges for the better Improvement of the ground, you may sow Carrots, Lettice, Beets or the like.

To make Beans grow well, if you sow them in the Spring, steep them in water where in Cow-dung and the Dregs of Oyl have been well mixed: When they first push hoe the Earth, to refresh the tender Stalks, and cut up the Weeds that incumber them; when they have podded, cut off the Tops, which will make an Excellent dish boiled and buttered; besides, the Pods and Beans will be the larger, having the more Juyce to nourish them from the Root: strip not off those that are first ripe, for that wounds the Stalk and hinders growth of other Pods, but rather cut them off with a Knife.

Garden Pease, for Forwardness, Largeness, and Sweetness, above those of the Field, are in great Esteem; and





## With the Gardener's Almanack. 97

Of these there are several sorts that may be sown or set, some for Earliness, others for Largeness and Pleasantness of Taste, others for their Lateness, when the usual sort is out of Season. The *Hotspurs* become the soonest ripe of all others from their time of Sowing: To these succeed the large White Pease; after them the large White Harlings; and after them the large *Rounceval*: then later than these come those called, from their Sweetness, Sugar-pease, which in their Pods are much coveted by the Birds, and therefore must, as much as can, be kept from them.

As for the Ground these best thrive in, if you would have them large it must be a rich Mould; but they will prove more tender and sweet in a warm ordinary Soil.

As for those you design early, sow them the latter End of September or Beginning of October, that so before the Frost takes them they may get good Sprouting, and some Head; and if the Slugs or White Snails come upon them, scatter Lime on the Rills, and it will both destroy them, and keep the Roots warm from the Frost.

If you would have a latter Crop of Pease, sow them a little before *Midsummer*, after a Shower has fall'n, or the Earth be moist with the descending of the Dews: Lay them deeper then the former in your Rills, that the Sun may not too much take away the Moisture of the Earth from them: When they come up, draw the Earth to them with a Hoe, and keep the Alleys free from Weeds; and so do twice or thrice, till they have got a head and overcome the Weeds: and thus they will come to Perfection, and be fit for the Table in September. As for *Rouncevals*, you may set them with a Stick as you do Beans; and if you would have them grow big, crop off the Tops, which will make an excellent boil'd Sallet; and set some Bushes or Sticks in the Rows or Intervals that their Spines may take hold on, and the easier raise the weight of the Harvest from the Ground, that the Sun may ripen the Pods the better, and bring the Pease to a larger and fuller Perfection than otherwise, lying on the Ground, they would be. French, or *Kidney-beans*, are very necessary for furnishing out the *Kitchen-Garden* with wholesome Food in the proper

## 98 The New Art of Gardening.

Season. These are to be set in a mellow Ground; set them with Setting-sticks, as other Beans; and when they spring up, set Wands with Snags or Branches to twist about, that they may rise and spread more to the Sun for ripening the Pods: if when they grow up in Summer the Weather be very dry, water them, or the Stalks will pine for want of moisture, and not produce the desired Effect. The Snails are great annoyers of these Beans, and therefore whilst they are tender they must be looked well after, and cleared of them.

*Artichokes* are greatly in Esteem for their good Taste, pleasant Nourishment, and their lasting a long Season, yet there is difficulty required in raising and bringing them to bear a full Largeness; but briefly take the following Directions.

Prepare the Ground very well you intend to raise the plants in, mix it very deep with good mellow Dung, trench it well, and raise a little, laying it pretty light; then for Plants take the Slips that grow by the sides of the Roots of the old Stubs, which plant about the beginning of April, or sooner if the great Frosts are over; and you must take care to water them till they are firmly rooted, when kindly Rains fall, and the Season be very dry; plant them about four foot asunder, if in a Rich Ground, that they may spread, and their Heads be the larger: but if you Expect not large ones, by reason the Soil will not produce them, you may plant them nearer.

To preserve the Root for sending up new Shoals, when the Fruit is cut, leave the Stalks about four Inches from the Ground, raise the Earth lightly about them to keep them warm in the Winter, and afterward, covering them with Litter, Straw, or long Dung, yet not too close, to moulder or rot them; and when the Winter is past, uncover them by little and little, at three different times, with about four days Interval between, lest the Air coming too suddenly to them, Injure them, being as yet tender.

This done, dress, dig about them, and trim them very well, taking off the small Slips to transplant, not leaving about three of the strongest and most likely thriving to the foot of each Root for Bearers, and supply the Roots deep



deep as conveniently you can, with good fat Mould. Every fifth Year it is proper to renew the whole Plantation, because too long standing in one place, Impoverishes the Earth that it produces but small Choaks; yet in good deep mellow Ground you may permit them to continue, if you see fit, till eight Years or longer.

*Asparagras* makes another dainty Dish, and is highly necessary to be planted in the Kitchen-Garden. This is raised of Seed, requiring a good fat Soil, and at two Years growth may be transplanted into Beds.

These Beds must be well prepared with Dung, first digging about two foot deep and four wide, made level at the bottom; and so with some of the Mould mix good rotten Dung, and fill them up, considering it will sink: then at about two foot distance put in the Plants; and in such a Bed you may plant three or four Rows, and in time they will extend themselves throughout the whole Bed.

Let them take good Root before you cut them, that the Shoots may grow up strong and large and not be stunted or stubbed with unseasonable cutting: the small ones you may leave, that the Roots may grow bigger, permitting those that spring up at the end of the Season to run to Seed, which will turn to good Advantage.

At the beginning of the Winter, when you have cut up the Stalks, cover the Beds four or five fingers thick with good Mould mixed with good new Horse-dung, which will preserve the Roots from the Frost, and about the middle of March, if the hard Frosts are over, uncover the Beds, and spread good fresh Mould over them about two fingers thick, or somewhat more, and lay the Dung in the Allis, or some place near them, that it may rot, and be in a Readiness to renew them when occasion requires.

If you take the *Asparagus* Roots about the beginning of January, and plant them on a hot Bed with good distances from the Frost, the Weather being open, and the sun any thing warm, you may have *Asparagus* at Candlemas; when you cut the *Asparagus*, remove a little of the Earth about the bottom, and cut as near the Root as you can; but beware you do not cut or wound those that are

## 1100 The New Art of Gardening.

proceeding up, or not yet appearing above the Earth. *Colliflowers* take a due place in this Garden; and these you may either sow the Seeds in *August*, and carefully preserve them from the Injuries of Winter, or you may raise them on your leaf Beds in the Spring, and remove the young Plants, when they have indifferent large Leafs, into good Ground prepared for the purpose: but the approved way is to dig small pits, and fill them with good light Mould, and therein plant your *Colliflowers*, which you must take great care to water, especially in dry Seasons.

*Cabages* are another great Advantage, and these are of several Colours and Forms; though in this place I shall take notice of the ordinary Country Cabbage only, and others elsewhere.

Sow the Seed at any convenient time between *Midsummer* and *Michaelmas*, so that growing up whilst the Weather is warm, it may gain strength to defend it self against the violence of the Winter, which is however many times too sharp for them; or you may raise them on hot Beds in the Spring: Transplant them in *April* unto well stirred and good Rich Mould; and to have them large, it must be warm and light Soil, and they must daily be watered till they have taken good Root, though ordinary Ground well digged and manured will produce store. The Seeds you reserve must be of the best Cabages, placed during the Winter low in the Ground; To preserve them from the sharp Winds and Frosts, cover them with earthen Pots and warm Soil over the Pots; and when the Spring comes plant them forth.

*Savoy*s are a kind of Cabages, though not coming to the Firmness and Magnitude of the other, yet are Sweeter and earlier than the common Cabbage; and this may be planted and raised as the other; also may the small Dutch Cabbage and the long loose Cabbage of a Muskey Scent, and the sweetest of all others.

Pumpions or Pumpkins are very useful in many cases, to raise them plant the Seed first in a good Mould in a warm place, and when they are fairly risen, transplant them into a Dung-bed made to that end, and now and then water

them with water wherein Pigeons Dung has been steeped, and then about blossoming time take away all the by-shoots, leaving one or two main Vines or Runners, and beware not to hurt the Heads of them, and this small weed, as I may term it, will produce fruit of a prodigious bigness.

Lettice cannot be omitted in this Garden, as being an excellent cooling Sallad raw or boiled, and is easily raised of the seed growing in any tolerable good ground. If you have a desire to have them white, or as the *French* term it to blanch them, then when they are headed and begin to Cabbage, bind them about in a fair day when the dew is off them with straws, or raw Hemp, cover the Plants with small Earthen pots, and lay some Soil on them, and so they will become white.

Beets are of singular use, being a very wholesome Pot-herb, they must be sowed, and then transplanted into a fat Soil, they are usually sown in the Spring, and the roots left in the ground, will produce fresh leaves many years.

*Hot Beds, how to prepare and fit them for such things as require to be set in them.*

**W**Here the ground in Garden-plats is naturally cold, Art must be used to callesie or heat it, lest in setting or sowing many Plants or seeds you lose your Labour, Charges, and what is more vexatious, your expectation.

If the Land be of a light and warm nature of it self, there is required no more than common Horse-dung or Cow-dung to be mixed with the Mould in trenching and digging, and that will sufficiently enrich it.

But where Mould inclines to a cold clay, or a ground that's stubborn or stiff, mingle some light Sand with it, or at least some light and very fertile Mould, and make a Laystall of Dung with this Compost in some convenient place, let it lye and rot, the better to mingle it, a whole Winter, and in the Spring it will prove good warm manure to cherish and enliven the roots of your Plants, or

make warm Beds by mixing it with a good quantity of the natural Soil, and the best of this kind is Sheeps-dung, that of Pigeons or Poultry.

When you have made a Bed manured with this dung well mixed with the Soil to the depth of a Spades graft or more, rake it over as even as may be with an Iron rake, and the Mould and dung being made fine, you may sow your seeds thereon, as Mellions, Cucumbers, Onions, Leeks, or the like, but the two former separate from the latter, then rake them in as even distance as you can, for the first two a few seeds are sufficient, then put fine fine mould in a pretty wide Sieve, and riddle it over the seeds about an Inch or more, and the product will answer.

If you must chose a plot of ground, necessity so urging, there being no other to be had where the bleak Winds have power to beat upon it, notwithstanding all the care of Fencing, &c. Then lay your ground up in ridges a foot or two in height, somewhat upright on the back of North-side, and more sloping or shelving to the Southward, and it may be layed about three or four foot broad on that side you sow, especially tender seeds, and one bank lying behind another the ground that rises will keep off the bleak nipping Winds, so that they will in a great measure fly over the tender Plants new sprouting up, or when they are somewhat grown, and the Sun will have more force upon them to make them grow up and ripen, and this will do well where the ground is over moist, so that things affecting moisture may be set low, and things of a drier bearing higher.

In February, or earlier you may make a hot Bed for Cucumbers, Mellions, Radishes, Colliflowers, &c. in the warmest place of your ground, defended from winds as much as may by Pails, Walls, or Reed-fences, about six or seven foot high, of such a distance or capacity as the occasion requires; then you must raise your Bed about two or three foot high, and about three or four over, of new Hogs-dung, or at least, not above six, eight or ten days old, treading it very hard down on the top; and the better to keep up the sides, if there be occasion, place Boards by fine rich mould about three or four Inches thick, and

when the extream ferment or heat of the Bed is over, which you may perceive at the end of five or six days by thrusting in your Find, then set or sow your seeds as the magnitude or nature of them requires.

This done, erect some little forked sticks four or five Inches above the Bed that may support the frame of sticks, which must be layed over, and then covered with straw, defend the Plants or seeds from the wet and cold, only in a warm day you may open your covering an hour before, and after noon, and when they shoot still earth them up to keep the lower part warm, and when they are pretty well grown, and the season enables them to bear the weather, you may transplant them.

*Watering, the proper times; and what Plants, Herbs, &c. most require it, and in what Seasons.*

**W**ATERING is one thing exceeding necessary, and some Plants require it much more than others, or especially in dry Seasons they would be burnt up, they must be minded with water on their first removal, at whatsoever season it be, and therefore not to be neglected, tho' early in the Spring, yet be cautious in watering the Leaves of the young and tender Plants, rather confine it to the earth about the root, lest the heat mildew and injure them.

When the Plants or Seeds are more hardy, yet you find the nights very cold, water in the Forenoon, but when the nights are warm, and the weather warm, let it be done in the Evening after Sun-set; you may mix your water with a little fine mould, to take away the harshness of it; if it be Spring-water, or be drawn from some cold well or Well, let it stand in the Sun in Tubs to heat and air well, but Pond or River-water is more soft and natural to Plants or Herbs; and the better to fatten it, and render it more acceptable, you may infuse in it Hens-dung, Pigeons, or Sheeps-dung, and it will better enliven your Plants. For Plants that are, or are to be large, as

Cabages, Colliflowers, Artichoaks, &c. you may let the ground sink a little like the indenting of an Oyster-shell, that the water may the more directly press to the root, yet excess of watering is dangerous, for over-abundance will be apt to wash the Vegetive fertile Salt out of the ground about the root of the Plant, and impoverish it.

And you had better water seldom, and do it thoroughly well, than often, and do it scanty, for if the water comes not to the bottom of the root, that the Fibres may suck moisture, it little avails.

If the season or ground be very dry, when you sow seeds, sow them somewhat deeper, but water them not till they have been in the ground several days, and it is well settled about them.

When you transplant, water the Plant in setting, but not superabundantly, lest it chill the root or ground too much.

Observe that the water run not into Puddles, but be well and equally distributed with a watering Pot, or other Vessel that has a Sievey Nose, and by that means it will be sprinkled softly, not forcing up the earth, but delating and gradually sinking into it to refresh the Plants, &c.

*The several sorts of Strawberries, the manner of Setting, Transplanting, and Improving them.*

**S**trawberries are very material to be produced, for the furnishing out of Panquets, and many other things, and of these there are divers sorts worthy of a Gardeners Care.

The great sort thrive excellent well in new broken Beds, or in such places as they have not before grown, especially on the sides of Mellow-banks, where the force of the Sun is convenient to nourish them.

As for the ordinary red ones, you may furnish your self with store of their roots in new fallen Copfis, or in stand-  
ing



## With the Gardener's Almanack. 109

ing Woods where Vacancies or Avenues lye open to the Sun.

The ordinary red and white Strawberries may be either planted in Beds, or the sides of Banks as your Garden gives most conveniency, and will hold there for a long time, but the large ones must be kept stringed and removed every two or three years, and they require not so much the Sun-beams as the other; they delight much in a Sandy Soil, and the best Plants are such as come of the strings, if well planted and ordered.

There are a sort of Green Strawberries, though not so common use, and but in few places to be found, and they lye on the ground under the slender and tall Leafs, very green in colour, and sweet in taste.

There is yet another sort, a very excellent scarlet-colour, such as they call *New England*, and there abound in great plenty; but here they will grow well, as has been proved in divers curious Gardens, delighting in a mellow fat Soil somewhat sandy.

To preserve these several sorts over the Winter, that they may come earlier and prove better, cover them from the Frosts with a little Straw, Peashawm, or such like shelter; and if you would have Strawberries in *Autumn* cut away the first blossoms, and being hindred blowing in the Spring, they will blow anew much later, and bear in the latter season.

To make Strawberries very large; when they have done bearing, cut them to the ground, keep their Spires down, strew Cow-dung or Pigeons-dung on them, and water them after it.

THE  
GARDENER'S  
ALMANACK:

OR,

Things proper to be done in  
the *Kitchen-Garden* in the  
several Months of the Year.

---

Aquarius ♒, or the Skinker.

JANUARY.

*What is required to be done in the Kitchen  
Garden this Month.*

**T**his Month prepare Dung for your Garden; and  
the Dung of Pidgeons or Poultry is excellent for  
Asparagus and Strawberries, &c. when it has pas-  
sed the first Heat.

Dress

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 107

Dress your Sweet-herb Beds rather every second Year with new Mould, than Dung or over-strong or rank Soil; Dig Borders, set Beans and Pease; sow, if you think convenient, for early Colliflowers; sow Lettice, Radishes, Charvil, and other more curious Salleting: and if you see it convenient, raise your hot Beds,

Set up Traps for Vermin among bulkous Roots, that will now be in danger.

---

Pisces ♋, or the Fishes.

F E B R U A R Y.

*Things required to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month sow Beans, Pease, Rouncevals, Marigolds, Corn, Salleting, Radish, Parsnips, Aniseeds, Garlick, Onions, Carrots: plant forth your Cabages, also Potatoes, which may be set in some Corner in the worst of your Ground: sow Parsly, Spinage, and hardy Pot-herbs that will endure the Weather. Still plant Colliflowers, to have them early; make a Beginning of your hot Beds for choice Plants, as Cucumers, Mellons, to be sowed in the Full of the Moon, but rely not altogether on them. Sow Asparagus, &c.

Things of the last Month are yet in season; and indeed most Winter Roots and Plants continue the Winter Months, except spoiled by excessive Rains, melting of Snow-water, or violent Extremity of Frosts, which however rarely falls out in all Gardens, and may be prevented by Care.

Aries.

Aries  $\gamma$ , or the Ram.

## M A R C H.

### *Things necessary to be done in the Kitchen Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month dung and trench well your Ground where it is required; and it is the most proper and chiefeſt Season for raiſing hot Beds for Gourds, Mellons, Cucumers, &c. which about the fixth, eighth, or tenth Day, will be in a good liking to receive the Seeds: prick them forth at a diſtance according to a true Method.

If you deſign them later, ten or twelve days after the firſt begin again, and proceed to the like a third time, ever remembring to keep your hot Beds, as much as may be from Showers, the droppings of Trees or Eaves of Houſes; for if the Heat be too violent, you may eaſily cool them, but not add Heat when once ſpent, without new making up again.

Slip and ſet Lavender, Sage, Thyme, Roſemary, and other laſting Herbs, Shrubs, &c.

Sow in the Beginning of this Month, Endive, Leeks, Radish, Succory, Beets, Chard-Beet, Parſnips, Skerrets, the latter in freſh Earth, that is rich and mellow; when pretty moiſt, place but one Root in a Hole, keeping a foot diſtance between them.

You may now ſow Sorrel, Parſly, Bugloſs, Charvil, Borage, Sallery, Smallage, Alexander, &c. and ſeveral of theſe will continue many Years without renewing, and moſt of them may be blanched by earthing up, and laying Litter over them.

Sow likewiſe Onions, Garlick, Orach, Purſlain, Turneps, (to have early) monthly Peaſe, &c. Transplant Beet-

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 109

Beet-Chard sowed in *August*, and the Chards will be very large.

Sow Cresses, Fennel, Marjorum, Carrots, Cabages, Basil, &c. But whatever of these sorts you plant or sow, be not very hasty in watering them, nor too much, by reason it will close and harden the Ground; therefore in watering, do it not with too great a Stream, but rather labour to imitate the fall of moderate Showers.

About the middle of this Month dress up and string the Strawberry-beds, uncover Asparagus, loosning and spreading the Mould about them, the better to give them Ease in penetrating: And now you may transplant their Roots to furnish new Beds.

Stake and bind up your weakest Herbs or Plants against the Violence of Winds that usually happen in this Month. Sow Lapins and such Seeds as the Spring requires to bring forward, and keep all Weeds down as low as may be: See to the repairing the Banks or Borders in Alleys and Walks, and secure your Seeds newly sown, from Birds or Insects.

---

Taurus ♂, or the Bull.

A P R I L.

*Things necessary to be done in the Kitchen Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month, about the beginning, Sow sweet Marjorum, Hyfop, Thyme, Scurvy-grass, Basil, Winter-Savory, and indeed, all tender Seeds that are desirous of hot Beds. All sweet Herbs require to be stirred up and new moulded, that they may then well take fresh Root.

Sow Purslane, Colliflowers, Lettice, Raddish, and the like: you may sow Carrots and Radish together in one Bed,

Bed, but so, that one may be drawn before the other is much advanced; also Lettice, Purslane, Parsnips, and Carrots on one Ground, where the Plat is small; then you must consider to take each in its proper Season, so that one may not incumber the other; though it would be more advantageous to change the Ground for Parsnips and Carrots now and then;

Plant Artichok Slips, sow Turnips to have them early, and set *French-beans*.

As yet you may slip Lavender, Sage, Penniroyal, Rosemary, Lavender, &c. and the more you clip them the better they will thrive, and continue the longer without transplanting, especially Sage so served in Spring and Autumn.

To have very good Salleting all the Year, plant Purslane, Lettice, Radish, &c. in Summer, on very rich Ground, and in Winter and Spring in hot Beds well covered; and as soon as their Leaves open to the breadth of your Thumb-nail, draw them up by the Roots, and so continue sowing them monthly.

About the middle of the Month you may make a beginning to plant forth Mellons, also Cucumers; and this you may continue to the end of the Month. After all warm Spring or Summer Showers look for Snails and Worms, and, as well as may be, clear your Garden of them. Set Lupins, Carpet-walks, and ply weeding, and speedily take away, Hoe, or pull up, lest the Weeds, &c. take Root again, and prove injurious to the Ground; for by the Cleanness of a Garden from Weeds and all such like destructive Incumbrances, not only the Industry and Proficiency of the Gardener is proved even to such as make but Visits, but also great Commodities arise thereby; for a Garden once well cleared in the Spring, saves much Labour in Summer.



Gemini II, *or the Twins.*

M A Y.

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month sow Marjorum, Thyme, and other hot and Aromatick Herbs, and such as are the most tender: Sow Purslane, Lettice, to have them large-sized and cabaged, painted Beans, &c.

Now take care of your Mellons; and towards the End of this Month give over to cover them any longer on Ridges with Mattrasses or Straw, &c. Continue weeding, and suffer not any to remain and run to Seed, that by the scattering of it the Garden may be the more incumbered to your Prejudice and Labour, that might have been saved at once.

You may also now sift fine cooling Mould about the Roots of your hot Plants and Herbs, which will greatly refresh them, but so that it may not be strewed on the Leaves to hinder their growth by soiling them when Showers fall, or in your watering.

As for watering, as I have said, do it at the Root some distance, that it may leisurely soak in round about to the Fibres, &c.

Cancer ♋, or the Crab.

## J U N E.

*Things to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**S**ow Charvil, Radish, Lettice, and the like, and other things for young and tender Salleting. Gather such Sweet-herbs as you intend to dry and keep for your several Uses, which may be done for the whole Year by laying them not too thin, but upon moderate heaps, which you may move and turn till they are tolerably dry, but not brittle; and this is to be done with as much Expedition as may be; and for their keeping the natural Colour, it would be well done in the Shade; however, a little of the Sun is proper, to prevent their being musty. Now Mellons and Strawberries are in season, and some other cooling things, Nature prudently providing such for the refreshing Mankind, and the kindly Preservation of Health in hot Seasons, while the hotter come seasonably in the colder Months.

Leo ♌, or the Lyon.

## J U L Y.

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**he Beginning of this Month sow Lettice, Radish, &c. for young and tender Salleting; also latter Pease, that

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 113

that they may be ripe in *October*: Let Herbs designed for it run to seed, and carefully save it for a new supply.

Long-sided Cabages planted in *May* may now be removed, and cut away all rotten and putrefied Leafs from them, and be yet diligent in the weeding and cleansing part of your Garden, Hoeing up the Weeds so soon as they begin to appear above the Ground; and by this means a greater riddance will be made in a little time than in a longer when they grow up Root-deep, and prove more cumbersome to the Ground: Destroy Worms and other Insects by sprinkling hot Ashes in the places they most frequent, and it will utterly destroy such as are touched by it when a little Rain descends on it: it also is a great Enemy to the Weeds, though Grass is improved by it, and it proves an excellent Manure for that purpose; but lay not on too much in hot Weather, unless much Rain falls to dissolve it and moisten the Earth; by which means it may leisurely soak in and disperse it self.

---

Virgo  $\text{xx}$ , or the Virgin-Sign.

AUGUST,

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month sow Radishes, particularly the black ones, to prevent going up to Seed, pale tender Cabages, Colliflowers for winter Plants, Lettice, Carrots, Corn, Sallet, Marygolds, Spinage, Turnips, Onions, Parsnips, Angelica, curled Endive, Scurvygrass, &c.

To prevent Plants running up too hastily to Seed, draw the Root a little out of the Ground, lay them slaunting, and cover them again with fresh Mould, and by that means it will be prevented.


To

To secure Collesflowers to bear good Heads that are apt to overspread, or open flowers before their Heads can be quite perfected; take them out of the ground and bury them in some cold place, as a Cellar, and both root and stalk to the very head, and so without being exposed to the Sun, they will harden and bear firm heads.

Now take up your Onions that are well grown, as also Garlick, transplant Lettice you design shall continue for the Winter.

Gather Seeds and clip such Herbs as you design should continue well in the Winter before the Full of the Moon.

And towards the latter end of this Month sow Purslain, Chard-Beet, Charvall, and such like Herbs for use; raking the Mould finely over them, and laying the ground smooth and even, yet so well covered that the Birds cannot see them to destroy them; and if showers fall and wash them out of the ground, cover them again in the same manner.

Libra , or the Ballance.

## S E P T E M B E R.

*Things properly to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**S**ow Skirrets, Lettice, Spinage, Rhadishes, Parsnips, &c. Cabbages, Collesflowers, Onions, Anniseeds, Scurvy-grass, &c.

It is now proper to transplant Asparagus-roots and Artichoaks.

Sow Herbs for Winter-store, as also roots, get Strawberry Plants out of Copices or Woods, and plant them in your Garden about a foot asunder.

Towards the end of the Month Earth up the Sallad-Herbs,

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 115

Herbs, and Winter-plants, set forth such Cabbage and Collesflower-Plants as were sowed in *August*, prepare Compost to be used in trenching and preparing, and lay your ground well for the approaching Winter, where it is disencumbered, and the occasion requires it, and if the cold season hastily advances, get warm covering for your tender Herbs, either to preserve them well all the Winter, or till such time as you have occasion to spend them.

---

Scorpio  $\text{m}$ , or the Scorpion.

### O C T O B E R.

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month, that it may lye for Winter Mellowing, trench the ground.

Sow *Geneva-Lettice*, which will with a little care continue for good Salading all the Winter with Glass-bells and Straw over them in the hard frost or cold, but touch them not presently after a Thaw, lest you break or crack the Glasses.

This Month you may sow Rhadishes, clear the Alley of all Leafes that have fallen, lest they corrupt and produce, or at least shelter vermin to annoy your Plants and Seeds, and foul your Garden with their Excrements. Prepare covering for tender Herbs and Plants, and be diligent in rectifying what is amiss in every part that your Garden may not be only pleasant and delightful to the eye, but profitable in encrease, by being disencumbered of offensive things.

Sagittarius

Sagittarius ♐, or the Archer.

## N O V E M B E R.

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month Trench, fit or prepare your Garden-ground for Artichoaks, carry Compost out of your Mellon-ground, or mingle it by often turning with good Earth, so lay it in Ridges prepared for your business of the Spring.

Always note to sow moderately-dry, and plant moist, but what you sow cover not too thick with Earth, and there are many Seeds you cannot sow too shallow, so that they are covered sufficiently to preserve them from the Birds destroying them.

Set and sow early Beans and Pease, which you may continue till *Shrovetide*.

Cut off the Tops of Asparagus, cover the roots with dung, or make Beds that they may be prepared for the Spring-planting.

Take up Potatoes a sufficiency for the Winter spending, and if they have been of any continuance, though you search narrowly, a sufficiency will escape to repair the stock.

Lay up your Winter-store of Carrots, Parsnips, Turnips, Cabbages, &c. as also Seeds.



Capricorn  $\text{♊}$ , or the Goat.

D E C E M B E R.

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-  
Garden this Month.*

**S**ow for early Beans and Pease if a prospect of violent Frosts are not in view.

This Month is proper to Trench your Garden-ground, and dung it well, set Traps to destroy Vermin, and lay Stable-litter over such Herbs or Plants as can least endure the cold; and what things are requisite to cover, cover them now, for either the Frosts are begun, or very near approaching, no Winter passing without more or less force of them, which leave their marks and scars on most Herbs and Plants, making them droop and languish for want of refreshing heat to comfort them.

*How to know particular Flowers that will alter  
for the best.*

**E**xperience tells us that those Flowers which differ in number of Leafs, in colours and shape, their seeds will produce flowers much different from the ordinary flowers, though but a year or two before produced all of one flower; nay, a particular flower among many others of one plant will bring more double ones than twenty others that are not qualified in the same nature.

As for Example, the Stock-Gilliflower that hath five Leafs or more, to six or seven, the seeds of such a particular flower will produce more double ones than those Plants that bring forth but four Leafs quantity for quantity.

## 118 The New Art of Gardening,

tity of seed, and in this it is shown more than in others; for there being in the middle of it no thrum as in many others, it will bring forth a fine double flower, which when it hath attained to, then is it come to the bounds of nature, for it never bears seed more, but by endeavouring blows it self to death.

The same rule may be observed by the curious Florist in several other flowers that are free from any thrum in the middle, as Auriculas, zeal-flowers, Primroses, Campions, and the like.

When in such flowers you find one leaf more than their usual number, than conclude nature has prepared for a liberation; these flowers will likewise bear seeds when double, as the Gilliflower, *African*, &c. and in sowing the seed of these double ones, they will bring you more and better flowers a hundred to one than the single ones; and in pursuing, the seeds of such will be accommodated with sundry Varieties, but chiefly tinged with the colour of the mother-plant, and some of these will proceed as it were beyond the limits of nature, and then they will have Pods in the middle, or break, and never more be capable of seeding.

*Fuly-flowers* have likewise their Signal, which will, and which will not bear seed. Those that will do it, if the weather or other accidents hinder not, have their horns placed in the middle of the flower; it is also to be observed in the marking of flowers that the seed of those that are striped will bring more striped ones, and some of different colours and stripes, their seeds being alike.

### *Choice Directions for sowing of Seed and setting, &c.*

**I**N Sowing of flower-seed great care must be taken, or at least in setting where you intend your flowers shall thrive.

Observe then that the ground bear the best proportion that may be to the places, or the particular Mineral Vein or quality of the places where, in other parts, such Plants were

were wont to grow; take care therefore not to set Mountainous Plants in moist and low grounds.

As for Bog-plants, when they are transplanted into a Garden, let it be in a natural, or Artificial Bog, or near some water, by which there is great improvement of all sorts of Flags, and particularly *Calamus Aromaticus*, or the Spice scented Reed.

You may make an Artificial Bog by digging a hole in any stiff clay, or there may be clay brought if the ground afford it not, to bind the Hole or Pit, in the floor or bottom, and so thick on the sides, that the wet cannot soak through, and fill this with Water; then put in Earth of the nature of that where they grew, but somewhat richer, and tempering it with the water, make your Bog to a proportionable moisture of that from whence they were taken, and planting them therein, they thrive and flourish more than in their native soil.

*Things convenient to be considered in the manner of Laying, &c.*

**C**ut the thing you intend to lay in its proper season, after the manner as is usual in cutting *Fuly*-flowers, and laying them, unless in some Plants that take any way like the Vine, and it is so much the more convenient in Roses, and any Woody-layers, that with an Awle you pierce the stock at the place layed, as it is done by circumposi<sup>ti</sup>on, *viz.* the Mould to be born up to the bough, which is to be taken off, and then before the Sap rises in *February*, or the beginning of *March*, it is most proper to be done.

During the time of drought, frequently water your Layers; that is, every day, or they will not come to take Regular roots, but rather a Knob or Buttron full of fresh Sap upon the tongue of the Cut in the Branch so layed down; yet these Branches cut off, by their well watering in the Summer, have grown pretty well in their transplantation.

The Seasons most proper for this business, are in the beginning of the Spring, or the declining of the great Summer-heat, for in those Seasons they more freely enjoy moisture proper for the producing roots, and are respited from excessive heat and cold.

*Artificial Sets how to make them.*

**T**O do this, bare the roots of Plants of Woody substance, and make a cut in the like manner of that which is made in Layings from the Plant; and into the cleft put a stone or little plug of wood to keep it open, that gaping, the part cut may turn upwards; then with light Mould cover the root three Inches, and the lip so lifted up will sprout into Branches, being nourished by the root of the old Tree; and when the Branches are grown, cut off this Plant with its roots, and it will grow and thrive of it self very well; and if possibly you can leave an eye on the lip of the root, which after Incision you lift up, and the Branches will the more speedily issue out of the root so cut, which method is properly called the starting a root.

To make off-sets of Bulbous roots, with your nail cut it lightly on the bottom in the crown of your root, whence spring the Fibers, and as a healer to the wound, sprinkle some dry dust upon it, and so many wounds as you make, *Ferarius* affirms in so many off-sets will the Genital virtue dispose it self, but this has not been frequently experimented.

*To change the Colour of Flowers when in Blossom, &c.*

**B**urn Brimstone under Roses, and it will turn the lips, and the greatest part of the fouldings, while the smoak of Tobacco will make a red Rose turn blewish or purple. Vitriol sprinkled or streaked on any Flower that is purple, will turn it to a deep scarlet, but this will not long

the  
eat  
joy  
too  
ing continue, for the Leafs of the growing flower the  
ext day will wither.

The flower of Brimstone sowed with flower-seeds, will  
in some manner alter their natural colour, and make them  
be better for Doublers.

### A few useful Observations from Astrology.

dy  
of  
nd  
ep  
nen  
he  
sh-  
ties  
ill  
ou  
ci-  
ily  
ly  
tit  
ot,  
d,  
as  
he  
re-  
in  
os,  
he  
of  
at  
ot  
nt  
Now and plant when the Moon is in *Taurus*, *Scorpio*, or  
*Virgo*, and in good aspect with *Saturn*.

Dress your Garden, and trim your Flowers and choice  
shrubs, when the Moon is in *Libra* or *Capricorn*.

Set or cut your Shrubs that you would have the growth  
of them retarded when the Moon is decreasing in *Cancer*.

Set, cut and sow what you would speedily have shoot  
up again and spring, or grow in the Increase of the  
Moon.

When you sow to have double Flowers, let it be in the  
Full of the Moon; and as oft as you transplant them, let  
it be in the Full of the Moon.

Neither plant, sow, nor set any thing on that day  
whereon there happeneth an Eclipse either of the Sun or  
Moon, or when the Moon is afflicted by either of the In-  
fortunates, *Saturn* or *Mars*. But from these things I must  
now proceed to other, advantageous to the Gardener.

The

THE  
GARDENER'S  
ALMANACK:

Directing what is to be done  
in the Flower-Garden, &c. in the  
several Months throughout the  
Year, &c.

## Aquarius *or the Skinker.*

J A N U A R Y.

Things proper to be done in the Flower  
Garden this Month.

**F**lowers in this Month, if the Season appear extreme must have great care taken of them, especially such as least endure the cold ; however you may let Ranunculus's and Anemony-roots, and need not cover them ; for great Rains are more prejudicial to them than Frosts ; however, such as are sowed in October or September,



## With the Gardener's Almanack. 223

earlier Flowers, you must secure from great Frosts and Rains; as likewise the Carnations, or such seeds as run the hazard of being washed out of the ground, or by extreme Frosts chilled or over-frozen; and in this case, where the Snow lyes too heavy on them, strike it off and cover them, lest they burst and are spoiled; except on hot Beds, and then there is no danger of them.

About the end of the Month put Mould about the Roots of the Arunculas that have been uncovered by Frost, and where your choicest are set in Pots, fill up the chinks with warm Mould, and so you need not house them, because they will endure the Weather.

### *Flowers blowing or continuing.*

**P**RACORE Tulips, Winter Aconite, some sorts of Anemones, Black Helebores, Winter Cyclamen, Oriental Jacinthis, Brumal, Hyacinth, Levantian, Narcissus, Laurustians, Primroses, Mazareno.

However, note that these Fruits and Flowers are more slow or hasty according to the heat or coldness of the soil, as qualified by accident or nature, situation, &c. and that all Monthly Flowers are to be understood to continue from their first appearing to their decay.

---

### Pisces ♋, or the Fishes.

## F E B R U A R Y.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**A**S the Weather is seasonable air, your Housed Carnations, particularly in moderates, flower or warm days,  
G 2

## 124 The New Art of Gardening.

days, and set them in again at nights if nipping Winds or Frosts threaten them, and so you may do by other Flowers that are not very tender ; as in this Month, except extreame cold prevent it, divers will be, as I may term it, in prime.

### *Flowers blowing or continuing.*

**S**ingle Anemonies, Winter Aconite, Hyacinthus, Stellaratus, some Double Anemonies, Tulips, Præcoce, Persian Iris, Luccioium Bulbosum, Deus Caninus, Black Helibore, Verttall Crocus, single Hepatica, Vernal Cyclamen, Red and White, Early Daffodillies, the great white Arnithogals, Mezereno, the large leaved yellow Violets, and some others.

Aries γ, or the Ram:

## M A R C H.

### *Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month place Stakes, and bind up your weak Flowers to prevent the violent Winds injuring them.

Sow Pinks, plant Box, and the like; sow Carnations, and Sweet Williams, from the middle to the end of the Month ; Alternus, most Perennial Greens, Phillerea, and the like; or these may be done later in the Month, towards the end, as the Season happens warmer or colder.

Sow in Pots or Cases with fine Willow Earth, Auricula-seeds, let the Earth be a little loamy, and place what you sowed in September in the Shade, sprinkling  
Lies

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 125

little water on them. Plant Latter Anemony-Roots successively in parts of the Countries that are warm. Transplant Ranunculas and Fibrous Roots about the middle of the Month, as Primroses, Turboses, Cammomile, Auriculas, Gentianella, Matricaria, Helebores, and other Summer-flowers. This is also a proper time to set Levicolum, and towards the end of the Month slip Wall-flowers, or Keris, Connolualus, Lupins, Ordinary or Spanish Gessamine.

About the middle or latter end of this Month sow Later-flowers on hot Beds, especially such as are the natural growth of hot Countries, for they require much heat till the natural earth be warm enough to supply them by the heat of the Sun, perfecting their seed, and bringing them to a proportionable stature; and when the Amaranthus is grown pretty high, remove it into another hot Bed, and so you may order *African* and sensitive Plants, particularly these ever keep under Glasses.

About the concluding of this Month, set in the Shade Aurunculas Plants or Seedlings, such as being choice you have reserved in Pots, Carnation-Seedlings may be Transplanted; also give Earth to the Layers that is fresh and proper for them, placing them about a week in the Shade, then cut off all the infected or drooping Leaves, and the choice ones may now have their cover removed.

The parting Frosts and cold Winds are now prejudicial to your choice Tulips, and therefore cover them with Mats or other convenient shelter, and take the like care the most esteemed Anemonies, Chema-Iris, Auricula's, early Cyclamen, Brunal Jacinths, &c.

Sow Balsamum-Mas, Balsamine Doctils, Indian-Phacelio, Lentiscus, Datura, Pomum-Amoris, Floss Africanus, Cana Indicum, Calicum Indicum, Flos Passionis, Amaranthus, and the like. These require hot Beds till a warmer season, yet Nostratum Indicum, Volabulis, African Marigolds, &c. may tolerably well subsist on cold Beds, though not so forward. Your thorn Cuprus-tops, require to be wraped about with wisps of Straw, Hay, or the like, if the Easterly winds continue sharp, and cover with Peashaum or dry Straw your Evergreens that are

Seedlings, such as Pines, Bayes, Phillyria, Fir, Cyprus, till two or three years be gone over them in the Nursery, and are large enough to transplant, lest the sharp winds dry them up and spoil them.

This you may do any time in the Winter where extremity requires it, but in fair warm weather, or intermissions from cold you may uncover them, the sharp winds more harming than the Frost or Snow.

About the end of the Month, with a moderate caution of the continuing sharp winds or tail of the Frosts, you may uncover your choicer Plants; but in sharp winds neither sow nor transplant, lest by their drying up and withering, they frustrate your expectation.

In the Full of the Moon sow Stock-gilliflower-seeds, that they may produce double Flowers; and though some think they can make this doubling by art, by using Infusions, Magnomism, or Medicines, yet they will find themselves mistaken; or especially it is with greater certainty done by removing, transplanting, enriching the mould, strewing and hardening the Ground, and so for variation and change, taking from the root the freer nourishment.

Now set *Lentiscus*, Oranges, Lemons, Dates, Ammums, Aloes, and the like, lest enduring Plants and Trees in the Portico.

### *Flowers blowing or continuing, &c.*

**A**Rbor Indæ, Præcoe Tulips, Rubus Adoratus, Crown Imperial, Spring Cyclamen, Anæmonies, Winter Aconite, Black and White Helebores, Crocus Bellis, Single and Double Hepatica, Chamaeiris, Leucoion, Fritillaria, Violets, Primroses, Tuberosus Iris, Rhynodactylis, Persian Iris, Dutch Marigold, Dutch yellow Violets. The great White Ornithogalum, Dey's Camassia, Chelidonium, the Double Flower'd small Spanish Trumpets, or Jaquills, Hyacinth, Zeboin, Brumal, Oriental Jaquills, Great Chalcion, and such like Attendants on the Spring.

Taurus

Taurus  $\delta$ , or the Bull.

A P R I L.

Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.

IN the beginning of this Month sow *Digitalis*, Double Marigolds, *Delphinium*, *Cyanus*; of the various sorts, Green Pansy, Tufts, Macipula, Holiocks, Scorpoides, *Medica*, Scabeous, Belvider, *Columbines*, which every four or five years renew; to prevent loss and decay.

Now continue new and fresh hot Beds to accommodate such Plants, as without them will want their perfection, till the Earth has contracted a sufficient warmth to sustain them abroad; and those Fibrous Roots as the last Month were not transplanted, now transplant them, as *Primroses*, *Violets*, *Heptica*, *Matricaria*, &c. and the Seedling *Auriculas* set in the Shade.

Sow *Carnations*, *Pinks*, &c. cleanse and trim up the old Roots from dead and rotten Leafs; Sow *Sweet Williams* after rain, that they may flower the following year; also *Lucium* in the Full of the Moon, and *Scapulars*.

Part the off-sets from the Indian Tuberales, but beware you break not their Phangs, and these off-sets in due time will produce Flowers; set them in pots of natural Earth, not such as is forced with a Layer of rich Earth underneath to succour the Fibres, but not touch the Bulbous-Roots; set the pots in hot Beds, and water not the Plants till they begin to spring, and set them then under a South-wall, and in dry weather water them much, and in August they will produce curious Flowers.

## 128 The New Art of Gardening.

In this manner order the Garnsey-Lilly, or Narcissus of Japan; Sea-sand mingled with the mould, wonderfully prosper them, especially near the surface, and order the Protuberant fangs of the Yuca in like manner as the Tuberoses.

About the middle of the Month you may expose or set out your Floss Cardinalis, Ship and set Marums Ranunculas; Water Annemonies and such Plants as are in Cases or Pots, as the driness of the season requires it.

Prune or orderly Regulate Annemonies, Gilliflowers, Carnations, or the like, where they stand too thick, or are subject to Mat together, and so being thined they will produce the fairer Flowers.

Protect your Ranunculas, Pennash, Tulips, Auriculas, Annemonies, from storms of violent Rain, Hail, or the too scorching Beams of the Sun, by covering them with Mats supported with Hoops, or bent Wands Cradlewife.

Bring forth your choice and tender shrubs in a fair day, but the Orange-trees may be continued housed till the next Month, and when you water them, let it be done with Rain or Pond-water luke-warm, but not too much at a time.

### *Flowers Blowing or Continuing.*

**R** Anunculas of Tripoly, White Violets, Annemonies, Auricula Urssi, Caprifolium, Crown Imperial, Caprifolium, Gentianella, Deus Caninus, Bell-flower, Trillaria, Double Hepticas, Starry Jacinth, Florence-Iris, Double Daisies, white and tufted Double Narcissus Chamae-Iris, Cowslips, Primroses, Pulsatilla, Ladies-Smock, Tulips, Medias, Radix, Cava Geranium, Perituria, Lutea, Caltha, Falustris, Persian Lillies, Luteolum, Peonies, Muscaria Reversed, Double Jonquills, Persian Jessamine, Acanthus, and some others.

Gemini



Gemini. II, or the Twins.

M A Y.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-  
Garden this Month.*

**S**Hade your Carnations and Gilliflowers about this season, when the Sun has passed the Meridian, and at the Full Moon plant in Beds your Stock-Gilliflowers, transplant forth Aramianthus, and water Ranunculas; sow Antirrhinum, or set it, gather such Annemony seeds, as you find to be ripe, and preserve it for a new supply, keep it very dry to preserve it from moulding or musting; cut the Stalks of those Bulbous Flowers that you find dry.

About the latter end of this Month take such Tulips as their Stalks are dried, covering the roots you find bare, to prevent their being scorched by the heat of the Sun, or washed up with sudden showers, and if any of these Roots you take up be cankered, the best remedy is speedily to bury them in fresh Mould.

*Flowers blowing or continuing, &c.*

**R**Anuncula's of all kinds; the latter set Annemonies, Anapodophylon, Chema-Iris, Blattaria, Citifus, Maranthes, Heleborine, Cyclamen, Augustifoi, Cyanus, Yellow Lillies, Aspodel, Froxinella, Cullumbines, Bulbous-Iris, Digitalis, Garanium, Horminum Criticum, Gladiolus, Double Coryleden, Caltha Plaustris, Tulips of various sorts and Colours, Jacca Lychnis, Double Bedd, White and Red Millefolium Luteum, Phalangium Oiticill, Spanish Pinks, Lillium Convallium, Rosa, common Guil-  
G. 5.

## 430 The New Art of Gardening,

der, Cinamon and Centifol, &c. Cherrybay, Oleaster, Trachelium Hisperis, Cowslips, Anterrhinum, Sedums, Syringa's, Veronica, single and double; Musk Violets, Valerian, Stock-Gilliflowers, Ladies-slipper, Chalcedons, Star-flower, Ordinary Crowfeet, Red Martagon, Campanulas, White and Blue Buglos, Homer's, Maly Persian Lillie, Bee-flower, Purple Thalictrum, Panfis Lucoium, Bulbosum Secotinum, Syfimbrium, single and double Sambucus Peonies, Sea-Narcissus, and some others.

---

Cancer ☉, or the Crab.

J U N E.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month gather such ripe Flower-seeds as are valuable, and proper to be saved, as Narcissus, Ranunculas, Oriental Jacinth, &c. preserving them dry; shade your Carnations from the Afternoon's Sun; Transplant Autumnal Cyclamen, if you design to change for a place more advantageous; take up Iris Chalcedon. Now you may make a beginning to lay Gilliflowers; also take up the best sort of Ranunculas and Anemonies, after moderate showers of Rain, the Stalks dry and withered, and the Roots in a good temper.

Take up the Bulbs of Tulips, cover those presently that lye naked on the Beds; or transplant them to a cooler Soil; water dry, or parched Beds, as also the pots of Japan Narcissus; prevent some Scabious from running to Seed, which now may be done by removing them, and so the following year they will produce very good Flowers.

Take up the Roots of such Flowers and Plants as will  
endure

## Which the Gardener is to manage. 131

endure not to be out of the ground, and immediately transplant them in fresh Soil, as Oriental Jacinth, Cyclamen, Fritillaria, Iris-Crown, Imperial, Deus Caninus, Muscaris, Bulbous Jacinths, &c.

### Flowers Blooming or coming in, &c.

**D**ouble Poppies, Phalalangium, Allobrogicum, Amaranthus, Asphodel, Hedisarum, Gladiolus, Cymantia, Panonica, Blataria, Millafolium, Yellow and White Martagon, Red and White Gentian, Helebores, Nigella, Aflrea, Atticus, Bulbous Iris, Hedisarum, Early Lark-bee, Genistia of Spain, Pinks, Ornithogalum, Moon-Lilies, White and Red, with some others.

### Leo ♌, or the Lyon.

**Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.**

**S**lip Stocks, the beginning of this Month, with other Lignous Plants and Flowers; lay Carnations and Gilliflowers, not suffering to remain above two or three Spindles for the Flowers. Take away the Superfluous Buds; support those that remain with Stayes against the Wind; destroy Erewigs, and other Insects that annoy them.

Layers, in a good light loamy Earth, will take Root in six Weeks; set as many of them as may conveniently in one pot, to save room; in Winter let not too much wet come at them; if it prove too wet, lay the pots side-ways, and shade those that blow from the heat of the Sun in the Afternoons.

Take up early Cyclamen, Bulbs and Tulips, which you may immediately plant, or if conveniency permit not, you may do it any time; within a Month after, trim them, and cut off the Fibres, spreading in an airy place very dry, but do not separate the off-sets of Tulips, and the like, till the principal Bulbs be fully dry.

Gather seeded Tulips, and permit the seeds to continue in the pods, also the seed of Early Cyclamen, and immediately sow it in Pots or Cases.

Remove Crocus that are Seedlings of the last September, giving them wide Intervals till they come to perfection.

Take up some sorts of Anunculas, Persian-Iris, Crocus, Crown Imperial, Frettilaria and Colchicums, plant the Iris, and the two last as soon as you have taken them up, if you have conveniency, else in August or September, may do tollerably well; or you may defer their taking up till then, and replant Colchicums, remove Deus Caninus, &c.

Sift your Beds for the off-sets of Tulips towards the latter end of this Month; also for Bulbous-Roots, Ranunculas, Anemonies, and the like, which will prepare them for setting or plunging, such things as are in your Pots, and require to be set in the naked Earth till the next season; some sort of Anemonies may now be sowed in Ground that is temperately moist; cut away the withered stalks that incumber the Roots of your Flowers, covering the bared Roots with fresh Earth. To destroy Worms and other Insects, strew Pot-ashes on your Grass-plats, and Carpet-Walks; and to the same end water your Gravel-Walks with water wherein Tobacco stalks have been boiled.

### *Flowers blowing this Month or continuing.*

**A** Spodes Amaranthus, Phalangium Delphinium, Veronica Odoriferous, and Purple Sultan, Connalmus, Volabilis, Thlaspe Criticum, Geranium, Triste, Fraxenela, Hedysaurum, Corn-flower, Alkengi, Double and White Jacca, Scorpion-grass, Monthly-Rose, Jacinths, and some othe rs.

Virgo

Virgo, ♍, or the Virgin-Sign.

# AUGUST.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month take up Bulbous, Iris, sow the Seeds of them, as also of Cullumbines, Candy-Tufts, Lark-beels, Holyocks, Iron-coloured Fox-gloves, and other Plants that have strength to endure the approaching season.

Plant some Anemony-Roots for Winter-flowers; take up the last years Seedlings, Transplant them for Bearers, also Autumnal Crocus, Deus Caninus, and Colchium's.

Sow Oriental Jacinths, Narcissus, and replant such Roots as will not well abide out of the Earth, as Higanths, Deus Caninus, Lillies, Martagon, Fretarilla, &c.

As yet, you may slip Gilliflowers, and take up Bulbous-roots: As your Alaternus Seed grows black and ripe, gather it daily, spread it to sweat, and put it up dry for use; water Pallamin-fam: and other Seeds, that you find ripe, may now be gathered, especially from Shrubs.

About the middle of this Month, divide the Large old Roots of Auriculas, and Transplant them in a light moist Earth, Loamy or Sandy, yet fertile, and in the shade; you may now likewise sow the Seed of them, also Anemony-seed towards the latter end of this Month. That of Ranunculas, &c. place them in light Mould in Cases moderately covered with Earth, frequently refresh them, and keep them in the Shade. Likewise Hepatica, Iris, Fraxenella, Jacinths, Cyclamen, Primroses, Tulips, Martagon, Fretillaria, and the like; though some of these from the Seed,

Seed, flower not in four or five years, as the Tulip, unless set so shallow that it cannot sink deep into the ground; however take care not to disturb their Beds, weed them well, and shade them till the great heats are past, lest too much driness spoil the Seed; but as for Primroses and Hepatica there need not be so much care taken of them.

*Flowers blowing this Month or lasting, &c.*

**A** Nagasis, Nigella, Luchnis, Yellow Millefolium, Lucoion, Monthly-Rose, Phaffi-Creticum, Cyclamen, Venum, Yellow Mountain, Hearts ease, Colchicum, Autumnal Hyacinth, Starworth, Hellebore, Eriogonum, Eringium-planum, French Marigolds, Daffies, Pansies, Lark-heels, Catchfly, Lobelia, and some others.

*Libra ♎, or the Balance.*

## SEPTEMBER.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month plant a few of the various sorts of Anemones, to be the earlier, in naturally rich or improved Earth, particularly the Lacifol, do it when the first rains are over.

And now very properly you may sow Auricula-seeds, placing the Cases in the Sun till April following. You may also plant some Tulips, Colchicum, Daffodils, or like the Fibrous Plants, such as Primroses, Violets, Matricaria, Capillaries, Camemile, Hellebore, Hepatica, and the like; also Transplant Cyclamen and Chalcedon.

If you think fit, you may now sow Phillerea, Alaternus,

or



or you may do it in the Spring. Likewise Tulips, Martagon, Delphinium Nigella, Poppey, Candy Tufts, Crown Imperial, and all Annuals that are not impaired by the Frost in General.

Sow the Seeds of Primroses, and Transplant Seedling Digitalis; and early this Month plant Lychnis-slips; House your Tuberoses from the wet in this season, and preserve the Roots out of the Pots in Sand, or wrapped up in Paper, place them in dry Boxes near the Chimney.

Fasten Autumnal-flowers and Plants to Sticks, that may secure them from breaking in violent Winds.

Take off Gilli-flower Layers with Earth, and place them in Shaded Borders or Pots: You may now raise Crocus of seeds, and such Flowers or Plants as will not prosper if Housed, set in Pots in the Ground three or four Inches lower than the surface of the Beds you plunge them in; expose them as much as may be to the South; Cloath them with Glass-Bells; but in warm Showers, or when the Sun shines pretty warm, you may uncover them, and give them air, and so you may preserve the most precious Flowers, as Cistus, Marum-Syriacum, Floss-Cardinalis, Geranium, Noctelens, Seedling Arbutus, Accacia Aegyptica, Anemonies, Ranuncula's, &c. and so order them till April. Guard your Marum-Syriacum with Furzes, or Bushes, from the Cats, for if they come at it, they will eat and destroy it.

Flowers blooming this Month or continuing, Sic.

**A** Nagallis of Portugal, Amaranthus, Clematis, Autumnal Cyclamen, Linaria Cretica, Limonium, Indian Lillies, Narcissus, Chrysanthemum, Stock-Gilliflowers, Sun-flowers, Spinosum Indicum, Persian Autumnal, Narcissus, Pomum Aurium, Amoxis Nasturtium, Indicum Gentianella, Annual Tuberas, Indian Jacinths, Yellow Millefolium, Virginian Phalangium, and some others.

Scorpio m, or the Scorpion.

## OCTOBER.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month House Turbosc, Narcissus, and keep it dry till April; sow Seeds as in September; as yet plant Anemonies, particularly the Tenuifolio's in fresh Sandy Earth, likewise set Ranuncula's taken from under the Turf, but let the bottom of the Bed be rich Mould, so that the Fibers of the Roots may reach it, but not the main Roots, which only cover with Natural Earth about two Inches deep, and preserve them from the Frosts with Straw or Mats, but in the warm times of the day give them the free air. Now Plant Vernal Crocus, and Ranunculas of Tripoly, remove Holyocks, and about this time you may plant choise Tulips, and they will be sufficiently forward, as also secured from danger; mix Natural Earth, somewhat impoverished, with fine Sand, and plant them in it, though at the bottom, within the reach of the Fibres, you must place rich Earth.

New beware your Carnations be not injured by the Wet, therefore in excess of Rain, cover them so that the Air may however come at them, or lay them on the sides, and with fresh Mould trim them up; you may now without danger bury all sorts of Bulbous Roots, as likewise Iris.

Sow Phillirea and Alaternus-seeds, Mow Carpet Walks, beat and Rowl them, as also Cammomile Beds, and make an end of your last Weeding, cleanse your Walkes and Allies from fallen leaves, which corrupting will produce Vermis.

*Flowers blowing or continuing this Month, &c.*

**L** Ymonium, Lychnis, Amaranthus, Three coloured Aster, Atticus, Heliotrops, Tuberos, Jacinths, Marvel of Perue, Autumnal Narcissus, Gilliflowers, Virgin Phalangium, Pomum Amoris, and Æthiop. Garanium Triste, Aleppo Narcissus, Pansies, Spherical Narcissus, Cyclamen, Saffron, Clamentis, and some others.

Sagittarius ♄, or the Archer.

# N O V E M B E R.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**C** Over the Ranunculas that are coming up, prepare rich Earth made so with about Half-dung, sift on it some Sandy light Mould and Earth gotten out of Hollow or doated Willow-Trees, put it in Cases or Pots in the Sun, and sow in it Auricula-seeds.

If the Weather be open and seasonable, plant the fairest sort of Tulips in Earth not over rich, and let them be under shelter about the middle of the Month; House your tender Plants and Flowers, also set the choicest Carnations under a Pent-house, or some such like shelter under a South-wall, and in sharp Weather put a covering over them, but not so close as to exclude the benefit of the air; and for shelter of your Seedlings, and choice Plants, prepare Mattresses, Pots, Cases, and Boxes, plant Fiberous Roots, also Althea-sutax, Roses, Cytifus, Cyringas, Pronies, and the like; cleanse and sweep the Walks, &c.

*Flowers.*

*Flowers blowing this Month or continuing, &c.*

**M** Eddow Saffron, Anemonies, Bellis, Stock-Gilliflowers, Pancies, Clamatis, Double Violets, some kind of Carnations, Anterrhinum, Veronica, Musk-Roses, and some others.

---

Capricornus ♊, or the Goat.

## DECEMBER.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**P** Reserve your Carnations, Ranunculas and Anemonies from Excessive rains, House all tender Plants; seek out and destroy Insects and Vermin that annoy your Gardens, prepare warm Litter to lay over such choice things as are to continue abroad; if the Frost comes, carry store of Dung, lay it in a readiness in some convenient place to rot against the Spring, that it may be the fitter for your use, and order other things as has been directed in *January*.

*Flowers blowing this Month or continuing.*

**I** Ris Clusi, some Anemonies, Common and Persian Winter Cyclamen, Black Hellebore, Antirrhinum, Drops or Snow-flowers, Single Primroses, Stock-Gilliflowers, and some others.

And thus Reader have I given you an Exact Account of what is most material to be done in the several Months, &c.

*Flowers*

*Flowers, Shrubs, and choice Plants, enduring several Degrees of Cold, how they are to be preserved.*

**T**He Degrees of Cold any choice Flower or plant will bear without damage or destruction, is requisite for a Gardener to know, that so he may order them by a timely care to prevent loss, and being reputed no proficient in his Employment; and these are commonly divided in three degrees.

*Flowers and Plants not dying but by Extream Cold.*

**S**ingle Violets, Serapentaria, Trifolium, White and Double Narcissus of *Constantinople*, Agnus Castus, Malva Arborescens, Persian Jessamine, Moly, Althæa Frutax, Crithmum Maritimum, Ornithoglon Arabian, Felle Ethiop. Veronica, Teucrium mas Tythymal. Myrtifolia, Jacca, Sarsaparilla, Abrotanum, Male and Female; Adiantum Verum, Aconitæ Verum, Bellis Hispani, Rosemary, Lavender, Cherry Lawrels, Bulbous Iris, Cytisus, Meranthæ, Red Lunatus, Cæsararia Pomgranads, Oriental Jacinths, Double White Lychnis, Double Matricaria, Pancration, Spinous Poppy Marcoc, Sysynelchium, Cneorum Matthioli, the Eryngium plain, and Italy Blue, Mountain Fritillaria, *Spanish* Genista white Flowered, Olives.

And these, unless in violent or excessive, colds may be set into the Conservatory, or Green-house; or you may protect them abroad in pots, cases or Boxes, and Mattresses, or thinner covering.

*Flowers and Plants enduring the second degree of Cold.*

**S**ummer-purple, Cyclamen, Amomum Plinii, Citron, Digitalis Hispan, Aspilanthus creticus, Jacobæa Marina, Suza Iris, Oleanders, Alexandrian Lawrel, Oranges, Lentiscus Myrtles, Lanentine, Tufted Narcissus, choicest Carnations and Gilliflowers, Narcissus of Japan, Red Cytisus, Vernal Cyclamen, Canna Indica, Double and Single Asiatick Ranuncula's, Hedyсарium Clypeatum, Virginia Jesmine, Thymis Capitatus Verbenanodi, Flores Cretica, Geranium-triste, Cheme-Læa Alphestris, Carbo; and some few others of the choicest sorts; and therefore when the Frosts approach so that they seem to set in they must be hastened into the Conservatory, &c.

*Flowers and Plants the least of all enduring Cold.*

**A**Rabian Ornithogalon, Tuberoſe Narcissus, Acacia Ægyptiaca, Helichryson, Balsamum, Amaranthus, three colours, American Aloes, Aspalathus of Oret, Ghamelæa tricoccus, Indian Narcissus, Summer-sweet Marjorum, Pistacios, Dactyls, the great Indian Fig, Lylac with the white Flower, Coultea Odorata, Cistus Ragusæus, with the white Flower, Cretica, Lavendula Multifol. clus. Styrax Arbor, Nastrutium Indicum. The two Marums of Syria; Capsicum Indicum, Pomum Æthiop. Aureum, Spinosum Phaseol, and some few others that are very choice and tender, and therefore a Gardener who undertakes to order them, must have a special care he suffers not the Nipping Frosts or cold winds to surprize late abroad; lest they die, and his Labour and Expectation have thereby an equal frustration.

These of all other tender Flowers or Plants, must first be removed into the Conservatory or Green-house, and carefully tended and ordered according to the Directions that



## With the Gardener's Almanack. 141

that will follow in the close of this Book, relating to the well-ordering and regulating a Green-house, or Conservatory ; and if you have not opportunity or convenience to remove them so early as necessity requires, then cover them as they stand for a time with Matresses, or thinner covering, according as the Season is colder or hotter, or the cold dews fall, which after *Bartholomew-tide* fall very cold in the night, and are great enemies to choice Plants and Flowers, bringing mostly with them Nipping morning Frosts, as they are called Mildues, and other misfortunes, so that a little neglect does a great deal of mischief, which much time, cost and labour cannot renew or recover.

Therefore again I say be careful in this, and gain advantage and credit.

---

*A further Description of Flowers, as to their  
Shapes and Colours.*

**DOROTHEA.**

**T**his is an esteemed Flower, of a deep brown purple, whiped very curiously about the Edges, dapled with red and lighter purple, a curious white bottom, and Tamis purple.

**BACCHUS BOLE.**

This Flower is not Tall, yet a very full, Large and Broad Leafed Flower, being of a sad light purple and a proper white, divided equally, having the three utmost Leafs edged with a Crimson colour, Blewish bottom, and dark purple and Tamis.

**MEMORABLES.**

This Flower, is of a pale tan'd Leather colour, bright yellow and sad purple, and is for its variety compared with many now in good Esteem.

*Royal Shuttle-maker.*

This Flower, has sharp pointed Leafs, turning a little, curiously marked with a bright Carnation pale yellow and deep Scarlet, the bottom Tamis black, and is well improved by off-sets coming out above the lowermost Leaf.

**DIANEA**

DIANE A.

**T**His Flower is properly raised from Seeds of the Diana, differing from it in that it hath white Leafs edged and whiped about, and feathered in the middle with deep brown purple, and Tamis dark blue.

*Purvoin of Rome.*

This Flower hath it's Leafs very Green and Large in the Stalk, rising high, and dividing into several Branches striped, or at least each Leaf of the Flower listd about with yellow, the rest deep Scarlet.

PEONIE.

This Flower, though common, is a great grace and ornament to the Flower-Garden, it is Male and Female; the first of these are single, and known by the constantly coming of the Leafs whole and undevided; the Roots are round and long, and the Flower of a purplish Red; and of the Male there is but one kind, but of the Females many, some bearing Double, others Single Flowers, resembling in shape the common red Rose; and these being usually, I need not Elaborate to describe their kinds being mostly u- for adorning windows in House-Flower-pots.

*The Bee-Flower.*

This grows not above six Inches high, having three or four narrow Leafs, bearing on the Stalk three or four Flowers one above another; and where there happens to be four Leafs, three of them are usually small and sharp pointed, of a bluish colour, turning up towards the top of the Stalk; the fourth is round, in Colour like a Bee that is Sucking a Flower, which has deceived many at first sight, who have supposed it to be really so. This has two Roots joynd together, and round, and when the Flower fades, usually one of them perishes, and the other remains sound for further encrease.

*The*

*The Blader-nut.*

This grows low if neglected to be pruned up and kept from the Suckers; the Bark is whitish, and the Leafs like Elder-flowers, white and sweet, hanging many on a stalk, after them Greenish bladders, each containing one Nut, sending up many Suckers, by which it greatly encreases.

## RUBENTE D.

This is the great pale Red or Peach-bloom coloured Flower-de-luce, being Bulbous-rooted, and is more in esteem than the many other Irises, so called from their several colours, resembling them in the Rain-bow, and is adorned with small Yellow spots in each of the three falling Leafs.

*The Spanish Yellow Irish.*

This Flower is of a curious Golden colour in all parts of the blowing Leafs: There is yet another of this kind with a pale Yellow flower, with a deep yellow spot, and of these there are indeed many diversities, some paler, some bigger, some lesser, and others of a deeper yellow colour, one with white falling Leafs, except a yellow spot, which is usual to all Bulbous-Iris, or Flower-de-luces. Also the *Spanish* party coloured Flower-de-Luce, whose Leafs are white, that fall, but the Arch'd ones of a Silver colour, and the top-leafs of a bluish-purple; some again of a fair bluish-purple, others of a Reddish-purple, another Sky-coloured, Arched with Yellow-falling-Leafs, &c.

*Hungarian Rose.*

This Rose differs from the usual common Red, one in its Green-shoots, its Flower being of a paler Red, having faint spots spread over the Leafs of the whole double Flower.

*The Double Velvet Rose.*

This Rose has its shoots of a sadish red green colour, little thorney, the Leafs being of a sadder Green than the common red Rose; the Flowers are consistent of two or three rows of Leafs, of a dark red Velvet-colour, having some distinction of lighter red in them, rarely producing many Flowers.

*The Marble Rose.*

This resembles the former in growth, but is larger and more folded, being of a light red, Marbled with a lighter bluish Grey-deline, and gives a curious scent.

*The Virgin Rose.*

Is in the Leafs greener than the last, being smooth and without any thorne, the flower not very thick or standing, but spreading the Leafs, and standing forwarder from each other; the Leafs that are of a pale red, or bluish colour, are streaked on the faces, the back-sides being of whitish colour, blowing usually fair, and are of a very fragrant scent.

*The Evergreen Rose.*

This is so called, because the Leafs fade not in Winter, but remain Green, and continue till new ones come in the Spring; the Flowers are cluster'd four or five together at each end of the Branches, which consist but of one Leaf single, of a curious white colour, having a Muskey scent.

*The Moly of Hungary.*

This Flower is of two sorts, the first hath three or four long broad green Leafs, which go up with the stalk foot high, one above the other; and are on the top of

## 146 The New Art of Gardening,

is set with some Reddish bulbs, of a pail purple; the root small and fit for Everease; the second is in resemblance of the first, only the stalk bears smaller Leafs, and a greater cluster of dark green bulbs, the Flowers alike, &c.

### SUPERIOR.

Those of *Savoy* and *Italy* of these kinds are chiefest in esteem, they are very secure plants against Weather, and prosper in almost any Soil, especially where it is moist, bearing a Star-like flower, white and something inclining to blushing.

#### *Dames Violet.*

This is called the Queens Gilliflower, and by some the close Sciences; there are two sorts of them, both single, one of a pale blush, the other white, producing but four Leafs.

#### *The Double White Gilliflower.*

This is accounted the nobler, having many Branches on a stalk, and many flowers on a branch, standing close together in a long spike, the flowers being of a curious white colour, thick and double, and give their choicest scent in the Evening on the declining of the Sun.

#### *Double Poppys.*

These are not to be omitted though they give no fragrant scent, since their beauties are an Ornament to the Flower-Garden; they are of various colours, though of one kind; some red, others purple, some white, others scarlet, and some again white-blush, others party-colour, one Leaf half scarlet, and half white, some striped with the same colour, but those chiefly esteemed, are of a Golden yellow, double flowering, and produce much seed.



*Bastard Bittany.*

This grows about two foot high, bearing a Reddish flower, having many brownish woody stalks; and on the lower part of it are many winged Leafs, seven, nine, or eleven together, resembling those of a young Ash, though somewhat larger, longer, and purplish about the edges, being of a sad green colour.

*Male Cistus.*

This has not its growth above a yard high, small and shrubby, composed of many brittle slender woody branches, bearing flowers of a fine reddish purple, like single Roses each having five small round Leafs, many yellow threads in the middle that soon fall away, &c.

*Virgin Silk.*

This with one or more round stalks rises near four foot high, set with two long broad veins, at several Joyns green and round pointed, and on the top of the stalk, cut of the skiny hose, a great tuft of flowers issue, sometimes thirty or forty hanging down on long foot-stalks, each containing five small hollow Leafs of a purple-colour, which fading, are succeeded by long crooked cods, standing upwards, which produce flat brown Seeds.

*Indiā Scarlet Jesamine.*

This comes up from a large spreading Root, with one, two or more flexible branches, which must be supported when they put forth their Tendrills, by fastening to any woody substance, and there will come forth two winged Leafs, much like them of Roses, and at the end of the branches come forth the flowers, many in number, long like a Fox-glove, and at the end opening into five fair broad Leafs, with a stile and small threading in the middle, the colour of Saffron; some of these Plants have on

## 148 The New Art of Gardening.

the inside the flower, small and red Leafs; others veined with small yellow lines, the ground being a deep Scarlet.

### *The Rose Bay-Tree.*

This is of two sorts, one bringing Red, the other white flowers, not otherways differing, its stem growing to the highness of an Inch and a half compass, dividing into three branches at each Joint; bearing long, hard, thick, and dark Leafs at the end of the branches; the flower issues of a white in the one and deep Bluish in the other; containing four long narrow Leafs, yet round pointed, falling away without Seed.

### *Candy Tufts.*

These are small Plants, whitish green Leafs, their stalks set with narrow long notches, and at the top is produced many small single Flowers, placed close together, some white, and others with purple spots in the middle; others all of a purple colour; they are produced of Seeds, the Roots yearly perishing.

### *Flower Gentle of many Colours.*

This produces a Flower of a lighter colour, of Purple-scarlet, and Gold-colour; Lemon, Orange, some Straw-colour, and crimson; they have a thick stalk, with many large green Leafs, of many branches, &c.

### *The Shrub Spiciera.*

This Flower rises a yard, or something more in height, with divers woody stalks set with long green Leafs, nicked on the edges; and the top of the stalk produces many Flowers of a pale Peach-bloom colour, close together in a long Spike, lessening by degrees, like Pyramids; the woody-Root despises the Winter's rage, and may be propagated by Layers.

*The Cloath of Silver coloured Crow-foot.*

This produces lesser Flowers than some others of its kind, having its Leafs pointed, six, seven, or eight in number, of a pale yellowish Blush-colour, striped on the inside, but more on the out-side with Crimson, the Root Grumous.

*The Double Yellow Crow-foot.*

This is called the *Ranuncula of Asia*, having its Leafs spreading, and divided like a Carrot; from the Root, rise many small stalks, each producing a shining yellow small double Flower.

*The Ranuncula of Aleppo.*

This Flower is of a curious Orange-colour'd tawney, round and very double striped with Yellow.

**C A R O L I N A.**

This Flower is curiously marked and striped with shades of Murry-purple through the several Leafs of it, blue at bottom, and Purple Tawny, making a very curious shew.

*The Indian Fig.*

This springs Leafs one out of another, from one Leaf put half into the Earth: which taking root, puts out others, being a finger-thick, flat and round pointed, and of colour a pale green; showing at first brown prickles at the upper end, and at the tops of the Leafs the Flowers break forth, set with two Rows of pale Yellow Leafs, having a yellow thrum tipped with Red in the middle; after the Flower fades, the head they stood on, in the middle, grow large, in the form of a Fig, but in these Countries comes not to perfection; it is a tender Plant, and must be set in

250 *The New Art of Gardening.*

Pots, so that it may be Houſed in the Winter, leſt the Froſt rot and deſtroy it.

*White Helebre.*

This makes its firſt appearance with a round large head, of a green whitish colour, and afterward opens in many fine green Leaſs, ſignally pleated in every part, taking a compaſs about each other at the bottom, from whence a ſtalk riſes about a yard high, ſmall Leaſs extending to the middle of it, which dividing into many branches bears a conſiderable number of Star-like Flowers, ſmall, and of a yellowish green colour.

*The Double Purple Virgins-Bower.*

This hath many woody Branches, covered with thin brown out-bark, and green underneath, winding about what it takes hold on; the Leaſs are at the Joynts, conſiſting of three parts of it notched; on one ſide, and ſome on both; the Flowers appear from the Joynts on long ſoot-ſtalks, ſtanding like Croſſes, of a ſullen dark Red; the outward Leaſs broad, and the inward folded like a Button, ſo that the outward ones fall off before the inward ones ſpread themſelves, this is proper to be ſupported againſt a wall, and ſuch of the ſmall Branches as die in Winter, prune off in the end of March.

*Marum, or Herb Maſtick.*

This riſes about a foot high, with hard ſtiff ſtalks, and the many Branches into which it divides it ſelf, are ſet with fine Green ſmall Leaſs, two at a Joynt, at the top of the Branches it ſends forth ſmall white Flowers, and among the Tuſſs downy threads; all the Plant, as well as Flowers, being of a curious ſcent, and may be improved by Slips ſet in April.

*The Autumn Mountain Cress.*

This is of a pale Blue colour, it stands on short foot-stalks, appearing but little above ground, but soon grows a little higher, and is prized, because it comes when other Flowers are going out being of a curious softness.

*The Silver cupped Spanish Moley.*

This appears with two or three long rush-like Leafs, fading when the stalk is at its height, that aspiring a yard, or more, bearing a considerable head of Flowers that soon open, grow on long foot-stalks, and spread much, the Flowers being of the colour of Silver, with lines down them on both sides, the Leafs fashioned small and hollow in the manner of an Encrease well, with little trouble.

*The Great yellow Frithillary.*

This has a stalk about two foot high, the Flower is long, small, and of a pale Yellow, and is well in composition of a Garden among May-flowers, whose number is as numerous as various.

As for these last, Reader, I have given you most of them in the *English* Names; as for the Months Flowers blow in, I have set them down particularly, as you will find in this Book, in the Months adapted to the *Flower-Garden*; so that nothing may be omitted to satisfy the Reader in his Curiosity.

THE  
GARDENER'S  
ALMANACK:

For what is necessary to be  
done in the *Green-House*,  
and *Conservatory*, in Pre-  
serving and well Ordering  
choice Shrubs, Plants, Flo-  
wers, &c. with the time of  
Houseing, &c.

**G**reens, as well as Flowers, are to be considered, and  
care taken of them, because they are not only  
pleasant to the Site of a Garden, but serve for  
many profitable uses, besides Adornment and Fragrancy.  
Therefore,



In M A R C H,

*What things are proper to be done.*

**P**lant Box in Parterres, Sow Bay-seeds, Fir-seeds, Phillyrea, Alaternus, and most Perennial Greens; and after the Equinox a few days, prune Pine and Fir-Trees; Sow towards the end of the Month Myrtle-Berries steeped a while in warm water.

Wrap with Straw-wisps the Tops of Shorn Cyprus; cover with Straw, or Peashawm, your exposed Evergreens, as also Bays, Cyprus, Phillyrea, Pine, Fir, &c. that are Seedlings, till they have continued in the Nursery about three years, and are capable of being Transplanted, lest the sharp Winds too much dry and injure them; and uncover them not till the latter end of the Month, or the ray of the Frost be pretty well over; especially the Evergreens, lest the Wind and Sun conspire to wither and destroy them; and this you may do in black Winds, or sharp Frosts all the Winter.

At the latter end of this Month you may set your Orange-Trees, Myrtles, Lemmon-Trees, Ammomus, Dates, Lentisci, Olenders, Aloes, and such like Plants, that are tender and impatient of cold, in the Portico of your Conservatory; and if the Weather be mild and warm, the sharp Frosts and Winds being over, you may open the Windows and Doors, but do it gradually, and not altogether, and trust not to the leaving them open a nights, unless the season be very well settled; and some hardy Evergreens may be Transplanted, if the season be warm and temperate. It is also a proper time to raise Stocks to bud Lemmons and Oranges on; and to do it for the Seeds early in the Month, in Pots, half a dozen of the Seeds of Civil Oranges may be placed in a Pot filled with Earth, and

## 154 - The New Art of Gardening.

That Earth which is taken the first half spit under the Turf, in rich Pasture-ground, where Cattel have much been sothered, and mix of rotten Cow-dung one part with it, and if then it happen to be too stiff, sift moderately a little Lime and rotten wood, or sticks of willows; and for binding, if occasion requires it, add a little Loamy Earth, and plunge the pots into hot beds, which may be renewed in May, and so e're Winter the shoots will be near a foot, and in three years fit to inoculate, which at the end of this Month you may also bud, by placing two Buds opposite one to the other, not above an Inch from the Earth.

### In APRIL.

#### *What things are proper to be done.*

**T**HIS Month Sow Phillyrea, Pine-Kernels, Fir-seeds, Alternus, and the most sorts of Perennial Greens. Take your tender and choice Shrubs of the Conservatory, and air them in a fair day, and about the middle of the Month, if the Weather be fair and temperate, else let them remain till May; and when you see occasion to water them, about four Gallons of warm water will serve to do about Trees, but let it be Rain or Pond-water, which will most nourish them.

You may also graft your tender Shrubs, and the like, by approach, as Jesamines, Pomgranades, Oranges, Lemmons, and the like.

Towards the end of the Month will be a proper season to remove and transplant Oleanders, Myrtles, Spanish Jesamine, young Orange-Plants, Pomgranades, &c. so as not suffering them to sprout, placing them about a Fortnight in the shade; Refresh and trim them, as also Spanish Jesamine, within an Inch or two of the Stock, when it begins

## With the Gardener's Almanack: 155

to put out or shoot. If the cold Winds are passed; towards the end of the Month, after gentle showers, *Cyp Barba-Jovis*, *Box*, *Cyprus*, *Myrtle*, *Phillyrea*, *Alternus*; and to prevent *Box* smelling after it is Clyped, water it immediately, and the scent will vanish.

---

### IN M A Y,

#### *What things are proper to be done.*

**B**Ring forth your Orange-Trees, Remove and Transplant them. See the particular manner of it in what relates to Orchard-management of Fruit-Trees.

Give such Houſed-shrubs and Plants as you think not convenient to bring yet abroad, fresh Earth at the surface, a handful deep, or somewhat more, loosening the rest of the Earth with a forked Stick, without bruising or wounding the Roots.

Brush and cleanse the Leafs of your Plants, from dust, or some other ill conveniencies they have gathered in the *Green-house*; and if you neither remove nor transplant them, take off the surface of the old Earth, and finely sift on some rotten old Cow dung.

For the several sorts of Greens, except Oranges and Lemmons, you need not in taking up to transplant them, or trim the Roots much, unless they are very much intangled or matted; and as they increase in growth and stature, remove them into larger Pots or Cales, and put lesser into those you remove them out of, and this need not be done above once in two or three years.

---

In J U N E,

*What things are proper to be done.*

**N**OW Inoculate Roses, Jesamine, and some other choice Shrubs ; set Slips of Myrtle in cold moist ground, and they will the better take Root. Likewise by Slips you may multiply Cytisus-Innatus in Ground that is moderately moist, but let them not exceed a handful in length, and be of the same spring ; and use this Month neither Seeds nor Layers of them ; Water now such things as require it ; Trim up your Knots, and put every thing in order that by defect, accident, or luxuriance have intangled, or put themselves out of decency, or regular form, and proceed to place the spreading-shoots, or tender Slip of this years growth in your Verdant Bowers, or Arbours.

---

In J U L Y,

*What things are proper to be done.*

**Y**OU may this Month continue to Slip Myrtle, Lawrels, and other useful Greens. Water Shrubs newly Planted, as also Layers of Grapads, Myrtle, Orange-Trees, Armonum ; which Shrub must be frequently watered, and cannot well be done too much, requiring likewise very much Compass to support it, as do also the Granades and Myrtles ; so that take care when you trim their Roots, or change their Earth, that you give them the fattest and most natural Soil.

Inarch,

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 257

Inarch, graft by Approach, and inoculate Oranges, Jesamine, and other curious Shrubs: Take up Autumna! Cyclamen, gather the early Seeds of it, and sow it in Pots.

About the latter End of this Month lay new Earth on the Surface of the Cases wherein your Orange-trees are planted, and cool them as much as you can, and plunge your Pots in cool Earth to avoid the excessive-heat of the Sun.

---

## In AUGUST.

*What things are proper to be done, &c.*

**T**HE beginning of this Month is the proper Season for success in budding of Orange-trees: Therefore inoculate seedling Stocks of about 3 or 4 Years growth; and to have good Buds, for this purpose, take off the head of an old Orange-tree that is of a good kind, which will furnish you with the best, by making large Shoots.

About the 24th of this Month is a proper and very safe Season to remove and lay your Perennial Greens, Lemmons, Oranges, Myrtles, Oleanders, Phillyreas, Pomgranads, Monthly Roses, Arbutus, Jesmins, and other choice Shrubs, and such as ill endure the Frost; peg the Shoot and Branch of the last Spring in very fertile Earth, water them as you see occasion, during the Summer; and when this Time comes again the next Year, you may transplant or remove them into fit Earth, set in the shade with moderate Moisture, but not too much, lest it rot the young Fibres; and then at 3 Weeks end place them in a more Airy Station, but not till fifteen Days after; you ought not to venture them in the Sun, especially if it shine hot.

## IN SEPTEMBER.

*Things proper to be done, &c.*

**P**lant Irish-chalcidon, and Cyclamen, continue to sow Phillyrea and Alternus, and Annuals that are not impaired by the Frost.

Prune Pines and Fir-trees some-what after the Equinoctial, if it was not done in *March*; for I prefer that Month as a properer Season.

About *Michælast*, later or sooner, as the Weather proves seasonable, fair, without Fogs or great Mists, is a proper Time to retire your tender Greens, &c. observing at the same Time that they be dry on the Leafs, &c. as Lemmons, Oranges, Indian, and Spanish-Jessamine, Dates, Ledon-Clusi, Aloes, Sedums, Oleanders, Barbadoes, Citysus, Lunatus, Annonum, Plum, Choemeleatricoccos; put them into your Conservatory with fresh Mould, fixed amongst that which is on the Top of their Cases and Boxes; then add rich and well consumed Soil, for their better nourishment during the Winter, but you need not shut the Doors and Windows of the House, till the Cold is much more increased, and by its sharpness gives you warning to do it: As for Myrtles they may be left abroad till the latter End of *October*.



*In* OCTOBER.

*Things proper to be done, &c.*

**I**N this Month you may sow Cyprus, if the Frost be not rise, but do not much clip your Shrubs of any kind; sow Alternus and Philligra-seeds, and look after your Green-house, to place all things in good Order, and clear them of dead or decaying Leaves, or any other Advancements; and remove such things as are yet abroad, according to their Degrees bearing Cold, into the latter, and put Dung to the Roots of such as are yet left abroad, but not too much, nor too hot, lest it injure them to too much heat, so that they will be the less able.

*In* NOVEMBER.

*Things proper to be done, &c.*

**T**HIS Month cover your young exposed Evergreens, with Straw or Hay-mat, if the Winds be very sharp; lest they be dried up and spoiled; and quite enclose your tender Plants, Perennial-Greens, and choice Shrubs, if the Frosts come on in your Conservatory, excluding particularly the cold Winds; and if they there appear very dry, and not freezing, you may water them with Water qualified with Cow or Sheeps-dung some-what warm.

Plant Roses, Althea-frutex, Citrus, and sow Rony Seeds.

You may now plant Forrest-trees for Walks, to make a curious green Shade in their proper Seasons, either in Walks or Avenues, and cover your tender Greens in the Nursery, with Matrifles and warm Straw.

## *In DECEMBER.*

### *Things proper to be done, &c.*

**I**N this Month little can be expected to be done as to Gardening, and therefore may be termed to the careful Gardener a Month of Rest, wherein he ought to take care of himself in providing wholesome, nourishing Diet, warm Cloaths and good Fires; yet let him look after such things as yet require his Care, especially in the Green-house, or Conservatory, which now will prove an easie Task, the main being to keep the Windows and Doors well clos'd, and lined with Mats or other Conveniencies, to prevent the piercing Air entering through the Crevices; for now the Orange-trees are most likely to be in danger, and therefore if the Weather be extream, assist them with the kindly heat of Fire, but not too much, for that does more harm than cold.

Set dropping ripe Baberries, and Pine-kernals in a good mellow Mould, and see what else is requisite, and so I conclude the Year with my wish, that the honest Gardener's undertakings may be always successful and prosperous.

**THE**

White Holes, Alnus lutea, Cypripedium, and low rocky seeds.

---

THE  
GREEN-HOUSE  
AND  
CONSERVATORY  
FOR THE

Preservation of Plants, Shrubs, Choice Flowers, &c. From Winds, Frosts, or cold Airs that would otherwise chill and destroy them.

**G**reens that last all the Year are for the most part not to be kept without great Care, sometimes abroad, and sometimes in the Conservatory ; and since few Books give any satisfactory Account of, to accommodate the English Gardener : I conceived it highly necessary to place such Rules and Directions on that occasion at the latter End of this Work, as cannot chuse but make it more acceptable to the Ingenious, than any that have gone before it.

That a Green-House or Conservatory to preserve choice Greens and Flowers from the nipping Winds or chilling Frosts, I cannot conceive any that deal this way are ignorant, though some are for having it in one Fashion, and others in another ; and indeed I shall not undertake to contradict Fancy in this matter, yet there remains something to be said that many are ignorant of, and being known and put in practice, may highly conduce to their Advantage.

Con-

Consider then that free breathing Air is that which continues the life and growth of Plant, as well as Animals, and where they are stifled and kept in too close, though with Heat and subterranean Fires, as Stows, &c. in the cold Weather, as many use for want of free Air to breathe, they express a Languor by the parching of the Brims of the Leafs; and sometimes a Decay and Dryness of the whole Leaf, which could they have moderate Heat and Air to pass in and out moderately for their Refreshment, would be remedied, and this can be done no better than by Earthen-pipes conveniently placed, some in a Stow set on the out-side of the House, conducting Heat, and others conveniently placed to let out the stagnated or sulphurous Air that sickens the Plants, and let in that which is fresh and pure to revive and refresh them, that they may continue and flourish, at least keep their lively Verduire; and this is far better than Pans of Charcoal, or Stows within, that corrupt and stifle the Air; and such a Stow may be erected with a Chimney or Funnel, a Fire-hearth, and an Ash-hole at a moderate Price, and the Expence of much less Fuel than the others; the Pipes to let in Heat need not exceed three, and one or two of them as occasion requires, may sometimes be stopped, as less or more Heat is requisite, the Season being very sharp or relenting, and so may you order those of the like Number, to let in and out the Air.

In this House, you must have your Door and Windows to the South; and the Door that is placed in the side of it requires a Porch, with another Door matted, to keep the Crevices, and shutting Close, so that going in or out one Door may be shut upon you before the other is opened, that the cold Air may be kept out, that otherwise would rush in with much Violence.

As for the Windows they must have wooden Shutters, as well as Sashes of Glass well framed in, that when the Cold is extream they may be totally shut up; and when there is relentings, or Sun-shiny Days, the wooden Shutters may in the Day-time by degrees be opened to let in the Sun and Air more freely, but not the Glass ones be drawn up, unless it proves very warm and sunshiny, and then

then not too suddenly but with Caution, and Discretion, that the Plants may take it kindly, and not find too sudden an Alteration in the change of the Air, which may prove very prejudicial.

So range your Pots and Cases wherein your choice Plants and Flowers stand, that each may receive a Benefit of Air, and warmth according to its Degree, but not so near as to interfere or intangle with one another, for then they will keep in the contaminated, thick or gross Air, and there will be no free breathing amongst them; as in this Case there ought to preserve a Vivacity or Liveliness in them.

The Greens require little watering in the Conservatory, or Green House, and many of them none; as Aloes, and the like; because it makes them sickly and fading, the Air being sufficient to moisten them, especially in the cold Season; and when by the curling and withering of the Leafs you find a Necessity to do it, warm the Water, and mix it a little with Pigeons or Poultry's Dung; pour it on moderately some Distance from the Roots, that it may leisurely soak to them, and not in any abundance.

Take off such Leafs as wither or grow dry, and stir the Stalk or Bole of the Plant gently, that the Root may be a little loose to have the freer breathing of Air; open the Mould a little on the Top, and sprinkle fresh Mould on the Surface, and over that a small scattering of warm Dung; and if any Weeds or Grass grow up, take them away, smoothing over the place again, keeping such a distance between your Rows of your Pots or Cases placed on Forms, Stools, Tables, or the like, that you may easily pass between them to do any Office that is required for their Commodity or Advantage.

Spread at the bottom of your Green-House, Wood-Ashes finely sifted, and over them lay dried Rushes, and they will suck up the Damps apt to arise out of the Earth, and add a considerable Warmth to the place.

Let the Cieling be low to reflect the Heat that proceeds from the Stow, and hang it about with Linsey-woolsey-bays, or some such coarse Stuffs which will take off

off the Cold that is subject to penetrate the Walls, and prevent their Mustiness often occasioned by sweating after Frosts, or some relentings of Frosts, foggy Weather, or immoderate Rains, when the Air is thick and gross; and likewise add a considerable warmth for the preservation of such things as are the most tender: It matters not at which End of your House you erect your Stow, whether East or West, so it be in a convenient place. It may be made of Stone or Brick to be erected four Square of the ordinary size, of a single plain Furnace, like that of a Chymist, used in his Laboratory, usual there for common Operation, consisting of an Ashole and Fire-hearth, which may take up about two Foot from out to out: Yet so it must stand that the Grate or Fire-hearth may be about a Yard above the Floor or Area of the Green-house, that thereby the Heat coming through the Pipes conveniently placed, may be the more level, and evener dispersed to the Middle, Bottom and Top of the House, that every part may participate as much as is convenient of it; and in this good ordering, even in the Cold of Winter, you will perceive many of your Greens to shoot out and flourish, some blossom, and some produce Fruit, many Flowers blow to admiration; as if, by this reviving Heat and good Manage an Artificial Spring or Summer was produced, which, will much redound to the Credit and Profit of a Gardener, especially such as manage these Affairs for the Nobility and Gentry of the Kingdom, who are curious in them, and take pleasure to see what they cannot reasonably expect at such a Season,

Thus Reader, I hope I have fulfilled my Undertaking, in omitting nothing that might materially conduce to the well ordering of an Orchard or Garden, pleasant and profitable to the Owners, in all their Particulars and Niceties; so that an indifferent understanding Man may reach and comprehend the Instructions laid down, which being put in practice as the Seasons are specified, cannot but render a Gardener Acceptable.



---

---

# THE CONTENTS.

**T**HE New Art of Gardening, with the Gardeners Almanack: In what is necessary for the well ordering of Orchards and Gardens, &c. Page 1

Chap. I. Of the good site of a piece of Ground, intended for an Orchard, &c. P. 3

Chap. II. What soil is most fit for an Orchard, and the ordering it in that kind P. 4

Chap. III. Quantity of Ground, and shape, manner of fencing, and other Matters tending to the preservation of you Orchard P. 6

Chap. IV. Sets, how to be chosen and ordered, either to grow up to Trees, or to be grafted on, &c. P. 7

Chap. V. Proper times for planting and removing; with the manner of setting the distance, and placing of Trees, &c. P. 10

Chap. VI. General Directions for the right ordering, keeping and preserving of an Orchard P. 12

Chap. VII. Rules and approved Directions for grafting after the best and most thriving Method P. 15

Chap. VIII. Times proper for grafting; how to chuse the best Grafts; the way of keeping and ordering them P. 17

Chap. IX. Other ways relating to grafting, as incising, packing on, inoculating, grafting in Scutcheon, &c. P. 18

Chap. X. Of the Apple-trees, how grafted and ordered, the Advantages accruing thereby, &c. P. 20

Chap. XI. Of the Pear-tree, how grafted, ordered and improved, &c. P. 22

Chap. XII. Of the Quince-tree, how ordered, grafted, improved &c. P. 23

Chap. XIII. Of the Medler and Service-tree, how ordered, grafted, improved, &c. P. 25

Chap. XIV.

# The CONTENTS.

Chap. XIV. Of the Pomegranate-tree; how it must be ordered, grafted, and improved	P. 26
Chap. XV. Of the Citron, or Limon-tree; how planted, and improved	P. 27
Chap. XVI. Of the Mulberry-tree, how ordered, planted, grafted, and improved	P. 28
Chap. XVII. Of the Orchard, Hazelnut, and Philbert-trees, their Improvement	P. 30
Chap. XVIII. Of the Walnut-tree, and common Nut-tree, how to order them	P. 31
Chap. XIX. Of the Chesnut-tree, and Pine-tree	P. 32
Chap. XX. How to order and improve Cherry-trees	P. 33
Chap. XXI. Of Plum-trees, and how to order them	P. 34
Chap. XXII. Of the Peach-tree, and its ordering, &c. Also of the Abricot-tree	P. 35
Chap. XXIII. Of the Date-tree, and how it may be propagated	P. 37
Of the Almond-tree. Of the Barberry-tree. Of the Goosberry, and Current-trees	P. 38
Of the Raspberry-tree. Of the Fig-tree	P. 39
Of the Cornelian Cherry-tree, and Orange-tree	P. 40
Chap. XXIV. Wall-fruit-trees, how best to order them, their Virtues, &c.	P. 41
Of the Abricot-tree	P. 42
Of the Peach-trees, Nectarines, Malacottoons, &c.	P. 43
Of Plum-trees. Of the Fig-tree	P. 44
Of the Current-tree, as Wall-fruit. Chap. XXV. The well ordering and right dressing of Fruit-trees, for their better thriving	P. 45
Chap. XXVI. Soil proper for remedying Diseases in Fruit-trees, and destroying Vermin and Insects that infect them, &c.	P. 48
Chap. XXVII. Of Nurseries for Stocks, and their Improvement	P. 51
Chap. XXVIII. Some further observations in transplanting of Fruit-trees, with the Errors of some therein discovered	P. 53
The Gardener's Almanack; containing what is to be done in, or relating to the Orchard in their proper Seasons throughout the Year, in each particular Month	From p. 56. to p. 72
The best and safest Way to gather Summer and Winter-fruit for keeping, and how to order them for that purpose	P. 73

# The CONTENTS.

To gather and order other Stone-fruit. To gather Pears the best Way	P. 74
To gather and order Apples in the best manner	P. 75
To gather and secure Quinces from rotting, &c. To gather and keep Medlars and Services	P. 76
Of the Fruit-Lost, stowing and managing Fruit for keeping	P. 77
To make Cider	P. 79
Perry, the best way to make it	P. 80
To make Wine of Grapes. To make Wine of Cherries	P. 81
To make a good Wine of Currants. To make excellent Gooseberry-Wine. To make Raspberry-Wine	P. 82
To make Mulberry-Wine. To make Wine of Services	P. 83
Of gardening; and first of the Kitchen-garden. What is necessary to be done and observed therein for setting, sowing, rearing, and bringing to Perfection, Seeds, Herbs, Plants, Roots, &c.	P. 85
Further Directions for the well-ordering this kind of Garden in many material particulars: In its sight and furnishing with Herbs, Plants, &c.	P. 88
Several growths of Herbs and Plants distinguished, to know the better how to place them	P. 93
Sundry sorts of useful Herbs, the r Encrease, well-ordering, and preserving, &c.	P. 91
Rules in general for ordering Herbs, &c.	P. 93
Of Roots proper for the Kitchen-garden, their well-ordering and Improvement	P. 94
Beans, Pease, Artichoaks, Asparagus, Cabages, Colliflowers, Savoys, Lettice, &c. to order and improve	P. 96
Hot Beds, how to prepare and fit them for such things as require to be set in them	P. 101
Watering, the proper times; and what Plants, Herbs, &c. most require it, and in what Seasons	P. 103
The several Sorts of Strawberries, the manner of setting, transplanting, and improving them	P. 104
The Gardener's Almanack; Or, things proper to be done in the Kitchen-garden in the several Months of the Year	From p. 106, to p. 117
How to know particular Flowers that will alter for the best Ib. Choice Directions for sowing of Seed and setting, &c.	p. 118
Things	

# The CONTENTS.

Things convenient to be considered in the manner of laying, &c.	p. 119
Artificial Sets, how to make them. To change the Colour of Flowers when in Blossom, &c.	p. 120
A few useful Observations from Astrology	p. 121
The Gardener's Almanack; directing what is to be done in the Flower-garden, &c. in the several Months throughout the Year, &c.	From p. 122, to p. 138
Flowers blowing this Month, or continuing	Ibid.
Flowers, Shrubs, and choice Plants, enduring several Degrees of Cold, how they are to be preserved. Flowers and Plants not dying but by extream Cold	p. 139
Flowers and Plants enduring the second Degree of Cold.---	
Flowers and Plants the least of all enduring Cold	p. 140
A further Description of Flowers as to their Shapes and Colours	From p. 142, to p. 151
The Gardener's Almanack; for what is necessary to be done in the Green house, and Conservatory, in preserving and well- ordering choice Shrubs, Plants, Flowers, &c. with the time of Housing, &c.	From p. 152, to p. 160
The Greenhouse and Conservatory for the Preservation of Plants, Shrubs, choice Flowers, &c. from Winds, Frosts, or cold Airs that would otherwise chill and destroy them	From p. 161, to p. 164

---

The End of the Contents.

## ADVERTISEMENT.

**S**ETS of Cuts for Bibles, in *Folio*, *Quarto*, and *Octavo*, curiously engraven on Copper, containing near two hundred Plates, are now sold to Booksellers at a cheaper Price than usual, viz. The *Folio* at 9 s. The *Quarto* at 7 s. 6 d. The *Octavo* at 6 s. Also various Bibles of the several Volumes, fit for the said Cuts to bind with: By Henry Nelme, at the *Leg and Star* in *Cornhill*.

Where Gentlemen, or others, may be furnished with the said Bibles ready Bound, either with or without Cuts: Also Common-Prayers, with the best Cuts Extant.

At the said place, may Country-chapmen be furnished with all sorts of Bibles, Common-Prayer-Books, Testaments, Hymners, Primmers, Horn-Books; or other Saleable Chapmen's Books.

---

*BOOKS newly Published, and Sold by Henry Nelme, at the Leg and Star in Cornhill.*

**S**TORY in distress: Or, The Groans of the Protestant Church for many Ages past, under the cruel Tyranny of Popish Persecution, and merciless Torments. As also the Marks of the Anti-christian *Romish* Church; the Arraignment of the *Scarlet-Whore*, and the Complaints of the Persecuted Nations against her, from the Primitive Times, down to the Year 1686; with her final Doom and Sentence. To which is newly added, *Sign's Relief*, and joyfull Triumph over all her Enemies, under the Reign of His Sacred Majesty, K. *William III.* Price bound 1 s.

The New Help to Discourse: Or, Wit and Mirth intermixt with more serious Matters. Together with the Country-man's Guide; containing Directions for the true Knowledge of several Matters concerning Astronomy and Husbandry, in a more plain and easie Method than any yet Extant: By *W. W. Gent.* The fourth Edition, with many new Additions. Price bound 1 s.

An

## Books Printed for H. Nelme.

An Essay on the Agreeableness of the Christian Faith with Natural Reason: By way of Dialogue. Written in Latin by *Sebastianus Castellio*, with his Apology for himself: Englished by C. B. Price bound, 1 s.

*Hugo Grotius's* second Part of the Truth of Christian Religion: Or, The Confutation of Paganism, Judaism, and Mahometism. Translated by C. B. a Divine of the Church of England: Exemplified by Memorials of the truly Pious and Christian Lives of Alderman *Whitmore*, Bishop *Wilkins*, Bishop *Reynolds*, Alderman *Adams*: By the same Author. Price bound, 1 s.

Christ's famous Titles, and a Believer's Golden Chain, handled in divers Sermons; together with his Cabinet of Jewels, or a glimpse of *Sion's* Glory: As also, Christ's Voice to *London*. The great Day of God's Wrath. The Necessity of Watching and Praying, with a Treatise of Death: By *W. Dyer*. Price bound, 1 s.

Supplications of Saints, a Book of Prayers and Praises, in four Parts: By *T. Sorecold*. Price bound, 1 s.

The Secretary in Fashion: Or, Instructions for writing Letters. Price bound, 2 s.

Familiar Letters on several occasions: Written by Mr. *Dryden*, Mr. *Wycherly*, Mr. *Congreve*, Mr. ——— Mr. *Dennis*, with some passionate Love-letters; and a Translation of *Voiture's* Letters; by Mr. *Dryden*, and Mr. *Dennis*. Price bound, 2 s. 6 d.

*Alexander and Philoxenus*: Or, The Pleasures and Disquietudes of Marriage. A Novel. Price bound, 1 s.

Love in Distress; Or, The lucky Discovery. A Novel. Written by the Honourable, the Lady ——— Price bound, 1 s.

The Child's Instructor, leading to true Spelling and Reading English; with useful Counsel and weighty Arguments, perswading them to Remember their Creator in the days of their Youth. Also a Confession of Faith, and Catechism for younger People: By *B. Keech*. Price bound, 4 d.

The Sinner's Tears, in Meditations and Prayers: By *T. Ferrislaue*. Price bound, 1 s.

A Dictionary of hard English Words, with their Interpretation: By *E. Coles*. Price bound, 1 s. 6 d.



## Books Printed for H. Nelme.

The newest, plainest, and the shortest Short-hand, containing, 1. A brief Account of all the Short-hands already Extant; with their Alphabets and fundamental Rules. 2. A plain and easy Method for Beginners, less burthensome to the Memory than any other. 3. A new Invention for contracting Words, with special Rules for contracting Sentences, and other ingenious Fancies, both pleasant and profitable unto all, let their Character be whole or what it will: By *J. Coles*. Price stich'd, 1 s.

The manner of raising, ordering, and improving Forest and Fruit-trees: Also how to plant, and keep Woods, Walks, Avenues, Lawns, Hedges, &c. With several Figures in Copper-plates, proper for the same. Also Rules and Tables, shewing how the ingenious Planter may measure superficial Figures, with Rules how to divide Woods or Land, and how to measure Timber and other solid Bodies, either by Arithmetick or Geometry, shewing the use of that most excellent Line, the Line of Number, by several new Examples, with many other Rules useful for most Men: By *Moses Cook*, Gardener to that great Encourager of Planting, the Right Honourable the Earl of Essex. Whereunto is now added, that ingenious Treatise of Mr. *Gabriel Platt's*, viz. A Discovery of Subterranean Treasure. Price bound, 2 s.

Certain Sermons, or Homilies appointed to be read in Churches, in the Time of *Q. Elizabeth*, in Folio, of a large Roman Print. Price bound, 6 s.

The Anatomy of Melancholy, what it is; with the Kinds, Causes, Symptoms, Prognosticks, and several Cures of it: By *Democritus*, Jun. Price bound, 10 s.

The Gentleman's compleat Jockey: Or, Experienced Horseman, or Farrier; containing all things relating to Horses: By *A. S.* Price bound, 1 s.

The Husbandman, Farmer, and Grazier's compleat Instructor, in feeding, breeding, buying, and selling Cattle; with approved Remedies for all Diseases and Grievances incident to them, viz. Bulls, Cows, Calves, Oxen, Sheep, Goats, Hogs, and all other Domestick Cattle, and Poultry, with the experienced Vermin-killer. Price bound, 1 s.

**Books Printed for H. Nelme,**

**Clavis Bibliorum:** The Key of the Bible, unlocking the richest Treasures of the Holy Scriptures: By Francis Roberts, D. D. Price bound, 7 s.

The compleat English School-master, or the most natural and easie Method of spelling English: By E. Gale, Author of the English Dictionary. Price bound, 1 s.

The Comical and Tragical History of *Fortunatus*: Wherein is contained his Birth, Travels, Adventures, last Will and Testament to his two Sons, to whom he bequeathed his Purse and Wishing-cap; as also their Lives and Deaths. Translated from the Original, with some Additions, taken out of other Books relating to this History: Illustrated with divers Pictures.

Mr. *Rutherford's* Letters, The third Edition. Now divided in three Parts: The first containing those which were written from *Aberdeen*, where he was confined by a Sentence of the High Commission, drawn forth against him, partly upon the Account of his declining them, partly upon the Account of his Non-conformity: The second and third containing some, which were written from *Amst.*, before he was by the Prelates persecution thrust from his Ministry; and others upon occasions afterward, from *St. Andrews*, *London*, &c. By a Well-wisher to the Work, and People of God. Price bound, 3 s. 6 d.

The Christian's daily Walk in Holy Security and Peace; being an Answer to these two Questions. 1. How a Man may do each present Day's Work with Christian Cheerfulness? 2. How to bear each present Day's Cross with Christian Patience? shewing, 1. How to walk with God in the whole course of a Man's Life. 2. How to be upright in the said walking. 3. How to live without taking Care or Thought in any thing. 4. How to get and keep true Peace with God; wherein are manifold Helps to prevent and remove damnable Presumption; also to quiet and ease distressed Consciences: By *Hen. Scudder*. Price bound, 2 s.

A Looking-glass for Persecutors; containing Multitudes of Examples of God's severe, but righteous Judgments, upon bloody and merciless Haters of his Children in all Times.

## Books Printed for H. Nelme.

**Time**, from the beginning of the World to this present Age: Collected out of the Sacred Scriptures, and other Ecclesiastical Writers, both Ancient and Modern. The second Edition: By *Sam. Clark*, Minister. Price bound, 1 s.

**The English Academy: Or, A brief Introduction to the seven liberal Arts.** Grammar, Arithmetick, Geometry, Musick, Astronomy, Rhetorick, and Logick: To which is added the Necessary Arts and Mysteries of Navigation, Dialing, Surveying, Mensuration, Gauging, and Fortification; practically laid down in all their material Points and Particulars, highly approved to be known by the Ingenious, and such as are desirous to profit, or render themselves accomplished; chiefly intended for the Instruction of young Scholars, who are acquainted with no other than their Native Language; but may also be very useful to other Persons that have made some progress in the Studies of the said Arts. The second Edition: By *John Newton*, D. D. Price bound, 1 s.

**A Call to the Unconverted to turn and live: And accept of Mercy while Mercy may be had, as ever they would find Mercy in the Day of Extremity from the Living God, by his unworthy Servant, Richard Baxter.** The fix and twentieth Edition, with the Addition of some Prayers, Price bound, 1 s.

**Apples of Gold for young Men and Women, and a Crown of Glory for old Men and Women: Or, The happiness of being good betimes; and the honour of being an old Disciple; clearly and fully discovered, and closely and faithfully applied; Also the young Man's Objections answered, and the old Man's Doubts resolved: By *Theobald Mathews*. The seventeenth Edition. Price bound, 1 s. 6 d.**

**A New System of the Apocalypse, or plain and methodical Illustrations of all the Visions in the Revelation of St. John.** Written by a French Minister. Price bound, 1 s.

**Index Biblicus: Or, an exact Concordance to the Holy Bible, according to the last Translation: By *J. Jackson*.** Price bound, 4 s.

*Laurica:*

## Books Printed for H. Nelme.

*Iatrica: Seu Praxis Medendi.* The Practice of curing Diseases: Being a Medical History of near two hundred famous Observations in the Cure of Diseases, performed by the Author hereof. Whereunto is added, by way of *Scholia*, a compleat Theory, or Method of Precepts, wherein the Names, Definitions, Kinds, Signs, Causes, Prognosticks, and various Ways of Cure are methodically instituted, digested, and reduced to vulgar Practice. To which is newly added as an Appendix, Observations upon the Lethargy, *Carus*, Frenzy, Madness, Defects of the Internal Senses, and Hurts of the External Senses; with several Remarks worthy Consideration, and a Catalogue of the Author's Works: A Work of singular Use to all the Practisers of the Art of Physick and Chyrurgery, whether Physicians, Chyrurgeons, Apothecaries, or charitable and well-disposed Gentlemen and Ladies, who have espoused the Afflictions of the Poor and Needy: By *W. Salmon*. Price bound, 6 s.

A Word to Sinners, and a Word to Saints: The former tending to the awakening the Conscience of secure Sinners unto a lively Sense and Apprehension of a dreadful Condition they are in, so long as they live in their natural and unregenerate Estate. The latter tending to the directing and perswading of the Godly and Regenerate unto several singular Duties: By *Tho. Gouge*, Minister of the Gospel. Price bound, 1 s.

The Poor Man's Family-Book, 1. Teaching him how to become a true Christian. 2. How to live as a Christian, towards God, himself, and others, in all his Relations; especially in his Family. 3. How to Die as a Christian in Hope and Comfort, and so to be Glorified with Christ for ever: In plain familiar Conference between a Teacher and a Learner. With a form of Exhortation to the Sick; Two Catechisms, a Profession of Christianity, Forms of Prayer for various uses, and some Psalms and Hymns for the Lords Day. With a request to Landlords and Rich men to give to their Tenants and poor Neighbours, either this or some fitter Book. By *R. Baxter*. Price bound 1 s.

English

*Books Printed for H. Nelme.*

English Liberties; Or, the Free-Born Subject's Inheritance, containing, 1. *Magna Charta*: The *Petition of Right*: The *Habeas Corpus Act*; and divers other most useful *Statutes*: With large Comments upon each of them. 2. The Proceedings in *Appeals of Murther*; The Work and Power of *Parliaments*; The *Qualifications* necessary for such as should be chosen to that great Trust. As also the Oath and Duty of Grand and Petty Juries. 3. The Terms of Liberty of Conscience, confirmed to Protestant Dissenters, by Act of Parliament, in the second Year of the Reign of our gracious Sovereign Lord and Lady King William and Queen Mary. 4. An Abstract of the Penal Laws against Popish Recusants, Priests and Jesuits, &c. 5. The Office and Duty of a Constable, Church-warden, Surveyer of the High-ways, or Scavenger, in all their respective Qualifications; in which the meanest Capacity may be enabled and instructed in the Performances of his Office. Price bound, 1 s.

The delightful History of the Life and Death of that Renowned and Famous St. *Patrick*, Champion of *Ireland*; containing his Heroick Actions, and Valorous Atchievements in *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, with other Remarkable Passages, from his Cradle to his Grave. Price bound, 1 s.

An Infallible Way to Contentment, in the Midst of Publick or Personal Calamities: To which is added Encouragement against the Fear of Fire and Poverty, Evil-Tidings, and Death it-self: By the Author of the Devout Communicant: The Third Edition Enlarged. Price bound, 1 s.

The World conquered; or, A Believers Victory over the World, laid open in several Sermons, on 1 *Joh* 5. 4. By R. Allein. Price bound, 2 s.

Immoderate Mourning for the Dead, proved unreasonable and unchristian: Or, Some Considerations of general use to allay our sorrow for Deceased Friends and Relations; but more especially intended for Comfort to Parents upon the Death of their Children: By F. Owen, Price bound, 1 s.

The Devil is an Ass. A Comedy acted in the Year, 1616. By His Majesty's Servants. The Author Ben. Jonson. Price stitcht, 1 s.

The



### *Books Printed for H. Nelme.*

*The Staple of News*, A Comedy acted in the Year, 1629.  
By His Majesty's Servants. The Author, Ben. Johnson.  
Price stitche, 1 s.

*Bartholomew Fair*: A Comedy acted in the Year, 1614.  
By the Lady Elizabeth's Servants; and then dedicated to  
King James, of most blessed Memory: By the Author,  
Ben. Johnson. Price stitche, 1 s.

### *School-Books Printed for H. Nelme*

More English Examples to be turned into Latine, beginning with Nominative Case and the Verb, as 'tis varied throughout all the Moods and Tenses, and after fitted to the Rules of Grammer. To which are added, Cautions for Children to avoid Mistakes in making Latine, &c.  
By Edward Leedes, School-master in Bury St. Edmonds.

*Seneca's Tragedies*. Printed at Oxford.

*Greek Testament*, in 24. of a large Print. Price bound, 1 s. 6 d.

*Lucius Florus*, in 24.

*Quintus Curtius*, in 24. Price bound, 1 s.

*Methodus Græcam Linguam docendi* (multa Grammaticorum arte omisa) ad Puerorum capsum accommodata & ab Edwardo Leedes, cui id rei creditum est intra Scholam Buriensem in Pago Suffolciensi, in usum Discipulorum tradita. Price bound, 1 s. 6 d.

*Canonicus Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, Una cum precibus aliquot selectis in usum Scholæ Regis Edwardi ejus Nominis Sexti, in Burgo Sancti Edmundi*. Price 3d.

*Joannis Barclaii Argenis. Editio Novissima. Cum clave, Hoc est: Nominum propriorum elucidatione hactenus nondum edita*. Price bound, 1 s. 6 d.

*There is now in the Press, and will be speedily published these two useful Books.*

1. A Compendium of Astrology, with an Astrological Practice of Physick: By J. Ball, Student in Physick and Astrology. Price bound, 1 s.

2. The Mystery of Husbandry: Or, Arable, Pasture and Wood-land improved: By Leonard Meager. Price bound. 1 s.



4.  
on.

4.  
to  
or,

be-  
va-  
ted  
ti-  
re.

id,

do  
in  
ice

is

ve,  
um

ly

cal  
nd

ure  
ice

The New ART of  
**GARDENING,**

WITH THE

*Gardener's Almanack:*

CONTAINING

The true Art of **GARDENING** in  
all its Particulars.

I. The Site of a proper Plat of Ground, for planting  
Fruit-Trees; with the Manner of Planting, Grafting,  
Imbudding, Inoculating, and Ordering all Sorts of  
Fruit-Trees, and Fruits in all Seasons.

The Art of making Cyder, Perry, and Wines of divers  
Sorts of Fruits.

II. Of the Kitchen-Garden, and what things are proper  
to be done in it, as to Herbs, Plants, Roots, Berries,  
Fruits, &c.

III. Of the Flower-Garden, how to order it, and rear  
choice Flowers, Slips, Layers, sow Seeds, make Off-  
Sets, and plant them in their proper Earths, Seasons,  
and due Waterings; with the Names, and Descripti-  
on of the most Material ones.

IV. Of Greens, how to order and preserve them; with  
Rules for the Conservatory, and Green-House.

To each Head is added an Almanack, shewing what is  
to be done every Month in the Year.

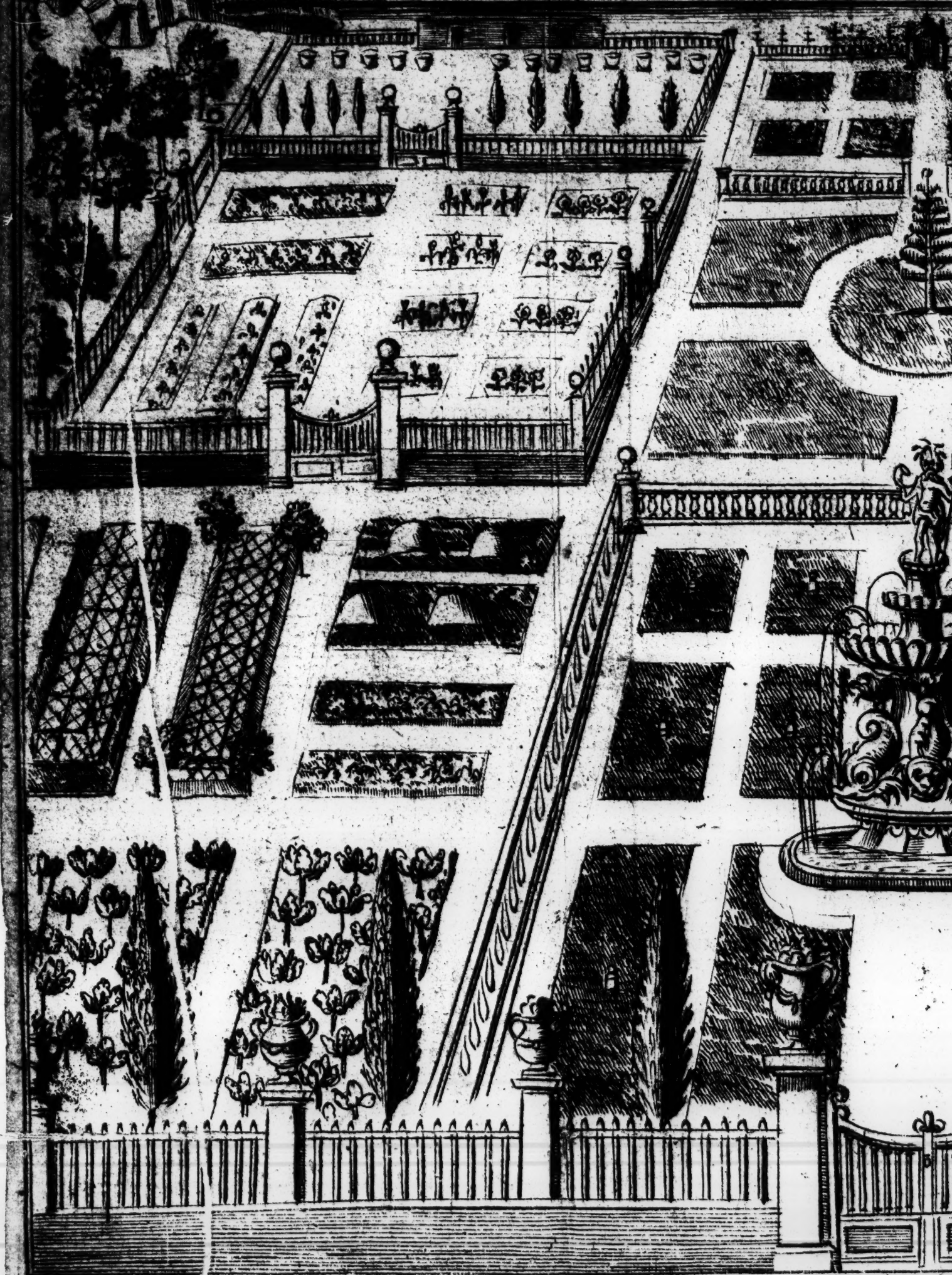
By **LEONARD MEAGER.**

**L O N D O N:**

Printed for Henry Nelme, at the Leg and Star, over-  
against the Royal-Exchange in Cornhill. 1697.



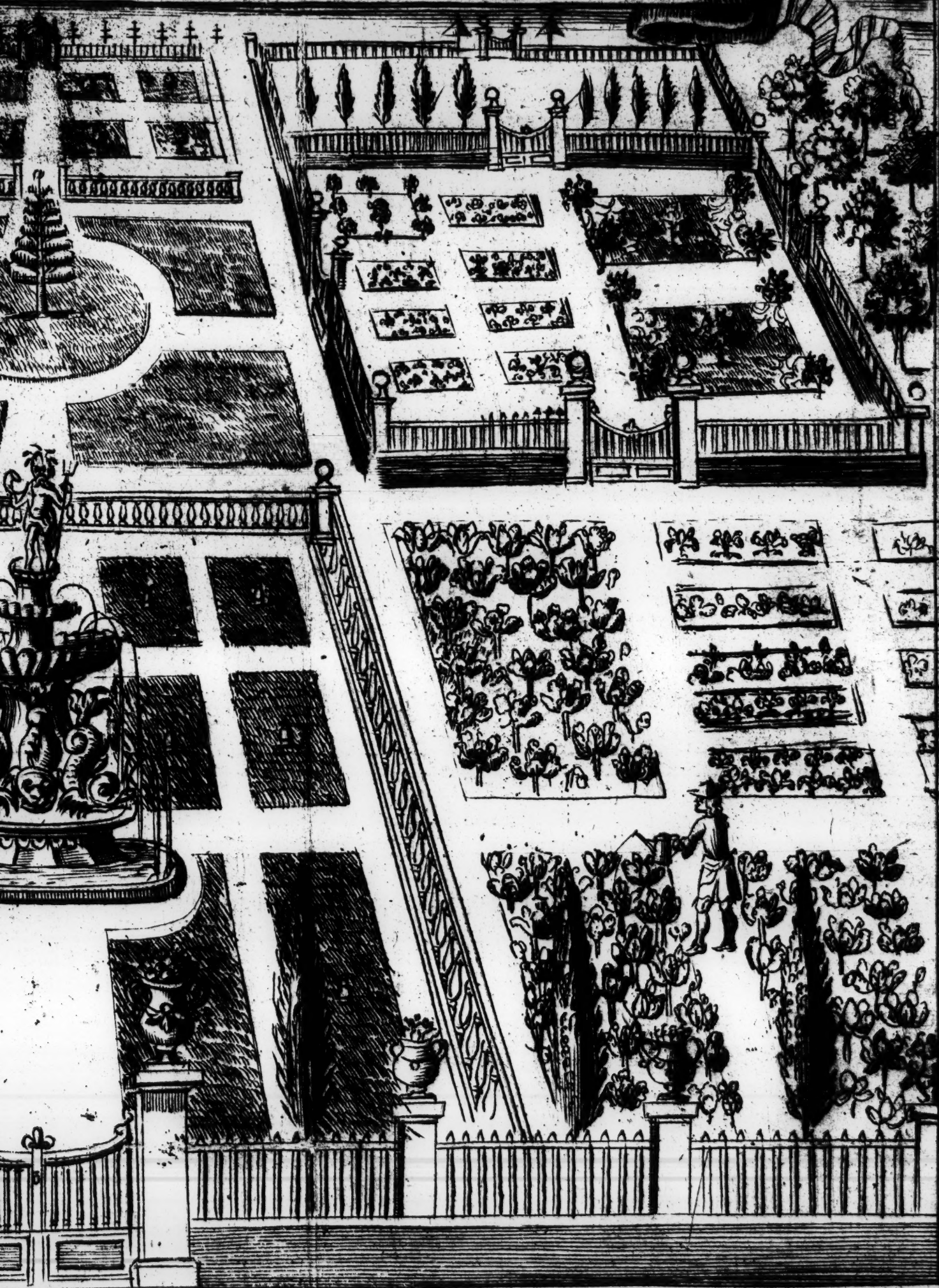
*The new Art of  
the Gardener's*



London Printed for Henry Nelme at the



Gardening, with  
s Almanack.



the Leg and Star in Cornhill .



THE  
EARLY  
HISTORY  
OF  
GREAT BRITAIN  
CONTAINING  
A DESCRIPTION OF THE  
MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF THE  
ANCIENTS



572

~~THE PREFACE~~  
~~TO THE~~  
**PREFACE**  
~~TO THE~~  
**READER.**

*C*ultivating, and the pleasant Delights of a curious Orchard, has been the Delight of many great Persons, and wise Men of all Ages; who have therein contemplated the Wonders of God in Nature, and refreshed their Minds, as well as solaced their Bodies: There, by the help of Art, the Hand aided to Nature, are produced such things, as are highly worthy of Admiration, whilst the travelling Sun labours to impregnate the Earth with a kindly Heat, and enables her to produce such various Kinds of Fruits, Herbs, Plants, Flowers, Shrubs, &c. of different Kinds, Tastes, Colours, Scents, Shapes, and Virtues; ravishing to the Eye, pleasing to the Taste, and Smell, and nourishing to the Body, all which taking with admirable Delight, should incite Men not only to covet them, but to labour in moderate Exercise for improving and propagating them.

A Method, to do which, I have in this Book laid down, the better to invite the Ingenious, and Industrious, to what must needs yield them a great Measure of Pleasure and Profit, having laboured in every thing to advance this Art, as near as may be to its highest Perfection.



## The PREFACE. &c.

*Since, omitting nothing that can be grateful to my Countrymen, as to what relates to Fruit-Trees in all their Particulars; ordering Fruit when ripe, and making curious Lignors, and Wines of them.*

*Also everything that is proper in the Kitchen-Garden, Flower-Garden, and Green-House, not only as to English, but also as to French, Italian, Spanish, Plants, Flowers, curious Perennial-Greens, and others; Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Aloes, and every thing that is proper, for even a Royal Garden, to delight the greatest Princes, as well as Nobles, Gentles, and private Persons, with Monthly Observations upon every Particular, throughout the whole, never so exactly done in any Work yet Printed: Taken from long Experience, and upon the Judgment of those that are Practisers in this Art; some for their Pleasure more than Gain, and others, who employ themselves therein, for Annual advantage. Having considered all things for making a complete Gardener, either to serve himself or others, and be grateful to Gentlemen, and Ladies, who are curious in these Matters, worthy of all Persons Care, of what Degree soever.*

*A good Orchard and Garden, by all prudent Physicians, are held much to contribute to the Health, as well as Pleasure of those that often frequent them in their refreshing Walks and Umbrages. Herein likewise, I have given Directions to make in the newest Method, Kuts, Borders, Walks, Green-plats, Arbours, Hot-beds, preparing Manure of all Sorts, and ordering every thing in its proper Season.*

*Reader, May the Book seller have so much Profit in the selling it, and thou the same Pleasure and Profit in buying it, that has acorned to me by Collecting, and Experience therein; I am thine to serve,*

LEONARD MEAGER.

---

---

The New A R T of  
**GARDENING,**  
WITH THE  
*Gardiner's Almanack:*

In what is necessary for the well Ordering  
of *Orchards and Gardens, &c.*

---

*The Introduction; or an Incitement to  
the Planting, and well ordering Or-  
chards, and Gardens.*

**A**S *Orchards and Gardens* are exceeding pleasant,  
and desirable for Sight and Beauty, when  
well and seasonably ordered, so they like-  
wise bring with them large Advantages, be-  
ing an extraordinary way of Improving Lands to a vast  
Value, even to Twenty Fould in a few Years, in well  
Manuring, Cultivating, and other good Management,  
by which our Ancestors have enriched Posterity, in lea-  
ving behind them *Orchards* Planted with stately and re-  
gularly planted Trees, whose Example minds us of  
imitation, that succeeding Ages may know our Industry,  
and what we leave in this Nature, as lasting Monuments  
behind us.



## 2 The New Art of Gardening,

Kings, Princes, and the wisest Men of all Ages, have some or other of them, taken singular Delight in this Exercise of Planting, Setting, Sowing, and what else is requisite in the well ordering of *Orchards*, and *Gardens*, and rejoyced to see the Fruits of their Labour. *Solomon* among the many Toyls of State and Affairs of his Kingdom, took exceeding delight in it, and to study the Works of Nature; so that 'tis said of him, he knew the Use and Virtue of all Plants, even from the Shrub to the Cedar; that is, from the smallest to the greatest.

The Planting of Trees for the bearing various kinds of Fruits, is undoubtedly one of the greatest Improvements that can be made of a considerable part of our English Soil, as *Worcestershire*, *Kent*, *Gloucestershire*, *Hertfordshire*, and other places can plentifully testify; and this is more Universal than any other Improvement, because most Land will bear one sort or other of Fruit-Trees, Herbs, Plants, Flowers, and such things as Ornamentally, or Profitably, are to accomodate *Orchards*, or *Gardens*, for the Pleasure and Sustenance of Man.

As for the Charge of raising and planting Fruit-Trees, considering the Years they may stand, and the continual Encrease, -I look upon it as Trivial, considering the Recompence they will soon make, besides the abundance of Pleasure it must be to any generous and active Mind, to see flourishing Trees of his own Setting, and peaceably enjoy himself in Contemplation, under the cooling Shades of their spreading Branches, to admire and adore the wonderful Goodness of God, in giving such Virtue to the Earth, for the producing rare and various kinds of things conducing to the Food and Pleasure of Man. And that it must be of singular use on sundry occasions, as appears by God's first placing Man in a Garden, which himself had caused to spring up, and bear Fruits; as the fittest place for the Reception of him, even in his State of Innocency; and no doubt, *Adam* was exceedingly grieved to part with it, when his Disobedience had forfeited the Possession.

These, and many other things I might urge, to promote this part of Industry, accompanied with so much Pleasure, and Profit; but designing this only as an Introduction to the Practical part, which immediately follows in all its Generals, and Particulars, so that nothing useful, or necessary, being omitted, I shall not detain you longer from entering, as it were into (If I may so term it) another Earthly Paradise, where every thing Smiles, and looks Gay to the Imagination, even in Reading. How much more then will it exhilarate the Mind, when by Practice it is enjoyed in its Perfection, and flourishes to gratifie the Sight, Taste, and Smell of the Beholder, with a fair Prospect, pleasant Fruits, and fragrant Flowers, wherein Nature is refined by Art.

## CH A P I.

*Of the good Site of a piece of Ground, intended for an Orchard, &c.*

**T**HE Site, or standing of an Orchard greatly advantages it, that the Sun and free Air may have power over it, and yet so well defended with Shelter, that Storms and bleak Winds may be in a great measure kept from injuring it; and this good Site or standing will help even a bad Soil.

The best Site I account to be in plain Ground, lying not so low, as the wet and dampness may too much infect it; nor so high as to lye lyable to too much dryness, the injury of Storms, or sharp Air to nip the tender Branches, and Buds; high Grounds are not naturally Fertile, and if they be Manured with Dung, the Rains in a little time wash down the fatness, and leave them poor, so that the one part will have over-much, and the other grow sterile for want of it; and it will be



## 4 The New Art of Gardening.

convenient it be sheltered with wild Trees round the Verges of a good growth, if possible, that they may break the turbulent Wind, especially the South-West, and North-West Winds, which are usually violent in March, and September, when the Air is free from extreme Heat, or Colds; and a fitter place cannot be chosen for an Orchard, if it may be done, than on a curious Level by a River side, or some pleasant Brook, not too near a Marsh, or Moory Grounds, whence frequently Fogs and Mists arise, which hinder the growth of the Plants, and much injure them by ingendering poisonous, or infectious Air, at certain Seasons.

The Suns long lying on the Trees greatly refresh and enliven them in Winter, as well as Summer; let it be therefore so chosen, that it may not be destitute of the Morning and Evening Sun at any time when it shines, and this appears by such Trees as are placed against Walls, where the refracted Beams give a greater heat to make them Blossom, and Leaf very early, and to spread their Branches so Luxuriant, that they require often cutting; or they take up so much Sap, as not only hinders the Fruit in growth, but in kindly ripening, as shall be more plainly shewed in the Progress of this necessary Work.

---

## C H A P. II.

*What Soil is most fit for an Orchard, and the ordering it in that kind.*

**W**HEN you have found a proper and commodious Site for Planting of Fruit-Trees, then enquire into the Nature of the Soil, and though Fruit-Trees will grow in almost all Soils, yet they will abundantly better thrive in one sort than in another; for Apple, Pear, red and white Plumb, Philbert, Dam-sen,

lean, bully Barbery, and the like, require a black, fat, mellow, and clean tempered Soil, wherein they may gather plenty of good Sap.

The Soil may be bettered by digging, breaking and well melting, being cast up, or laid level, which with a little Dung, destroys those Weeds that are Enemies to Plants: If the Ground be much over-grown with Weeds, or subject to any Incumbrances of the like Nature, then pare up the Surface with the Roots of them, lay them in heaps to dry, with a hollownes underneath like an Oven, or Furnace, and when by turning, the Air and Sun have passed on them, that they are pretty dry, put dry Fuel amongst them, and burn the Weeds and Earth, then break the Chumpers, and scatter them with the Ashes over the Ground, and they will prove good Manure; then sprinkle a small sprinkling of Sea-cole-ashes, or unslacked Lime, and when the Rain has pretty well soaked them in, dig up the Ground, and Trench it with a little Dung, and if it be indifferent good Soil, it will be excellent for the Production of Fruit-Trees, and if your Orchard be subject to dryness in extream Droughts, it will be very advantageous, if it so lye, that by Sluces you can over-flow it with Water twice in the Summer, and let the Water pass over it twenty four Hours, and then draw it off; and fine Grass growing in an Orchard, keeps the Ground very moist, but let it not grow thick about the Roots of the Trees, lest it breed Mots, shelter Vermine, to injure them, or they be prejudiced by keeping the heat of the Sun from them, for the Suns coming to the Root is an enlivener of the Tree. It is not proper to dig very near Fruit-Trees that are well grown, unless by a careful and skilful Hand, for fear of cutting, or wounding the Roots that spread in the Ground, which often makes the Trees languish, abate of their growth, and yield less Fruit.

The Crust of the Earth tempered with Heat, Cold, and Moisture, is a great helper to Trees, for in that they chiefly spread their Roots, especially those parts that mostly suck in, and send up the Sap, and this is in  
some.



## 6 The New Art of Gardening,

some Soil Eighteen Inches, and in others less; for lower the Ground is not so fertile.

---

### C H A P. III.

*Quantity of Ground, and Shape, manner of Fencing, and other Matters tending to the preservation of your Orchard.*

**A**S for the quantity of Ground to be employed in an Orchard, I account the larger the better, for the Trees growing up, fence each other; and if the Verge be blasted, the rest are frequently sheltered as well from it, as the Winds shaking down the Fruit when ripe, or hurting the Trees when young, by loosening their Roots; but the proportion of Ground I cannot limit, because it must be according to Conveniency, the Planter's Ability, or Pleasure; and in the same manner I must in general leave the Form to his Discretion, for that which pleases one, another dislikes; some Round, some Square, some Triangular, others Long; and indeed, Plats of Ground cannot be every where exactly chosen, but they must be contrived as they fall out, to the best advantage.

As for Fencing, in this you must be diligent, as well to preserve your Fruit from Thieves, as Trees from Spoil, by the breaking in of Cattle, and likewise that it may be a good shelter to the young Plants; Stone-Walls, where Stone is plenty, may be cheaply raised, or those of Brick; but above all, I recommend a good thick and well-grown Quickset of white Thorne, and thickening Brambles; black Thorne, or dwarf Shrubs at the bottom, especially where Wall Fruit is not required; and by skilful Setting, and Continuance, it will grow so thick, that it will be a great Security, more far than pales, Railes, or Walls of Earth; and growing high,

high, it may on the top be cut with Shears, in Turf  
and Pyramids, and become a pleasant Ornament to the  
Orchard: As for Walks, I shall describe them in that  
part of this Book, that particularly relates to Garden-  
ing; though in Orchards, curious green Walks kept short  
by Mowing, and Rowling in Summer, are of good E-  
steem; and such may be raised so above the common  
Surface, that the Wet may have little influence in stay-  
ing on them, even in Winter, after a shower of Rain is  
past. A Mote or large wet Ditch round an Orchard is  
very serviceable, if it can be conveniently done, and  
continued with Water: But from these things I pro-  
ceed to what comes somewhat nearer to my purpose,  
viz. The getting, ordering, and planting of Sets, &c.

## CHAP. IV.

*Sets, how to be Chosen and Ordered, either  
to grow up to Trees, or to be Grafted on, &c.*

**T**HE best and most usual kind of Sets are young  
Plants, which have been brought up in a Nursery,  
whether of Apples, Pears, Plumbs, or the like, ha-  
ving good Roots, for they are more certain than Slips;  
or such Suckers as were taken from the the Roots of  
grown Trees; and in removing them, get all the Root  
you can out of the Ground, for if a main part of the  
Root be lost, as some regard it not, then it follows, the  
Tree cannot thrive so well, though upon the transplant-  
ing, some of the Top be taken off; for the Root has a  
sympathy with the Branches, as to the greatness,  
or smallness; and when the Sap is straitned, or lessen-  
ed, then is it that the Tree pines for want of its free  
Currency and Communication; and when you take up  
the Root, divest it not, as little as may be, of the Earth  
it grows in; for that, upon the transplanting, will be  
nourish-



### 3 The New Art of Gardening,

nourishing to it, till it become better acquainted with the new Ground. Too much Topping, or Stöwing, I approve not of, because it very much hinders the growth of the Tree; and when you cut off any Branches, do it upwards, that slanting, it may shoot off the Wet, and not any way rive or split; and if Clay, and fine sifted Horse Dung, or Cow Dung, were well mixed, and clapped on the Cuts of the Branches, it would be very proper to keep them from the Cold and Wet, till they grow and begin to thrive, unless you intend these Plants for Grafting, and then you may let the Tops grow till you cut the Stem for Inoculation, in which you shall hereafter be instructed, with all that is proper relating to it; and set these in Rows by a Line, in such Holes as you have prepared, laying the Earth then lightly upon them, after they are well placed in the Hole; and heap it higher than the Surface, that it may well settle by degrees, and keep the Tree from the Roots, being much shaken by the Wind; to which end, whilst the Trees are young, you must also use Stakes, or Poles well fixed in the Ground, fastned to the Plants, by Hay-bands, and some Moss, or soft thing claped between, to prevent the fretting that may accrue by the rattling, or shaking of the Wind.

Stips which some use, are not so good by much, to plant, for either many of them miss to take Root, or if they do, the Root being the main Wood, doats and rots in the Ground, when the Tree comes to growth, so that they are but of short continuance, or at leastways, will but weakly bare, and those chiefly in Apple-Trees; yet a Bur-knot kindly taken from an Aple-Tree, is much better and surer, and this you must cut close at the Roots end, a handful under the Knot, then cut away all the Twigs, except the main one, and set it deep in the Ground, that it may only rise a little above the Surface, and it will shoot up, and become a good Stock, especially for Grafting on, if you like not the Fruit otherways.

## With the Gardiner's Almanack. 9

As for large Fruit-Trees, there is danger in transplanting them, for many times they do not thrive, by reason of the injury they receive in the Roots; for if some of the lesser Spurns take, they generally do not all; so that the Body not having sufficient Nourishment, the Heart grows blackish, or of a yellowish colour, and many times, though they bring forth fair Blossoms, they have not strength enough to form their Fruit in the natural Perfection.

It has been Experimented, that a Bough has been taken from a thriving Tree of a good bigness, and grown to be a Tree, the manner thus: Take off the Bark in a round Circle, when the Sap is in it, and make a Mortar of Clay, fine Earth, and a little Dung, and clap on the bare place, to the bigness of a Foot-ball, and let it lye till the Sap descends to the Root of the Tree; then cut off the Bough slanting on the heither side of the Mortar next to the Tree, and immediately put it into good Ground, the Mortar and all, and cover it up close, water it sometimes, and if this be done in *October*, it will take Root, and shoot forth in the Spring; and if these stand, they need not be Grafted on, but will bear good Fruit of their own.

You may Sow the Kernels, or Nuts of Trees in Nurseries, and when they come up, shelter and keep them warm, and in time they will afford you good Stocks, and Plants, either to bear of themselves, or to Graft on; though Suckers taken from the Roots of Trees, grow faster than these, till they get a Head; but above all, beware that Cattle come not into your Plantations, or Nurseries, to destroy them.

You may lay young Scions in the Ground, where many sprout from one Master-top, when cut near the Earth; and by keeping them down with Sods, one end being at liberty, and growing upward, they will be apt to take Root, and so you may have four or five out of one in a litle time, and this is called a running Plant. As for the buying of Sets ready Grafted, you may mainly be deceived in them, as having only anothers Word, what manner of Fruit they are, and so you may be al-



## 10 The New Art of Gardening;

most Cost and Labour about the worst Trees, besides, it hinders the Experience you may gain, in raising and ordering them to the many singular Advantages.

---

### CHAP. V.

*Proper times for Planting and Removeing;  
with the manner of Setting the distance,  
and placing of Trees, &c.*

**W**H E N you have made choice of your Sets, the ground being ready for Transplanting, the next thing to be considered, is the time this is most proper to be done in; and this I account to be soon after the fall of the Leaf, in or about the change of the Moon, when the Sap is most quiet, for then it is about turning; but upon occasion it may be done all Winter, in open weather, and early in the Spring, when the Buds are just putting out; though as I have said, the sooner you remove them in Winter, it is the better; some indeed do remove them before the Sap is at a stand, or about the turn, that is, in *Autumn*, before the Leafs are falling, but this I hold not so good; and were it not for the sake of brevity, could give you here many convinceing reasons to the contrary.

In setting, make the Holes sufficiently large to receive the Roots, and more, that they may have nothing at first to contend with but the tender Mould; shake that you have dug out, lightly in, when the Plant is conveniently placed, and in the mean while let another move the Plant, that the Earth may fill into the crannies, and settle better about the Root, so press it gently down, that the Plant may be well fixed, and in a dry Season water it, which being a settlement of the Earth, will make it take the sooner. As for the distance of Trees, you must consider the nature of them,



## With the Gardiner's Almanack. 11

as to what greatness in time they may grow, how spread their Branches; as the Apple-Tree (or aspire more upright than the Pear-Tree) if they be such as you intend shall continually stand; for if they too much drop upon one another, or the Boughs are galled by fretting or rubbing, then injury comes thereby, and the underling Trees that are overshadowed, will be stunted and spoyled; and therefore according as you conjecture their growth may be, so place them, and the Sun and free Air coming in among them, will make them thrive the better, and this distance must be as far as you conceive two Trees can spread their Boughs when grown up.

As for the placing them, let Philberts, Damsons, Bulliffs, and such like, the lower Trees, stand on the outside, next the fencing: Your Cherries and choice Plums, for the Sun the sooner to ripen them, may be planted in the openest places; your Apples, Pears, and Quinces, in the most substantial places of the Orchard, possessing the best Soil. The Trees of greatest growth may be planted further from the Sun, and those of the lesser nearer to the South, that they may not be a hindrance to one another, but all receive warm alike: As for the Wardens and Winter Pears growing high, they will do very well Northward, because being hard latter Fruit, they ripen leisurely, and the blasts cannot hurt them: As for the Medlers, Services, Pomgranets, Citrons, and such Trees, though they are not often seen in Orchards, yet they are very graceful and pleasant, and must be planted where the Sun has great power, and free from the dropping of other Trees: Almond-Trees are hardy and will bear the blasts, but not give their Fruit kindly, unless well sheltered: Set the Walnut-Trees on the highest ground, if it may be without overshadowing others.

## C H A P. VI.

*General Directions for the right Ordering,  
Keeping and preserving of an Orchard.*

**T**H E first thing that will be required, as most necessary for an Orchard, will be Dunging and Watering; for the Fruit-Trees, a very few of them being only to be excepted, require these; and herein you must also be careful that you do it not in the heat of the Sun; and that your Dung be neither too new nor too old; neither must it be laid close to the foot of the Tree, but a little distance off, that the fatness of the Dung may be drunk in of the Root: Pidgeons dung, and Hoggs dung, do also heal the hurts and wounds of Trees: The water wherewith we water them, must not be Fountain water, or Well water, if other may be had; but drawn from some muddy Lake, or standing Pool. Moreover, you must besure that your Trees stand a good distance asunder, that when they are grown up, they may have room enough to spread, and that the small and tender be not hurt of the greater, neither by shadow nor dropping. The nature also of the Soil, is herein much to be regarded; for a Hill requireth to have them stand nearer together; in windy places you must set them the thicker: you must set your Plants in such a manner that the tops be not hurt, or bruised, or the Bark, or Rind flawed off; for the Bark being taken away round about it, killeth any kind of Tree. You must also have a regard of the shadow, what Trees it helpeth, and what Trees it hurteth. The Wallnut-Tree, the Pitch-Tree, the Firr-Tree, whatsoever they shadow, they injure; the Pine-Tree with his shadow likewise destroys young Plants, but they do resist the wind, and therefore good to inclose Vineyards: The Cypress, his shadow is very small, and spreadeth not far, and therefore it may safely enough grow amongst

Vines,



## With the Gardiner's Almanack. 13

Vines, and so for many others; the dropping of all  
Frees is naught, but worst of all those, whose Bran-  
ches grow so that the water cannot readily pass through:  
For the drops of the Pine, the Oak, and the Martholme,  
are most hurtful, in whose company you may also take  
the Walnut: Moreover pruning and cutting is very  
good and necessary for Trees, whereby the withered  
Boughs are cut away, and the unprofitable Branches  
taken off; but to prune them every Year is naught,  
though the Vine requireth cutting every year; so also  
the Myrtill, the Pomegranate and the Cherry, whereby  
they will sooner yield Fruit; the others must be sel-  
domer pruned; Cherry-Trees may be pruned in the fall of  
the Leaf, after the setting of the Seven-Stars: And  
first, they must be well dunged, and as a help against  
their hurts, you must cut down the old rotten Branches  
that grow in the midst, and such as grow thick, and are  
tangled together, and all the water-boughs, and unpro-  
fitable Branches about them: The old ones are to be  
cut close to the stock, from whence the new Springs  
will arise: Scarifying also and Launcing, is very whole-  
some for the Trees, when they screined with their  
Leaves, and dryness of their Barks; at which time use  
to launce the Bark with a sharp Knife, cutting it strait  
down in many places; which, what good it doth, ap-  
peareth by the opening of the Rind, which is straitways  
filled up with the body underneath; you must also trim  
and dress the Roots of your Trees after this manner;  
you must open the ground round about them, that they  
may be comforted with the warmth of the Sun, and the  
Rain, cutting away all the Roots that run upwards:  
The Trees that you remove may be marked which way  
they stood at the first: As *Virgil* exprestes.

*And in the Bark they set a Sign,  
To know which way the Tree did grow;  
Which part did to the South incline,  
And where the Northern blasts did blow.*

Also

## 14 The New Art of Gardening;

Also you must consider well the nature of the Soil, that you remove not out of a dry Ground, into moist, and from a barren Hill, to a moist Plain, and rather fat, then otherwise: The young Plants being thus removed, must in the second or third Year be pruned, leaving still about three or four Branches untouched, so shall they grow the better: Thus must you usually do every other year. The old Tree remove with the tops cut off, and the Roots unperished, which must be helped with often Dunging and watering: Apple-Trees that blossome and bear no Fruit, or if it bear, they suddenly fall away, you shall remedy it by slitting of the Root, and thrusting in of a Stone or wooden Wedge; also if you water your Trees with Urine that is old, it helps them very much both for Fruitfulness and pleasantness of the Fruit; if the Tree decay by reason of the great heat of the Sun, you must raise the Earth about it, and water the Roots every Night, setting up some defence against the Sun. To cause their Fruit to be quickly Ripe, you must wet the little Roots with Vinegar, and Urine that is old, covering them again with Earth, and oft digging about them. The Urine of Men, if it be kept three or four Months, doth wonderfully much good to Plants, and if you use it about Vines, or Apple-trees, it doth not only bring you great encrease, but also giveth an excellent Savour, both to the Fruit and Vine: You may also use the Mother of Oyl, such as is without Salt, to the same purpose, which both must speedily be used in Winter. As Frosts and Mists also do great harm to Trees, so you must arm your self with a Remedy against them; you must lay up round about your Orchard, little Faggots made of Stalks of rotten Boughs, or Straw, which, when that the Frosts and Mists arise, may be kindled, the Smoak whereof avoideth the Danger. You must stave also dry Dung amongst your Vines, which when the Frost is great, you may set on Fire; the Smoak whereof disperieth the Frost. When your Trees are sick, pour on the Roots the Lees of Wine mingled with water, and you may, if you please, sow Lupines round about them; the Water also wherein.



## With the Gardiner's Almanack. 15

Lupines have been sod, and poured round about, which is very good for Apple-Trees; If your Trees are troubled with Caterpillers or Worms, there are divers remedies; the juice of Wormwood destroyeth the Caterpillers; the Seeds or Grain that are steeped in the juice of Sengreen, or Houssleek, are also excellent receipts against the Worms: Also Ashes mingled with the Mother of Oyl, or the Stale of an Ox, medled with the third part of Vinegar; moreover the Trees that are smoaked with Brimstone, or Lime, are safe from hurtful Vermin: Galbanum likewise burnt upon the Coals, driveth them away; the blades also of Garlick, the heads being off, so burnt (as the smoak may pass through the Orchard) doth destroy the Caterpillers; some mingle Soot with the Seeds, and sprinkle them with water.

---

## CHAP. VI

*Rules and approved Directions for Grafting after the best and most thriving Method.*

**A**S for Grafting, it is accounted the nicest piece of Skill belonging to an Arborist or Gardener; but by good Instruction and Practice becomes easie, and is done with much success: The thing signifies the reforming the Fruit of one Tree with that of another, by an artificial transposing or transplanting of a Twig or Scion, a Bud or Leaf, commonly called a Graft, taken from one Tree of the same, or some other kind, and placed or put to or into another Tree, in one time or manner; and of these there are many kinds, but the chief in use, and most certain, are Grafting, Incising, Packing on, Grafting in the Scutcheon, or Inoculating.



## 16 — The New Art of Gardening,

As for Grafting, when you undertake it, you must have a fine, thin, strong and sharp Saw, made and aimed for that purpose, to saw the Plant off even without splitting or jaging the Bark; it may be done a foot above the Ground, or more, as the Plant is capable of yielding a sufficiency of Sap, and then smoothed with a very sharp Knife, let it be done where there is no knot, for that is best; then stay the stock very steady with your foot and leg, cleave it gently in the middle, with a fine sharp Cleaver, by forceing it down with the stroak of a Mallet, then open it with a Wedge of Wood, Bone or Iron, about six Inches, then having your Graft cut at the great end, in a tapering flatness, the Bark left on, on two thin sides of it, thrust it in gently, and let the Bark of the Graft, touch the Bark of the stock, and come even with it to the outward side, then take out your Wedge gently, and suffer the stock to close and compress the Graft; and having a fine mixture of Clay and Horse Dung, mould them like a Past, into the form of an Egg, then divide it in equal parts, and with both hands press it equally on the wound of the Graft and Stock, closing it firm together, that it may keep them warm, as also keep out the Air and Wet, till they can unite, and the Bark spread to cover the Wound; and thus, on a pretty large stock, you may place three or four Grafts of various Fruits; though it is proper they be of one kind, as Apples with Apples, Pears with Pears, and the like of others.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

*Times proper for Grafting; how to chuse the best Grafts; the way of keeping and ordering them.*

**T**H E best time for grafting and gathering of Grafts are proper to be known;

As to the first, of the best time for grafting, from the time of removing your stock, is the next Spring, for that hinders a second repulse of the Sap, and a second wound in the stock; and if your stock be of a sufficient bigness; it may take a Graft as thick as your Thumb, but of larger Grafts I approve not, for they seldom stand, by reason they require more Sap then the stock (before they are well united) can afford them. The best time of the year I account, if the Weather be open, is the latter end of *February, March,* and the beginning of *April*, and about the change of the Moon, when only the Knots and Buds are seen, without any considerable appearance of the Blossoms, or Leafs; Cherries, Apricocks, Pears, Quinces, and Plums, may be grafted sooner than the latter Blowers.

The Grafts are proper to be gathered in the middle of *February*, the Weather being open, or no hard Frost on them: You may do this some time before you graft, or on the same day, for at this time of year they will keep fresh a considerable while, if layed with the greater ends in good Mould. Grafts from Elder-Trees must be taken sooner than those of the younger, for they sooner break and Bud.

Take not, when you make choice, of the proudest Sprigs, unless your Stocks be answerable to their Strengths and Growths; nor out of a much warmer and richer Soil than that your Stocks grow in, lest the Sap not agreeing, or springing up fast enough, the cold Weather pine them; if they be long, cut off a little of  
the



## 18 The New Art of Gardening,

the top of it, for that else withering, for want of due Nourishment at first, may injure the lower part, and hinder it from sprouting out; take not any from poor unthriving Trees, nor from the Underlings that seem to dwindle in their Growth, even on their own Trees that produced them, but midling ones that prosper, but not too fast.

If the Clay, and Dung about your Graft, be cleft in dry weather, close it again with some that is moist, lest the Emmets get in and spoil your Graft; take it not for a certain sign, that the Graft has well taken, if it quickly put forth in the Spring, for that may proceed from the Sap it brought with it, more than from any Nourishment of the Stock; nor can it always be determined till after the succeeding Spring, whether it will take well or not; but when you find it has, you may disburthen it of the Clay, that the Sun may come to Nourish it in all parts the better.

### C H A P, IX.

*Other ways relating to Grafting, as Incising, Packing on, Inoculating, Grafting in Scutcheon, &c.*

**A**Nother way relating to this Mystery, is incising, or cutting the Bark of the Bole, Rhind, or Branch, at some bending, or Knee, Shoulder-wise, with two gashes only with a sharp Knife to the Wood; then take sharp ended Wedges to the bigness of your Graft, flat on the one side, agreeing with the Tree, and round on the other side, and with that, being thrust in, raise the Bark, then put in the Graft just fashioned like the Wedge, close it hard with your Hand, and bind about it Clay, and Horse Dung,

For great Stocks, you may cleave them cross, and put in a Graft at each corner with little straining them, and close them up with Clay, and Dung, as others; and though they are pretty large, the Stock having Sap enough to support them, some, or all of them will cut, and growing up faster than on small Stocks, will much sooner bear Fruit: And this I have seen tryed on Stocks of a good growth, that have borne bad Fruit, and in a few years the Grafts have shot up, and produced excellent Fruit.

Packing on, is when you cut floap-wise, a Twig of the same Magnitude with your Graft, either in, or besides the Knot, two Inches long, and make your Graft just agree with the Scion, and gash your Graft, and it just in the midst of the Wound, length-ways, about a Straws breadth deep, and thrust the one into the other, Wound to Wound, so that Sap may come to Sap, and Bark to Bark, so bind them close with soft Strings, and mix Clay and Dung, and cover them over, and this way many times thrives wonderfully; and this may be done on Branches of Trees, the latter end of Grafting-time, when the Sap is risen with good Success.

The way of Inoculating is with an Eye, or Bud, taken with a pretty large piece of Bark to it, from a thriving Tree, and placed immediately on another Tree, where just the same quantity has been taken off, that it may close with the bare place of the Tree, supplying the Bark that was taken thence, and being bound on with Clay, and Dung, strengthened with a little Moss, is in great likelyhood quickly to flourish: This by some, is called Imbuding.

Grafting in Scutcheon is somewhat like unto the former, only differing in this, that you must take an Eye, or Bud, with Leafs, ( Note, That an Eye is for a Scion, and a Bud for Flowers, and Fruit ) and place them on another Tree in a Plain, like the Letter H cut with a sharp Knife, and the Bark raise with a Wedge, and then the Eye and Bud must be put in, and so bound up: These I have known to have grown well, but it is somewhat a tedious way, and the plainer way of Grafting soonest answers Expectation. As



## 20 The New Art of Gardening,

As for your young Grafts, you must be careful to Fence them about, for the least rudeness, or rough handling spoiles your Labour, or much impares what you have done; and this may be done with setting of Roses, Gooseberries, or such prickly Trees about them, but not so as to over-shade them, and hinder their growth, and be careful that no Cattle break into your Ground; nay, Dogs, and Cats, where they are grafted low to the Ground, may by running over them, break off the Graft, and so cross you in your Industry: And now from General, I proceed to particular Trees, &c.

---

### C H A P. X.

*Of the Apple-Tree, how Grafted and Ordered,  
the Advantages accruing thereby, &c.*

**T**HE Apple is commonly grafted upon the Crab-tree Stocks, or upon the wild Apple-stock, being first planted, and the year after cut off within a foot of the Earth, or more. If your Apple-trees are pestered with Worms, scrape them with a brazen Scraper, and they will never come again, provided that the place whence you scraped them, be rubbed over with Bullocks Dung: The Urine and Dung of Goats is very good for this purpose, afterwards the Lees of old Wine may be pour'd upon the Roots of the Trees. The Tree that is sick, or prospereth not, is helped with Asses Dung, and watering it six days. Apple-trees must be often watered at the setting of the Sun, till the Spring be come, when planted in dry Ground. If you set your Apple-trees too thick, they will never grow well, nor thrive kindly. The Apple declareth its ripeness by the blackness of the Kernels. The Winter Stores are gathered after the fourteenth of September, or thereabouts, according to their kinds, and not before the Moon



Moon be seventeen days old, in fair Weather, and in the Afternoon: Those that fall from the Trees must be laid by themselves; it is better to pull them, then shake them, lest they be bruised in their falling. The best way to keep them is in fair Lofts, Vaults, or cold places, with Windows opening towards the North, that they may receive that Air; the South Winds must be shut out; they must be laid thin upon Straw, Chaff, or Mats. You must lay every sort by themselves, lest sundry sorts lying together, they should the sooner rot. They are also kept from rotting, if they are laid in Barly, or Wheat. Some, to avoid the hurt of the Frost, use to cover them with wet Linnen Clothes, which being frozen, the Fruit that lay under them is preserved. Of Apples, besides other uses, you may with Mills for the purpose, make a curious Drink, called Cyder, and a small Drink besides, with Water, and the refuse of the Apples drained; a good Drink to quench and cool the Thirst. A kind of Vinegar also may be made of Crabs, and sower Apples, called Verjuice, which mashed, and lying in a heap together three or four days, afterwards put into a Pipe, or Tun, wherewith mingle Spring water, or Rain water, and so suffer them to stand close covered thirty days, and after taking out what Vinegar the Moisture affords, by drawing off, and let it settle.

## C H A P. XI.

*Of the Pear-Tree, how Grafted, Ordered  
and Improved, &c.*

**T**HE Pear challengeth the next place, and is one of the chiefest Beauties of the Orchard. The Apple-tree spreadeth in broad Branches; but the Pear-tree riseth in height, and delighteth in a rich and moist Ground; it doth grow of the Kernel, and of the Scion, but it is a great while before it doth come unto any Perfection; and when it is grown, it degenerateth from them its old good Nature; and therefore it is better to take the wild Plants and set them in your Ground in November, and when that they are well rooted, you may graft upon them. It is said, that in some Countries, it so prospereth with often digging, and much Moisture, that it never looseth its Flower. You shall do it a great deal of good, if every other year you bestow some Dung upon it. Ox-Dung is thought to make great and massy Pears; some put too a little Ashes to make their taste the pleasanter. They are not only printed of the Roots, but also of the very little Twigs, being pluckt, will grow. If you will set young Plants, let them be three years old, or at least two years old before you set them. Some again take the fairest Branches they find upon the Tree, and set them, as has been directed. The time of Grafting the Pear, is *March* and *April*. *Pliny* saith, that you may graft it when the Blossom is on it, which I my self have tryed, and found true. It is grafted upon the Quince, the Pomgranet, the Almond, the Apple, and the Mulberry-tree: If you graft it on the Mulberry-tree, your Pear shall be red; and if you would have the Fruit pleasant, and the Tree fruitful, you must bore a hole through the Stock close by the Ground, and driving in an Oaken, or a Beechen pin, cover it up with Earth; if the Tree prosper not,

wash



wash the Roots, and water them with the Lees of old Wine, fifteen days, so shall it bear the better, and pleasanter Fruit. It shall never be hurt with Worms, if, when you plant it, you anoint it with the Gaul of an Ox: If the Tree (whose Roots have been cut) seem not to prosper, *Paludius* his Remedy is to pierce the Root thorough, and to drive in a Pin, made either of Oak, or Plum-tree. If your Pears are stony, or choak Pears, dig up the Earth from the Roots, cleanse them of Stones, and sitt in good new Mould again into the place: Let your Pear-trees stand thirty Foot asunder, or little less; your Apple-trees (as I have said) further. You may make use of several ways to keep your Pears, some dip the Stalks in boyling pitch, and do afterwards hang them up: others keep them in new boyled Wine, or else in a close Vessel; others in Sand; and some again, covered with Wheat, or Chaff; some are of Opinion, that there is no kind Fruit but may be preserved in Honey; of Pears there is Drink, and Sauce made, the Drink is *Perry*, made as *Cyder*, of a most delicious taste, the Juyce being pressed out with the Press, &c. In other Countries they have a pretty Dish made of Pears, for their Religious Fasts, called *Castimoniale*.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the Quince-Tree, how Ordered, Grafted, Improved, &c.*

NEXT in order, after Apples and Pears, cometh the Quince; they are planted after the same manner that Pears and Apples are: Some affirm that the sets that have been set in *March*, or in *February*, have taken such root, as that they have born Fruit the year after. They grow well in cold and moist Countries, in plain and hilly Grounds. In hot and dry Countries you must  
set

## 24 The New Art of Gardening,

set them in *October*. Many set them with the tops and the set, but neither of them both is very good ; and being set of Scions, they soon degenerate. They are better grafted in the Stock then in the Bark ; and that in *February* or *March*, they receive into their Stocks, the Grafts ( in a sort ) of all manner of Trees ; the *Pomgranet*, the *Seruisse*, all the kinds of *Apples*, and make the Fruit the better. The *Quince-Tree* must be set in that order, that in the shaking of the Wind they drop not one upon another. When it is young, or newly planted, it is helped with Dung, or better with Ashes ; they must be watered as often as the Season is very dry, and digged about continually ; in hot Countries, in *October*, or *November* ; in cold Countries, in *February*, or *March* ; for if you do not often dig about them, they will either be barren, or bear naughty Fruit ; they must be pruned, cut, and rid of all Superfluities. If the Tree be sick, and do not prosper well, the root must be watered with the Mother of Oyl, mingled with the like quantity of Water, or unslack'd Lime mingled with Chalk ; or Rosine, or Tar must be poured upon the Roots : You must gather them in a fair day, being sound and unspotted, and very ripe, and in the wane of the Moon. They are best kept cossened betwixt two hollow Tiles, well closed on every side with Clay : Some lay them only in dry places, where no wind cometh ; others heap them in Chaff and Wheat ; some in Wine, which maketh the Wine more pleasant ; lay them not near any other Fruit, because, with the Air, they will corrupt them. There is also made a kind of Wine of Quinces, ( being beaten and pressed ) and a little Honey with Oyl put into it ; there is also made of them a precious Conserve, and Marmelade, red and white, being congealed with long Seething, and boyled with Sugar, Wine, and Spices.



CHAP. XIII.

Of the Medler and Service-Trees, how ordered, Grafted, Improved, &c.

THE Medler is accounted to be of the number of Apple-Trees, and Pear-Trees: It is Planted in the like manner as the Quince is: It delighteth in Hot places, but well watered, it will do well enough: It is Planted of the Scion, in March, or November, in a well dunged Ground, and mellow, so that both the ends be rubbed over with dung. It is also set of a Stone, but then it is very long before it cometh to any thing: It is excellently well Grafted in the white Thorn, the Pear, or the Apple. The Medlers that you mean to keep, you must gather before they are ripe: And being suffered to grow so upon the Tree, they last a great part of the Winter: They are preserved in sodden Wine, and Vinegar, and Water. Of the Wood of the wild Medler we use to make spokes for wheels of Carts; and the twigs of them serve for Carters whips. Next to the Medler, for Neighbourhood sake, I must speak of the Service, it is a high Tree, with a round Berry, fashioned like an Egg; this fruit grows in Clusters, as the Grape doth: The wild is better than the Garden-fruit to Graft on. It delighteth in Cold places, and if you plant it in hot ground, it will wax barren. It hath no prickles as the Medler hath; it groweth of the Stone, the Set, the Root, or the Scion, and prospereth in a cold wet Soil: It is Planted in February and March, in Cold Countries: and in Hot in October, and November. It is Grafted either on its own stalk, or on the Quince or Haw-thorn, either in the Stock or the Bark.



## CHAP. XIV.

Of the Pomegranate-Tree, how it must be Ordered, Grafted, and Improved.

Amongst the strange Fruit, there is none of them comparable to the Pomegranate: The Tree is not high, the Leaf narrow, and of a very pleasant Green, the Flower Purple, long like a Coffin; the Apple that is compassed with a thicker rind, is full of grains within. The Pomegranate is sweet and sowre. This Tree only, as the Fig and the Vine, the body being cleven, dyeth not: The branches are full of prickles as the Gorse is: It loveth both a hot Ground, and a warm Air, and liketh not watery places. In some hot Countries it groweth wild, in the bushes: It is Planted in the Spring time, the Roots being watered with Hogs-dung, and stale. It is Grafted upon its own Stock, and also upon other Trees. And likewise upon the Scion that grow from the Roots of the old Tree. And though it may be planted sundry ways, yet the best way is a Cubit in Length, smoothed with your Knife, at both ends, and slopewise in the ground, with both its ends well smothered with Hogs-dung and stale. It much delighteth in the Myrtle, insomuch as the Roots will meet, and entangle together with delight. The Fruit will grow without Kernels, if Grafted in the Vine, the Pith being taken out, and the Set covered with Earth, and (when it hath taken) let it in the Spring be pruned. You shall have them keep a long while, if they be first dipped in scalding water, and taken out quickly, lay'd in dry Sand, or else in some heap of Wheat, in the shadow, till they be wrinkled; or else so covered with Chaff, as that they touch not the one the other.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Citron, or Limon Tree, how Planted, and Improved.

**T**he Citron Tree is here very carefully planted. This Tree always bears Fruit, some falling some ripe, and some springing. Nature showing in them wonderful fertility. There are several kinds of them, hence they have several Names; I shall only name two sorts of them; those that are long-fashioned like an Egg, if they be yellow, are called *Citrons*; if they be green, *Lemons*. The Leaf is like the Bay-leaf, saving that here grow prickles amongst them: The Fruit of them is yellow, wrinkled without, sweet in smell, and sowre in taste: The Kernels like the Kernels of a Pear. The Tree is Planted four manner of ways; of the Kernel, of the Scion, of the Branch, and of the Stock. If you will set the Kernel, you must digg the Earth two Foot every way, and mingle it with Ashes: You must make short Beds, that they may be watered, with gutters on every side. In these Beds you must open the Earth with your hand, at hand's breadth, and set three Kernels together, with the tops downwards; and being covered, water them every day; and when that they spring, let them diligently in good mellow furrows, and water them every fourth or fifth day. And when they begin to grow, remove them again in the Spring time, to a gentle and moist Ground, for it delighteth much in wet. If you set the Branch, you must not set it above a Foot and a half in the Ground, lest it rot. He that doth intend to cherish this Tree, let him be sure to defend it from the North, and let it towards the South, and the Sun; in the Winter in Frames and Pallets. This Tree delighteth to be continually digged about. They are Grafted in hot Places in April, in cold Countries in May, not under the Bark, but cleaving to the stock, near the Root: They may be Grafted both on the Pear and Mulberry; but when they are Grafted they must



be fenced, either with a weather-basket, or some earthen Vessel. Such as you mean to keep, must be gathered in the Night, the Moon being down, and gathered with Branches and all, as they hang. When the Fruit burdeneth the Tree, you must pull them off, and leave but few on it, which will be the pleasanter, and the kinder Fruit. If while they are young and little, they are put into earthen vessels, or glass, they will grow according to the proportion thereof: So that you may have them fashioned either like a Man or a Beast, according to your Fancy, but you must so order your moulds that the Air may come to them. They are highly esteemed of by great Persons.

## CHAP. XVI.

### *Of the Mulberry-Tree, how Ordered, Planted, Grafted and Improved.*

**T**HE Mulberry of all other Trees, is accounted the surest bearer, because it never blossometh till all cold weather be past: So that whensoever you see the Mulberry begin to spring, you may be sure the cold weather is at an end: Yet is Ripe with the first, and buddeth out hastily, as in one night, with a noise it thrusteth out its Leafs: They dye the Hands (as Pliny saith) with the juice of the Ripe Berry, and wash it off with the Green Berry. It changeth his colour thrice, (as Ovid alludes in his Tragicall History of Pyramus and Thisbe) first white, then red and lastly black: It loveth hot places, and gravelly, and delights in digging and dunging, but not in watering: Its Roots must be opened about October, and the Lees of Wine poured upon them: It is set of the Stones, but then it often grows to the wild; the best Planting is the Scion and the Tops, a Foot and a half long, smooth at both ends and rubbed over with dung. The places where you see

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 29

your Sets, cover with Ashes, mingled with Earth, but cover it not above four fingers thick. I would have you to set it in March, and to remove it in October or November. It is Grafted in the Beech, or the white Poplar, either by Grafting in the Stocks, or Inoculation: and so shall the Berries be white. It is Grafted also in the Fig and the Elm, which in old time they would not suffer for fear of corrupting. Of the Mulberry is made a very noble Medicine for the Stomack, and for the Gout; they will longest indure kept in glasses. The Leafs do serve to feed Silk-worms withal, whereof some make a very great gain.

The Cornel is a redde coloured Fruit, like a Cherry: This Tree is thought never to exceed twelve Cubits in height; the body is sound and thick like Horn: The Leaf is like an Almond Leaf, but fatter: The Flower and the Fruit is like the Olive, with many Berries hanging upon a stalk, first white, and after red: The juice of the ripe Berries is of a bloody colour. It loveth both High Ground and Valleys, and prospereth both in moist ground and dry: It groweth both of the Slip, and of the Seed. You must be careful that you plant it not near to your Bees.

The Bay is a most grateful Tree, which chiefly garnisheth the House, and useth to stand at the Entrance. *Cato* maketh two kinds thereof, the *Delphick* and the *Cypress*: The *Delphick* equally coloured and greener, with great Berries, in colour betwixt green and red, wherewith the Conquerors at *Delphos* were used to be Crowned. The *Cypress*-Bay hath a shorter Leaf, and a darker green, gathered (as it were) round about the edges, which some (as *Pliny* saith) suppose to be a wild kind: It groweth always green, and beareth Berries; he shooteth out his Branches from the sides, and therefore waxeth soon old and rotten: It doth not very well always with cold Ground, being hot of Nature: It is Planted divers ways. The Berries being dryed with the North wind, are gathered and lay'd abroad and very thin, lest they cluster together; afterwards being wet with Urine, they are set in furrows handfull deep, and very near together: In March they



are also Planted of the Slip, you must set them not passing nine foot asunder: But so they grow out of kind. Some think that they may be Grafted on another, as also upon the Service and the Ash. The Berries are to be gathered about the beginning of December, and to be set in the beginning of March.

## CHAP. XVII

of Orchard Hazlenut and Philbert-Trees, their Improvement.

**N**ut-trees are commonly Planted of the Nut, as all other Shell-Fruits are. Of all Nuts the Almond is esteemed to be worthiest; they are set in February, and prosper in a clear and hot Ground, in a fat and moist Ground they will grow barren, they chiefly set such as are crooked, and the young Plants: They are set both of the Slips of the Root, and of the Kernel. The Nuts that you intend to set, must be laid a day before in soft dung. Others steep them in water sod with Honey, letting them lye therein but only one night, lest the sharpness of the Honey spoil the Plant. The tops and the sharp ends you must set downward, for from thence cometh the Root, the edge stands towards the North: You must set three of them in a Triangle, a handful one from the other: They must be watered every ten days, till they grow to be great. It is also Planted with the Branches, taken from the middle of the Tree. The Philbert is Grafted not near the top of the Stock, but about the midst, upon the Boughs that grow out. This Tree doth soon bear Fruit, and Flowereth before all others, in January, or February: Virgil accounts for a Prognosticator of the plenty of Corn:

*When thick the Nut-Tree Flowers, amidst the wood  
Of Trees, that all the Branches bend withal;  
And that they prosper well, and come to good,  
That Year be sure of Corn shall plenty fall.*



The bitter ones (which are the whollomer) are made sweet, if round about the Tree, four fingers from the Root, you make a little Trench, by which he shall sweat out its bitterness: Or else if you open the Roots, and pour therein either Urine, or Hogs-dung: But no Tree groweth sooner out of kind, and therefore you must often remove it, or else you must Graft when it is great.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the Walnut-Tree and common Nut-Tree,  
how to Order them.*

**W**Alnuts are to be set in the Ground the season downward, about the beginning of March: Some think, that they will Grow as the Philbert doth, either of the Slip, or the Root: It groweth well, and liketh a cold and dry Place better than a hot; the Nut that you mean to set, will grow the better, if you suffer it to lye four or five days before in the Urine of a Boy, and will also prosper the better if it be often removed: those Nuts (as it is thought) prosper best, that are let fall by the Crows, and other Birds. If you pierce the Tree through with an Augur, and fill up the place again with a pin of Elm, the Tree shall loose his knotty hardness; neither will he loose his Fruit, if you hang by, either Mallet, or a piece of Skarlet, from a dunghil. Walnut-trees are properly Planted round about on the outside of an Orchard, because their Shaddows are great, and unwholesome, besides the mischief they do with their dropping. They suck a great deal of good juice from the Ground: For they are mighty high and tall Trees of growth, so as some of them are two or three fathom about; they take up a great deal of room with their standing, and beguile the other Trees of their substance; besides there are certain Trees that they agree not well withall, and therefore they are set on the

outside of an Orchard, as Standards to defend their fellows from tempestuous weather.

Amongst Nuts is also to be accounted the common Hazelnuts, a kind whereof is the Philbert; they are Planted after the manner of the Garden Hazlenut; they delight in clay and waterish Grounds, and upon the highest Ground, being very able to abide the cold.

## C H A P. XIX.

### *Of the Chesnut-Tree, and Pine-Tree.*

**A**Mongst the Nuts also the Chesnut challengeth his place, though he be rather to be reckoned amongst *Maies*, from whence he is called the Nut or Mast of *Jupiter*. This Tree delighteth to grow on Uplands, in cold Countries: It hateth waters, and desireth a clean and a good mould: It misliketh not a moist gravelly Ground, and prospereth in a Shadowy or Northerly bank, it hateth a stiffe and a red clay ground: It is Planted both of the Nut, and its Set; it is better Planting woods of them, of the Nut, then of the Set; otherwise the safer way were the Set, which in two Years beareth Fruit. It is Planted when the Sun is in the *Equinoctial*, both of the Scion, the Set, the Branch, and Root, as the Olive is. The Chesnut that you mean for to sow, must be very fair and ripe; the newer they are, the better they grow; you must set them with the sharp end upwards, and a Foot asunder: the furrow must be a shaftman deep. This Tree being felled after five Years, will prosper like the Willow: And being cut out in staves, it will last till the next felling. The Chesnut may be Grafted on the Walnut, the Beech, and the Oak: It hath been observed, that were they grow two and two together, they prosper the better.

The Pine is Planted not much unlike to the Almond, the Kernels of the Keit-clocks being set as the Almond



is; they are gathered in *July*, before the canicular Winds, and before the Nuts, the Husks being broken, fall out. The best time of sowing them, *Paladius* reckons to be *October* and *November*: This Tree is thought to be a Nourisher of all that is sown under it.

## C H A P. XX.

### *How to Order and Improve Cherry-Trees.*

**T**H E Cherry-tree is easie to be planted; if the stones be but cast abroad, they will grow with great increase: Such is their forwardness in growing, that the stays or supporters of Vines, that are made of Cherry-tree, are commonly seen to be grown to be Trees. They are grafted upon the Plum-tree, upon his own Stock, upon the Plane-tree, and on the Abricot, but best upon the wild Cherry; it joyeth in being grafted, and beareth better Fruit. If you graft them upon the Vine, your Tree shall bear in the Spring; the time of grafting is either when there is no gum upon them, or when the gum hath left running. Remove the wild Plant, either in *October* or *November*; and the First of *January* or *February*, when it hath taken root, it may be grafted upon. You may graft it on the Stock; but often it prospereth better being grafted betwixt the Bark and the Wood. It delighteth to be set in deep Trenches to have room enough, and to be often digged about. It loveth to have the withered Bough continually cut away: It groweth best in cold Places, and so hateth Dung, that if it be laid about them, they grow to be wild: It is also planted of the Slips; and some say it will bear its Fruit without Stones, if in the setting of the Set you turned the upper end downward. There are sundry kinds of Cherries; some that are redder than the rest; others as black as a Cole. *Pliny* saith, that on the Banks of *Rhine*, there grows a Cherry, of colour,

betwixt black, red, and green, like Juniper Berries, when they are almost ripe: For the several intended Names of them, as Duke, Heart, &c. for more brevity, I shall pass them by at this time, and say something of them hereafter. The small Cherries are esteemed, that grow upon a bush with short stalks, round Fruit, and very red, soft, and full of Liquor. They will bear very early, if you lay Lime about them: It is good to gather them often, that those which you leave may grow the greater. There are also found a kind of Cherries growing wild in the Woods, and Hedge-rows, (and may well be planted in Gardens, and much improved) with little Berries, some red, some altogether black.

## C H A P. XXI.

*Of Plum-Trees, and how to order them.*

**P**lum-trees are planted from the middle of Winter, to the Ides of February; but if you let the Stones soot after the fall of the Leaf, let it be done in November, in good and mellow ground, two handfuls deep; they may be also set in February, but then they must be steeped in Lye three days, that they may the sooner spring; they are also planted from the young sets that grow from the body of the Tree, either in January, or the beginning of February, the Roots being well covered with Dung; they prosper best in a rich and moist ground; and in a cold Country, they are grafted towards the end of March, and are better in the cloven Stock than in the Bark; or else in January, before the gum begin to drop out; it is grafted upon his own Stock, the Peach and the Almond. There are several sorts of Plums, whereof the Damson is not the least esteemed, joying in a dry ground, and in a hot Country it is grafted as the other Plums are. There are divers coloured Plums, white, black, purple, and red, wheat Plum



## With the Gardener's Almanack.

and horse Plums; the finger Plums are most commended, being near the length of a mans finger, and blue in colour, but later. The Damsons may be dried in the Sun upon Lattises, Leads, or in an Oven; some do dip them before, either in Sea-water, or in Brine, and after dry them.

---

### C H A P, XXII

*Of the Peach-Tree, and its Ordering, &c.  
Also of the Abricot-Tree.*

**O**F Peach-trees there are four kinds; but the chiefest are the Duraces, and the Abricots: In *November*, in hot Countries, and in others in *January*, the stones are to be set two foot asunder in well dressed grounds, that when the young Trees are sprung up, they may be removed; but in the setting you must set the sharp end downwards, and let them stand two or three fingers in the ground: Wheresoever they grow, they rejoyce in watery grounds, which ground if you want, look that you water them well, so shall you have great store of Fruit. Some would have them set in hot Countries, and sandy ground, whereby they say that their Fruit will longer endure; the better will also the Fruit be, if as soon as you have eaten them, you set the stone, with some part of the Fruit cleaving to it: It is grafted either on himself, Almond, or the Plum-tree. The Apples of *Armenia*, or *Abricot*, do far excell the Peach; used as a great dainty amongst the Nobility and Gentry, and much desired of the Sick: They are best grafted in the Plum, as the Peach in the Almond-tree: The fairest Grafts that grow next to the body of the Tree, are to be chosen and grafted in *January*, or in *February* in cold Countries, and in *November* in hot; for if you take those that grow in the top, they will either not grow, or if they grow, not long endure. You may inoculate or imbud them in *April* or *May*, the stock being cut aloft, and

many



many young buds set in; neither must you suffer them to stand very far one from the other, that they may the better defend themselves from the heat of the Sun. The *Frenchmen*, and our Gardeners also, do graft the *Abricot*, taking a Graft (not full a finger long) or the Bud that is well shot out, with a little of the rind cut off, and flitting the rind of a Plum-tree crosswise, they set them in, binding them strongly about with Hemp, or Tow. Some do hold that they will be red, if they be either grafted in the Plum-tree, or have *Roses* set underneath them; they will be figured, or written in, if seven days after that you have set the stone, when it beginneth to open, you take out the Kernel, and with Vermilion, or any other colour, you may counterfeit what you will: after the stone is closed up about it, and covered with Clay, or Hogs Dung, you set it in the ground. Again, you shall have them without stones, if you pierce the Tree through, and fill it up with a pin of Willow, or Cornet-tree, the pith being had out; but these things I will not certify as truth, but leave them to Experiment, as not having tryed them: The Roots of the Tree must be cut and dressed in the fall of the Leaf, and dunged with its own Leafs; you shall also at this time prune them, and rid them of all rotten and dead Boughs. If the Tree prosper not, pour upon the Roots the Lees of old Wine mingled with Water. Against the heat of the Sun, heap up the Earth about them, water them in the Evening, and shadow them as well as you may. Against the Frosts, lay on Dung enough, or the Lees of Wine mingled with Water; or Water wherein Beans have been sodden: If it be hurt with Worms, or such Vermin, pour on it the Urine of Oxen mixed with a third part of Vinegar.

C H A P. XXIII.

*Of the Date-Tree, and how it may be  
Propagated..*

**T**HE Date-tree, it groweth in a mild gravelly ground, and delighteth in a watery Soil; and though it desires to have Water all the year long, yet in a dry year it bears the better; therefore some think that Dung is hurtful unto it. About the River *Nilus*, and in the *East Parts*, it groweth plentifully, where they use to make both Wine and Bread of it: This Tree in *Europe* (for the most part) is barren, though for novelty sake it hath been planted of many, as an Adornment to an Orchard. The stones of Dates are to be planted in Trenches of a Cubit in depth and breadth the Trench fill'd up again with any manner of Dung, except Goats Dung; then in the midst of the heap set your stones so as the sharper part stand upward; others would have it stand towards the East: And after, when first they have sprinkled thereon a little Salt, they cover them with Earth, well mingled with Dung; and every day while it springeth, they water it; some remove it after a years growth, though some let it grow till it be great. Moreover, because it delighteth in salt ground, the roots must be dressed every year, and Salt thrown upon them; and so will it quickly grow to be a great Tree. The Sets are not presently to be put into the ground, but first to be set in earthen Pots; and when that they have taken root, to be removed. Date-trees have such a delight one in the other, that they bend themselves to touch together; and if they grow alone, they wax barren. They are planted (as *Pliny* saith) of the Branches, two Cubits long, growing from the top of the Tree; also of the slips and flivers. The same Author affirmeth, that about *Babylon*, the very Leaf (if it be set) groweth.



*Of the Almond-Tree.*

**T**H E Almond-tree will grow and flourish well in England, if Planted in warm Soil, and exposed to the Sun. It is properly Grafted on the Philbert; and when once it gets a head, it grows a pace: In time, with good diligence, in dunging the Root of it with Swines dung, and water, beareth considerably: It Flowers early which is of a redish colour; and if for no other than this it much graces an Orchard; but it has been known to bear much Fruit, some bitter, some sweet, according to the Nature of the Tree or Graft.

*Of the Barberry-Tree.*

**T**H E Barberry-tree challenges a place in an Orchard amongst others, by Reason of the usefulness of its Fruit, on sundry occasions. There are several sorts of these Trees, though but one only common, above which that is to be preferred, that beareth its Berries without Stones; there is likewise another sort, differing from the common kind, bearing its Berries twice as big, being the most Excellent of others, for preserving, and making Marmalade. These are best Planted on rising Banks where too much moisture may not afflict the Root.

*Of the Goosberry, and Current-Trees.*

**O**F these that grow in Orchards, though under Trees or Shrubs, may well be accounted the Goosberry, and Current-trees, being Fruits that make Excellent Wine, comparable to many others.

Of Goosberries there are many sorts, and colours; the white Holland or Dutch Goosberry, is of these the fairest, and the best bearer of all others; the Berries are white and transparent, large, smooth, and round. There is a sort

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 29

of green Goosberries, well tasted, and deserving commendation. These Trees propagate with little Cost or Labour, and from the beginning of May to the middle of June, their Berries are very useful for Tarts, preserving, making Sauces, to be eaten raw, for concoction, and creating of a good digestion; also to make Wine, as I have said, by clean pressing out the Juice, clarifying it, and bottling up, with a little Loaf Sugar, to feed on, and take out the Tartness: A good Spirit may be Distilled from them, when ripe, if bruised, and mixt with water coming very near Brandy. There are a Red sort, a very plentiful bearer.

As for the Currants there are the white, Red, and Black. These Trees are propagated with little charge, growing almost on any ground; and these with the foregoing, may be Planted in Intervals of Orchards: As the Red they are accounted the best for preserving, and being used in Confections; moreover they produce a cool Wine, being ordered as Goosberries, more pleasant to the Taste than any French Wine, and held much wholesomer: This, as the Goosberry, may be set of Slips, with little Roots, on rising Ground, where the Sun can come at them, to enlarge and ripen the Fruit; the black are mostly to be used in Physicall matters.

### Of the Raspberry Tree

**R**aspberries claim a place to this Book, for though it be but a Shrub, it affords a delicious Fruit, useful on sundry occasions: It delights in mellow clay or loving Ground, mingled with other good Earth, to be set on little rising Hills, or Banks, in the out-borders of the Orchard, by Ditch-sides, but not in too moist places; for overmuch wet rots the Root.

### Of the Fig-Tree,

**T**HE Fig-tree grows upright of it self, in Orchards, and bears good Fruit; as the great Blue Fig, which usually



usually comes to ripeness, and is of a delicious taste; other sorts there are, but being brought out of hot Countries, and Planted here, the cold weather coming on before their Fruit can well ripen, they mostly cast it, so that it comes to nothing. The Fig may be well Grafted on the Mulberry, and then it bears the pleasanter Fruit, and prospers best; and when the Fruit appears well grown, pluck off many of the shading Leafs, that the heat of the Sun coming to it, it may better ripen and eat the kindlier.

*Of the Cornelian Cherry-Tree, and Orange-Tree.*

**C**ornelian Cherries much grace an Orchard; they may be set of the Stones, and will grow up to Plants; and Ingrafted on their own Stocks, they bear a pleasant Fruit, and may be kept for Tarts and other uses, the greater part of the Year, as being much harder and firmer than others, but not much Planted, but in choice Orchards, and more for pleasure than for profit. These are the principal standing or upright Trees belong to an Orchard, that grow without support, that I at present have occasion to Discourse of, bringing great advantage to the Industrious Arborist or Gardener; only I shall add to them my Observations on some others, termed separate, and usually called Wall-Fruit, or Supported Fruit; as the Vine, and such like, who best prosper where there is a reflection of the Sun, to make the heat the stronger, and more powerful to Enliven, Impregnate, and Ripen such Fruit, which in shady places would come to little.

The Orange-trees curiously grace an Orchard, but naturally growing in hot Countries, are so tender, that they must be Planted in Pots, Wickers, or Wooden Troughs, to be removed into the Green-house in Winter; therefore when I come to speak of that, I shall be larger on this excellent Tree.

C H A P. XXIV.

*Wall-Fruit-Trees, how best to Order them,  
their Virtues, &c.*

THE Vine among these is accounted the Queen, proving delicious Clusters, as are not only pleasant to the taste, but reviving to the Spirits, and healthful to the Body; and it has been more Cherished in England, than at present; many spacious grounds, though now turned into Grass or Corn-fields, retaining yet the Name of Vineyards; as that on the backside the Church of *Canberwel*, in *Surrey*, and many others, from the Vines that have been formerly Planted there, though now totally Eradicated; and no doubt, Store of Wines, by well planting, manuring, dressing, and other good management of Vines, might be still produced, equally to that brought out of *France* and *Germany*; but my purpose is now to speak of Wall-Vines.

The Vine is best propagated by Layers of a good bearing Vine, bent and layed in the Earth, staked in about four or five Inches, with good mould and turf upon it, and about half a yard rising upright, which may be supported by a stick stuck in the ground, and it will take Root, which being cut short, and set about the beginning of *March*, will grow very well; but ever observe to set them to a Wall, Pales or Houses side, &c. where the Morning, Noon or Evening Sun, or all of them may have full power; for without the Influence of the Sun this Tree beareth not to any purpose, bringing forth small Grapes, which seldom Ripen; for the Season advancing the nipping Frosts come on them, and wither them before they can do it. Some Eminent Gardeners allow it may be Grafted on the Cherry-tree, or Elm; of these there are many kinds, but the best bearer in our Climate, is the *Parfly-Vine*, bringing abundance of Fruit, with good management, to perfection. The *Fox-Grape* is a fair and large Fruit, bearing



ing pretty well: The *Rhenish* Grape, *Paris* Grape, and small Muscadel, are pretty well suited to our Cline. The Currant Grape is the earliest and sweetest, though they are but small.

Great care for the Improving of the Vine must be; Prune it before the Sap rises, viz, in *March*, and nail them up conveniently, with a slip of old bud, or soft Leather, that the Branches may spread conveniently to the Sun, and the warm breathing of the South and Western Wind; and lay a little Horse-dung lightly about the Root, in the Spring, that it may soak in and fatten the Root, which must be set out from the Wall a pretty distance, that it may have room enough to spread in without opposition,

Some pluck off most of the Leafs when the Clusters are well knit, but this, in my Opinion and Experience, rather hinders than advantages their growth, and soon Ripening; for the cool blasts are oftener abroad in Summer than the hot ones, and they chill and hinder the product, so that it has been seen, that the Grapes sheltered with Leafs, have been kept the warmer by their sooner ripening. If the Vine stands against damp Walls, the wetness perishes the Clusters that touch it, or the moist heatings musty them; and if you see one in any Cluster perished, take it away, lest it Infect the rest.

There is, of these Grapes that come not to such a ripeness as Wine may be of them, a curious Vinegar nevertheless to be pressed from them. They are also very good Sawce, pickled in Water, Salt, and a little Vinegar, boyled together. The same way you may also pickle Barberries, Goosberries, Quinces, and Green Plums, that they, with a renewal of pickel, keep the Year about.

### Of the Abricot-Trees.

THE Abricot flourishes and thrives best against a kindly Wall, favoured by the heat of the Sun; and of these there are several kinds, as the Musk Abricot, the Orange, the Great Bearer, the Ordinary: Some bring up

ripe

ripe Fruit sooner than others. These Trees delight in a free, rich and light Soil; but spreads it self much in Branches, and therefore must be diligently pruned, that the Fruit may grow the larger, there being then more nourishment left in the Stock to feed them. It is much subject to the Canker; therefore to correct that vice in the Mould, dig a large pit where you intend to Plant your Tree, and fill it a Foot thick; and within about a Foot or eighteen Inches of the surface, with Marle Chalk, or white Earth; then scatter over that fine Mould, about four or five Inches thick, and then Plant the Root upon it, and this will keep the Root from running too deep, and make it spread more near the surface of the Earth, so that not being overcharged with the too luscious Sap, it will not be subject to the Canker, which is a Disease that destroys many of these Trees in their bearing prime, and this will also make it put forth fewer Branches, and more Fruit.

There is a way to make this a Dwarf-tree, that is, so to keep it under, that it shall grow not above three Foot to the Wall, whereby being under the Wind, and receiving the reflection of the Suns heat, both from the warmth of the Earth and Wall, it bears earlier than others, and its Fruits ripen kindlier; and this may be done by often pruning the main Branches, and Planting as before directed. This may be Grafted on the Plum, or its own Stock.

### Of Peach-Trees, Nectarins, Malacottons, &c.

**T**Hough the Peach may properly be a Standard Tree, yet it flourishes, as for bearing Fruit, against a kindly East, South, or West Wall; as also the Nectarins: And of these there are several kinds; as the Aberge, Small Yellow, Almond Violet, Bourdin, Belle-Cheuvreuse, Einge-Nectarine, Maudlin, Mignon, Morella Muskviolet, Murry-Nectarine, Red Roman-Nectarine, Nutmeg-Red and White, Man-Peach, Newington, Perisque, Ramballion, Syon, Orleans, Savoy-Mala-cotton, &c. these may be Planted as the Abricot.



The Peach may be Grafted on the white Thorne, Beech, or its own Stock; The Peach and Almond joyned together, and Grafted on the Plum-tree, is held to produce a Peach, with an Almond in the Stone of it; but of these kinds the Nutmeg and Newington Peach are excellent good in taste, and great bearers, especially the first, which amends for the smallness of the Fruit, but the latter is very large, and a gallant Fruit. They may also be well Inoculated on choice Plumstocks, as the White Pear-Plum Stock, on Plants coming of Peach-Stones.

### Of Plum-Trees.

**D**ivers sorts of Plums, though they may also be Standards, thrive excellently well against a Wall advantageously situated to the Sun's warm Beams, as the Nutmeg, the Pear, Plum, White and Black, the Peasecod, the Prune, De L'He-Vert, the Damask-Violet, Dale-Plum, the Catharine, &c. These must be pruned as the former, and in the Spring the Roots layed open, and well dug about, and a little Horse-dung layed on the Earth, when the Roots are covered again, which the Rain soaking in will much Cherish and Enliven the Roots.

These Trees must be Grafted or Inoculated on Plum-Stocks; the White Pear-Plum-Stocks are accounted the best, and the Damask-Stocks the worst, as being dry Stocks, so that the Graft cannot take, nor thrive upon them. Those Stocks of Plums that have large Leafs and full Shoots, I account the best.

### Of the Fig-Tree.

**T**HE Fig is both a Standard and a Wall-tree, prospering best on the latter; and of these there are several other kinds, as Wall-Fruit, than what I have named in the Standards; and in all these the Scio, White and Purp'e, Dwarf Blue, Yellow Dwarf, you must set the Roots pretty deep, and spreading, in a light fertil Mould, and

and kept under from spreading too much, by often pruning, and nailing close to the Wall: This Tree may be well Grafted on the Mulberry Stock, but it must not be planted against House Walls, where drippings of Rain fall much on the Root, for that will soon rot and destroy it.

*Of the Currant-Tree, as Wall-Fruit.*

**C**urrant-trees, though they are properly Standards, may be well planted against a Wall, which will encrease their Fruit in largeness, if they are nailed up, and well pruned when the Branches grow Luxuriant. There are yet other Mural-trees, as the Loat-tree, the Virginia Plum, and the Cornel tree, that bear Fruit kindly, and may be planted in good mellow Ground, setting the Roots some distance from the Wall, that the hardness of its foundation may not oppose the growing of them; and in dry Seasons they must be watered early in the morning, or when the Earth is cool, after the Sun's being down, with thick foily water; and now though there may be some other kinds of Fruits, yet not common, easy to be had, or to bring to perfection, I think I have given a sufficient choice of Standard and Wall-Fruit, and enough I am sure to furnish and beautify any Orchard, and bring it to vast Improvement, with good management, in a short time; however, I shall proceed to other matters, useful to be known, and materially relating to the well ordering of Orchards, &c.

CHAP. XXV.

*The well Ordering and Right Dressing of Fruit-Trees, for their better thriving.*

**T**HE skilful dressing and pruning Fruit-trees, is one main matter to keep them from sundry ill Conveniences



cies, and disorders, they would be otherwise subject to; and to preserve them in a good growth, and to bring forth good Fruit, better and more Seasonably; and this consists in pruning, or cutting away the superfluous Boughs, Branches, and Suckers that waste and destroy the Sap unprofitably, hindring the bearing Branches from perfecting the growth of the Fruit, and seasonably ripening it: This must be done before the Sap rises, as in *January, February,* or the beginning of *March*; and you must, in this case, distinguish the bearing from the Leaf-Buds; and the bearing ones are known by their being more turgid than the other, fuller and more swelling. In this work cut off all the Shoots of *August*, unless the nakedness of the Tree require you to hold your hand; what you prune from the rest cut off slanting above the Bud, with a sharp Knife, leaving no rags.

Those Buds in Wall-Fruits that put forth between the Stem and the Wall, or opposite to them, rub off as soon as they appear, sparing only the collateral Branches.

Keep your Wall and Tallado-trees from too high mounting hastily, so that they may spread, and the better form themselves beautiful, like a Fan close to the Ground.

Take the Water-boughs away, which are those on the Standards that are shaded, and dropt upon, remaining smooth and naked without Buds: Cut off the unbearing Branches of Wall-Fruit-Trees smooth and slanting. As for the tender Wall-Fruit, the proper time to prune them is in *February* and the beginning of *March*.

Where Branches are Intangled and thick, that they gale one another, or exclude the free entrance of the Sun and Air, thin that place at discretion; trim and nail your Wall-Fruit and Espaliers.

When you find any Moss on the Branches, or at the Roots of the Trees, take it off with a wooden or horn Scraper, and rub the place smooth with a woollen cloath dipped in water, wherein Ashes have been well steeped; and it will not encumber those places, at least for a long time, and see what Thrive best; open the Roots a little of those that seem to drop, and put good dung or manure to them, and cover it up with light Earth.

Keep

Keep your Trees from mounting too high, if you would have them good Bearers; for the nearer the Branches are to the Root, the Sap has the more influence to encrease the Blossoms the stronger to knit them, and enlarge the Fruit: and the moderate height of all spreading Standard-trees, should be something above two yards beyond a Man's reach; and if the middle Branches are aspiring more than the other, keep them down by cutting and pruning, that the Tree may the better spread; and so they will be smooth-rinded, healthful, and long-lasting Trees, growing low, and consequently safe from the Injury of Winds; and by spreading broad, yield much Fruit, not overshadowing each other, or dropping much upon each others Boughs; and the Bole, by reason of its Shortness, will take much Sap, consume little it self, and so yield a great deal to the better producing the Fruit: for if the Tree aspire, the Sap takes its course so swiftly up, that it has little Intercourse with the lower Boughs; so that they bear but little Fruit.

If you lop old Trees, and cut off great Arms, do it close to the Tree, and leave no Snags; then make a Plaster of Tar, Tallow, and a little Pitch, on a coarse Cloth, and clap it to the Wound, to keep off the Cold and Wet, till the Bark recover the strength: if it be bark-peel'd, make a Searchcloth of Butter, Honey, and Wax, and lay on it, as a good Remedy to recover the Bark by the other Bark growing and closing up the naked place.

To effect this, You must be provided with a handsome light Ladder, a little sharp and well-armed Saw, a little sharp Hatchet, a broad-mouth'd Chizzle, a Mallet, and a strong and sharp Cleaver, with a Notch (and which is most necessary among young and little Trees) a great-hafted and sharp Knife, with a convenient Stool, Pruning-hook, and a Paring-Chizzle to smooth the cut places.



## C H A P. XXVI.

*Soil proper for remedying Diseases in Fruit-Trees, and destroying Vermin and Insects that infest them, &c.*

**W**Here large Trees grow in an Orchard, there the Ground requires every four or five years to be well soiled; for those great Bodies draw a great deal of Moisture, and consequently the best heart of the Ground: and if that be not supply'd, the Trees must pine, and will want much of their Fruit. But do not overstock the Root with Dung; rather lay it somewhat near, and let the Rain wash and soak it to the Roots, especially of young Trees; for too much Dung breeds Rankness, and much hurts them, especially Apple-trees; according to this Verse,

*Manure your Orchard, let it be well laid,  
But let it never be too fertil made;  
For as a Tree due Nourishment may want,  
So too much Soil destroys the tender Plant.*

As for the Diseases and Hurts in Trees, they are many, which I shall enumerate in their order.

If the Trees be greatly subject to Moss, you must consider what may be the principal Cause of it, whether by the over Coldness of the Ground, as in a wet clayey Soil, or the Barrenness of the Earth naturally.

If Coldness, through Moisture, be the true Cause, then consider how to lay it dryer, by trenching the Ground; or if it be Clay-ground, then bring in some warm Soil to mix with it, as, Ashes, Sand, Sheeps-dung, the Dung of Dove-houses, or Poultry, and the like; and if the Soil be too barren, mix it with good fat Soil, especially near and at the Roots of the Trees; and mow the Trees well of what is already upon them.

2. Another Hinderance of the Growth of Fruit-trees, is their being bark-bound, which is known by their pining even

even in fertil Ground: This happens when there is but a dull and slow passage up of the Sap, and in small quantity. Upon this, cut off some of the superfluous Branches, and score the rest that are any thing great, also the Bole of the Tree, and the Root, with a sharp Knife, even to the hard Wood, and it will open as if loosened from Bondage, and another Rind will grow, and fill up the space to a good Wideness, according to the bulk of the Tree, and still grow with it: so that it will seem to rejoyce for this Deliverance, and flourish a great deal better than before. This is proper to be done in the Spring, when the Sap is arising.

3. The *Canker*, of which I have hinted before, is a very great Enemy to Trees, natural to some, accidental to others, by Bruises, &c. This hurts many and utterly spoils some.

The Remedy is, to cut it out, if it be upon the great Bough or Body of the Tree; then make a mixture of Horse-dung and Clay, and cut off the small Branches that are dead or decaying, and lay the mixture aforesaid on the place tainted, binding it on with Rushes, Flags, or soft Bands of Hay or Straw; then lay Sea-cole or Wood-ashes, the ashes of Fern or Nettles, or the like, to the Root: but if this be a natural Vice, and the Trees grow on gravelly Ground; it will not easily be remedied without mending the Soil.

4. In the Spring-time *Catterpillers* breed, and are a great pest to Fruit-trees by destroying the Buds and Blossoms, especially in a dry season, if the Frosts come not to take them off; which if they do, they likewise commit much injury by nipping the early Fruit, and rendering it abortive.

To destroy these, take wet Hay and Straw, place them when the Wind breaths a moderate fresh Gale, so that being fired with dry Stuff layed under them, the smoak may go among the Trees, for being carried under, it will arise in the Boughs: sprinkle on this, Pitch, Rosin, and Brimstone, and the smothering will make them drop off, and dye.

5. *Earmigs* are another pest, though not so dangerous as the former.



## 50 The New Art of Gardening,

To take and destroy these, lay small Kexes at the Roots of your Trees, sprinkled with Water wherein a little Honey has been boiled, and break them in short pieces, that many of the Hollownesses may be open, and it will draw them from the Tree; and when they have licked up the sweet Water; they will croud themselves for shelter into the hollow Kexes; when you perceive this, you may burn them, and so by degrees disincumber your Orchard of them.

6. *Ants* or *Emmets*, much Injure Fruit, especially Wall-fruit: to destroy them therefore, find out their Hills or chief Haunts, and opening the top, pour scalding Water wherein Burdocks have been boiled; or if you cannot find their Haunts, anoint about a Foot next the Root with Tar or Oyl of Turpentine, and they will not attempt to ascend the Tree, or if they do, they will be taken, and stick fast in the glutinous matter. But some may here object, as for Wall-fruit, they may run up the Wall and escape it: This I own; but then in such a case, it may be prevented, by drawing a Line of the same Matter upon the Wall from one end to the other.

7. *Shell-snails* much annoy Wall-fruit: to remedy that, take slacked Lime, and strew along on the Bank, and dust it on the Leaves and Branches, and where the Snail touches it he will fret and slime to Death: this is effectual likewise to Snails without Shells.

8. *Wasps* are very mischievous when the Fruit begins to ripen; and therefore if you find any Nests of them in your Orchards or Garden, the best way is to destroy them by pouring in hot Water wherein Hemlock has been boyled; or you may hang Pots with Honey mingled with Water; daub also the Insides of the Pots with Honey, and they having tasted it, repairing further to drink of the Water will drown themselves in great multitudes.

9. *Birds* are great destroyers of choice early Fruit, as also in the spring the Buds; especially the *Bulfinch*, *Titmouse*, and the like of those, of *Cherries*, *Plums*, *Apricocks*, &c. These may be taken by Lime-twigs placed in the Trees, and then by hanging up dead ones by the heels in the Trees, the other will be scared away: Also two or three Rattle-mills, set up in the Orchard, turned by the Wind, will affright them.

10. *Winds*

10. *Winds* and nipping *Frosts* in the Spring, together with *Blasts*, are *Enemies* to *Fruit-trees*: the best way to prevent these, is to keep *smoking Fires* among the standing *Trees*, and cover the *Wall-fruit* with *bass mats*.

---

## C H A P. XXVII.

### *Of Nurseries for Stocks, and their Improvement.*

**T**O serve your self with a sufficient Number of *Stocks* to graft on, or inoculate the several *Fruits* you intend to propagate and advance, prepare a *Bed* of *Earth* well dressed from *Weeds*, proportionable to the *Stones* or *Seeds* you intend to set or sow to raise *Stock* from: Let them be cover'd with small crumbled light *Earth*, that so the tender puttings forth may the better get through it, and mix with the *Earth* a moderate sprinkling of *Dung*, to keep it the warmer in *Winter*. As for the *Stones*, set them in rows, with the sharp End downwards, about the middle or latter end of *October*, the *Weather* being open, and cover the *Beds* against the *Cold* with *Straw* that has been the *Litter* of a *Stable*; which in *April*, the *Weather* being a little warm, remove; and in *May*, if they prosper, they will come up; then keep them clean from *Weeds*, and thin them by plucking up the *Underlings* where they grow too thick, that the others may thrive the better; and the third *Summer* you may mark out in *Leaving-time* what you design to remove, and then in the *Winter* following remove them to such places as you intend to graft or inoculate on them, or to other *Beds* larger where they may have more room to grow till such time as your *Occasions* require their *Removal* to the places where you would have them fix'd as *Stocks* for *Grafts*.

As for the *Seeds* of *Pears*, *Apples*, and other *Fruit* not bearing *Stones*, take them out when they rattle in the *Core* upon shaking the *Fruit*, or when the *Apple* is cut;



lay them not by, but instantly sow them very thin, dropping them one by one in little Rills or Furrows; cover them over with fine Mould, and use them in all other Respects as the former. These Seed Plants may be likewise set with a Setting-stick, and if they are removed when they are come pretty well up, it will be the better for their getting good Roots, else they will be apt to shoot one Root only, downward, and not spread. Crab-stocks and Apple-stocks thus raised, furnish an Orchard better than those that are taken wild: Trees grafted on the *Genet-moile* or Cyder-stock, preserve better the Gust of the Apple than any other, but on the Crab-stock this is of longer lasting, imparting more Juyce, of a tart Relish, and so by many preferred before most sort of Apples: however, the wild Stock does enliven the dull and phlegmatick Apple, and the Stock of the *Genet-moile* sweetens and improves the Pippin, &c. and abates the tart taste of others.

The same Rules may be observed in Stocks to graft Pears, Plums, Cherries, Apricocks, and the like upon; and the more acid the Stock, the more Life it gives to the Fruit of the Graft, as the Black-cherry and the Cherry-tree is the most approved Stock for the delicious Cherry.

Though the Fruit generally takes after the Graft, yet is it somewhat altered by the Stock, for the better or worse, according to its kind; therefore for your Seminary and Nursery, chuse a place of Ground that may be of an indifferent Nature, not too sterile, nor over-much enriched with Dung, it lying warm, with light Mould, that the Stocks may the better thrive.

If you are desirous to raise Dwarf, trell them: Let the Stocks whereon you graft them for Apples be of the Paradise Apple, of the Quince, for the Pear of the *Mareello* or common *English* Cherries for Cherries; and so they will be more fit, if you so design them for Wall-trees or Standards, being kept low, as now the Use is in many good Orchards.

If you would be furnished with good Quince-stocks for your Nursery, the speediest way is to cut down an old Quince-tree in *March*, about two Inches from the ground, and there will a number of young Suckers arise from the  
Root,

Root, which being taken off, with some of the Root sliced with them, and moist Earth about them, as much as may be, are easily planted, and in a little time will be fit to be grafted on for Pears, and raise a good Encrease: and this way also Plum-stocks may be raised, and you may be abundantly furnished of your own without being beholden to others.

## C H A P. XXVIII.

*Some farther Observations in the Transplanting of Fruit-Trees; with the Errors of some therein discovered.*

**I** Hold it (tho upon necessity or emergency it may be done at other Seasons) the best time to transplant Trees is the Autumnal Quarter, especially those that lose their Leaves, and are naked all Winter, whether they are young Stocks of new grafted Trees, or of longer standing; and it is a good time to do it, when you perceive they have done growing in the Branch, (which may be known) or Ends of the Branches of the Tops: if they be closed and shut up they may be removed without danger, though in August, but September is a general proper time, and also in October.

In taking up Plants, great Care and Skill is required by the Remover: see the spreading Roots be left on, though you must, according as the Root is, take off so much as the Earth may come conveniently to close about the rest, and fasten on it every way, that taking good hold, it may spread the better: and in Removal you will observe the younger Trees thrive better than the elder, and many times on an equal Soil overtake them in growth upon a Remove of one and the same time.



Plant not too deep, for the over-Turf is always richer than the next Mould ; and in very moist Ground plant the nearer the Surface, that the Roots spreading may avoid the Spume ; for planting too deep in any Ground much injures the growth of the Tree, by reason the heat of the Sun cannot penetrate the Earth to its Root, thereby to enliven it, and shooting mostly downward, it sucks in cold damp Spume which digests not into good Sap, whereby the Tree is enfeebled, and not of force to bring forth its Fruit in proportion ; and many times, in that depth the Roots meet with Chalk or Gravel, which hinder their Progress.

In transplanting young Trees, as you leave not on all the Roots, so neither must you all the Branches, taking away the tops of the Branches of Apples and Pears, but not of Plums, Cherries, or Walnuts. It is no small check to Plants to be removed out of a warm Soil into a cold one, nor transplant Trees out of a lean Ground into a very fat Soil ; for the sudden Alteration will go near to destroy them, or much hinder them from prospering : and therefore though the Ground must necessarily be better, yet it must be by such degrees as may be agreeable with the Tree transplanted.

Many plant Fruit-trees unfit for the Country or Soil wherein they plant them, and their Care is, to chuse Grafts of the first kind, and the fairest Plants to look upon, not considering by the way, that such kinds will prosper and bear Fruit well in those Climates and places where they plant them : And hence it often is, that many who have fair and goodly Fruit-trees, have little Fruit from them.

It is an excellent Rule, to chuse those kinds of Fruits which your self or others find by many years Experience to be good bearing Trees in those parts nearest to your Orchard, although the Fruit be not altogether so good as some others at greater distance.

There is another Error in desiring the largest and fairest Plants, expecting such Trees will soonest improve and yield Increase ; whereas great Plants, many of them die, and others, unless rather by Chance than any warranted

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 55

Certainty, live very poorly, whilst smaller Plants, well removed, live generally, and often thrive more in two or three years than the great ones in six or seven; for the removing great Plants is to Nature a very great Check, such as many times it is not able to recover.

Another Error is, that some unskilful Gardeners break off the Buds upon the Stocks grafted on, before the Graft puts forth, insinuating it will receive the more Sap, when those Wounds indeed put a check to the Sap's rising, and are more properly taken away when the Graft is united to the Bark of the Stock, and has gathered Strength from the Sap, putting out Leaves and small Branches. And some there are, that graft young Plants coming of Stones or Seeds where they were sowed or planted, without removing; which is not at all so proper for Growth.

---



THE  
GARDENER'S  
ALMANACK:

Containing what is to be done in or relating to the *Orchard* in their proper Seasons throughout the Year, in each particular Month.

---

Aquarius ♒, or the Skinker.

*Things proper to be done in the Orchard  
in the Month of*

JANUARY.

**P**repare such Soil as is futable to the nature of the Earth you plant in: make ready the Ground against the Spring, by Trenching, &c. Lay on Dung where there is occasion, as your provide Stores of Horse, Neats, and Sheeps Dung, of two years old; mingle with it, in the Lay-fall, some Loam, and under Pasture fine Mould, mingle and stir them with the

Dung

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 57

Dung, and skreen it well when layed on, that it may the easier melt, and soak in by the falling Showers. As for the Fig-tree, the Dung of Pidgeons or Poultry is very nourishing when the first Heat is passed. Let your Horse-dung, ere laid on, be exceeding rotten, lest it infect the Ground with Knot-grass, which is much offensive.

*Apricocks and Peaches* require little, but rather a natural or improved fat mellow Soil.

Dig Borders and uncover Tree-roots where you see occasion, as where Ablauation is required: transplant Fruit-trees, set Quicksets for good Fencing, plant Vines, and make a beginning to prune old Trees, and the Branches of young Orchard-fruit that are pretty well grown, and that towards the Decrease of the Moon; but such as are young and tender disbranch not till the Sap begins to stir, that the Wound with the Sars that the Frosts imprint, may be the easilier cured: cut away all the Shoots of *August*, especially from Wall-fruit, and observe in cutting the Fruit-buds from the Leaf-buds, and the former may be known by their being more fuller and swelling, and then you must preserve as much as may be, cut slanting upwards, that no Rags nor Splits be left, and in taking off a whole Limb or Branch take it close to the Stem, that the Bark may the sooner close over it; rub off the Buds that put forth on Wall-fruit Trees between the Stem and the Wall, or opposite. Keep the Palisado and Wall-Trees from too much aspiring, that they may spread the better, and be of a regular beautiful form, like the spreading of a Fan, and bear the better by being kept the closer to the Ground. Take off Water-boughs from Standards, and the under-bearing Branches of Wall-fruit, but do not prune such as are very tender till the next Month: where thick or intangling Branches appear, that may any ways gaul or fret, or keep out the Air and Sun, make them thinner by taking off some, as the Tree will bear it.

Begin to trim and nail your Espaliers and Wall-trees: rub off the Moss from Trees, the Weather being open or moist: prepare your Scions for grafting whilst the Buds or Sprouts are not yet come; and towards the End of this Month, the Weather being open, graft Cherries, Pears, or Plums.



Remove Stocks, proceeding from Kernels, to advantageous places, either in your Nursery, or where you intend they shall stand to be Grafted, taking off the part of the tops and roots: Sharpen and prepare your Tools, for the work of the succeeding Months.

Fruits in their full Virtue, and still continuing.

Pears. The *Winter Norwich*, very good to bake; the *Great Surrein*, the *Winter Musk*, the *Winter Bon-Chrestien*, and *Winter Bergomot*, Wall-Fruit, &c.

Apples. The *Winter Queening*, *Harvey Apple*, *Pomewater*, *Marrigold*, *Kentish Pippin*, *Golden Pippin*, *Russet Pippin*, *French Pippin*, *John Apple*, *Pome-Roy*, *Golden Doucet*, *Reinetting*, *Winter Pearmain*, *Loons Pearmain*, and some others, that are with good keeping well secured from the violence of the Frost, and exclude all rotting; as the *Red-streak*, the *Puffin*, the *Wilding*, the *Gilliflower Apple*, &c.

Pisces ♋.

## F E B R U A R Y.

**I**N this Month prune Vine, and other Fruit-trees: Bind, nail, plash, and dress, especially Wall-Fruit, especially such as are tender, for now the greatest danger of the Frosts hurting them is in a manner over; and finish this work before the Bearers and Buds swell; however in Nectarins and other choice Fruit it may be omitted, till the next Month, especially if the weather be very cold: bind the colateral Branches, to put the Wall-trees in a good shape, but strain them not too roughly, or unnaturally, for that hinders the Sap in its free motion; and in this, and well pruning, lies one Master-piece of a Gardener, as to these particulars.

The Grafts of former Years Grafting, may be now removed; Lay and Cut Quick-set, Trim up your Espaliers, and

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 59

and the Hedges of your Palisadoes; and hitherto you may set the Vine, and divers sorts of Shrubs.

Kernels, or Stones of Fruit, are proper now to be set, or sowed. This is a proper Month for the Circumposition, by Baskets, or Tubs of Earth; and such Branches as you would leave to take Root, may be now layed in the Earth.

Moss your Fruit-trees, and apply Remedies for Cankers, as cutting them out, and laying on a Plaister of Pidgeons-dung, Tar, and sweet Butter.

Drain your Orchard, and rid it of the wet that lyes sapping at the Roots of the Trees, either proceeding from Rain, melted Snow, or Springs: Cast good Earth about the Roots of the Trees; cover those that were layed bare; prune off the webs of Catterpillars, hanging on the Twigs, or Branches: After Rain, pick up Worms and Sug-Snails, and destroy them, by putting them into hot Water, or Lime. About the middle, till the latter end of this Month, it may be very proper to Graft in the Cleft; and this necessary work may be held on till the end of *March*, especially Pears, Plums, Apples, Cherries; and it is best done in the new and old Moon.

Fruits in their full Virtue, and still continuing.

Pears. The *Winter Poppering*, the *Winter Bon-Chrestien*, the *Little Dagobert*, the *Warden*.

Apples. The *Reniting*, the *Loons Pearmain*, the *Kentish Kirton*, the *Holland Pippin*, the *Winter Queening*, the *Harvy Apple*, the *Golden Doucet*, the *Pome Roy*, the *Russet Pippin*.

---

Aries  $\gamma$ , or the Ram.

M A R C H.

YOU may yet Dung your Orchard, and Plant Trees that remain yet unset, though it had been better done:



## 60 The New Art of Gardening,

done in the last Month, unless in moist cold places, that are very backward.

This whole Month you may Graft, first with Pears in the beginning, and so conclude it with Apples, unless it be in an extraordinary forward Spring, wherein the Trees put very early out, both Leafs and Blossoms.

Nectarins and Peach-trees may successfully be Planted, but forbear to take off the top of the Root, as of other Trees is proper, by Reason it will endanger their taking Root at all, or at least hinder their growth, and thriving. Cut off the tops of your budded Stocks, and prune Grafts of the last Year. Uncover your Seed, or Kernel-beds, or if the weather be cold, or much wet, refrain it till April. Stir the new planted Ground, and well lay and order it.

Cover Tree-roots that have continued bare since Autumn, and cut your Quick-sets, trim your Fruit in the Fruit-lofts, but open not the windows, lest too great a confluence of Air putrefy, and cause them to rot.

Fruits still Lasting, and in their Vertue.

Pears. The *Double Blossom Pear*, the *Bon Chrestien*.

Apples. The *Winter Pearmain*, the *Golden Doucet*, the *Loons Pearmain*, the *Pippin*, the *Reinette*.

Taurus ♉, or the Bull.

A P R I L.

**K**eepe your Orchard free from weeds; water Trees where they are upon a dry ground, but ever do this at a distance, that the water may soak leisurely to the Roots. Hang well betimes such borders as your Wall-Fruit stands in, and refresh the ground with compost; set no Flowers there, that they may not hinder your stirring the Ground; keep Weeds clear, as also Worms and Snails; only the Outverges you may adorn with a Border of Pinks.

Pinks, or any pleasant thing, that grows low, and will not shadow the heat of the Sun from the Root of the Tree, and you may sprinkle the rest with Salleting; but when they begin to run to Seed, or aspire, pluck them up Roots and all, or as soon as they are fit for young and tender Salleting. Graft by approach, Oranges, Limons, Pomegranates, &c.

Fruits still Lasting, and in full Virtue.

Pears. The Oak-Pear, the Bon-Chrestien, the Double Blossom, the Rowling Pear.

Apples. The Deux-ans, Pippins, Flat Reinets, Westbury Apple, Gilleflower.

## Gemini II, or the Twins.

### M A Y.

**T**HIS Month, as to matters in the affairs of Orcharding, in a manner gives the Arborist rest, only be careful to keep under the Weeds, spread and bind down the Branches on Arbours; and clip such Trees as require it, for pleasantness and shade.

Bring the Orange-trees out of the Conservatory, at such time as you see the Mulberry-tree put forth, and open its Leafs, let the weather be what it will, for that is an Infalible Rule for the proper Season, to transplant and remove them, but do it with care, drawing the Tree out with competent Mould sticking to it, when you have well loosened it from the sides of the case, and so with better ease place it in another, filled with earth, taking up the first half spit, just under the Turf of the richest Pasture-ground, in a place that has been well fothered, and take rotten Cow-dung one part, and mix with this, or at least very mellow Soil, well skreened or sifted; and if this proves too stiff, lift a little Loom in it, or a little Lime, with



with the small rotten sticks of Willows; then cut the two extravagant or thick Roots a little at the bottom, and set the Plant but shallow, rather let some of the Root be seen, than that it be too deep: If you cut off any Branch, make a Searcloth of Rosin, Tarpentin, Bees-wax, and Tallow, and place it upon the Wound, till it is healed.

As for the Cases, they must have such vents at the bottom, that the wet mod. ay pass out, and not stay in in any abundance, to corrupt or rot the fibers of the Roots. Water this kind of Trees, with Water wherein Sheep and Neats dung has been digested in the Sun, two or three days, and that moderately at first, and so more by degrees: Keep the Earth loose about them, for the first fortnight after they are brought out of your Conservatory, or Greenhouse, and keep them the while in the shade, and then you may expose them freely to the Sun, but not when it is too scorching, by lying too long on them, but where sometimes the intermission of shade of Trees may refresh them with coolness.

Give this Month your other housed Plants a little fresh Earth to the old, stirring that up lightly with a Fork, not injuring the Roots: Enlarge the Cases as the Trees grow bigger, from sixteen Inches to near a Yard Diameter.

Brush and cleanse off the dust, when you take them out of the Houses; and such as you transplant not, pare off above an Inch of the surface, and lay new Earth, or rather compost of neats dung, and the ouze of the bottom of the Tanners Pit, both being old, so that the wet may wash down the strength of it to the bottom of the Root; nor need you trim the Roots of any Verdures, unless much matted, or intangled; but it will be proper to change their Cases once in three or four years.

As for Fruits in Season, Prime, or still Lasting, they are,

Pears. The *Winter Bon-Chrestien*, the *Great Kareville*, the black *Pear of Worcester*, the *Double Blossom-Pear*, the *Surrein*.

Apples. The *Forward Codling*, the *Gilliflower Apple*, the *Marygold*, the *Rusiting*, the *Malligar*, the *Westbury Apples*,

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 63

ples, the *Fohn Apple*, *Pippins*. The *May Cherry*, and *Strawberries*.

---

Cancer ☉, or the Crab.

### J U N E.

**A**Bout the fourteenth Day of this Month you may begin to Inoculate Pears, Apples, Abricots, Peaches, Plums, Cherries, &c. Cleanse the Vines of luxuriant Branches, and tenderness; crop them rather than cut 'em, and stop the second joynt, directly before the Fruit, and some under Branches that are fruitless; particularly Vines, that are young planted, when they but begin to bear, and so forward, binding the rest up to the props or staves.

Water Trees lately planted, and cover the Roots (if you can get it) with Fern, almost rotten, about a Foot of them stem, having first eradicated all Weeds that grow about them.

Place near the Stem a Tub of impregnated Water, lap about it a reasonable length of woollen Cloth, or Flannel about it, let one end of it hang in the Water, so that thereupon the moisture ascending, the Bark will draw it in, and much cool it, in this and the two following scorching Months, thereby preventing the Fruit falling off untimely, by reason of excessive heat, that wastes the moisture; and this way will recover the Verdure of a Tree that is fainting, and languishing for want of moisture, by reason of great droughts, or scorching of the Leafs and smaller Boughs, by the Sun's hot beams; but do not continue the Water so long that it may sob the Bark, lest it by over-wetting injure the Tree.

If Trees that used to be often removed, or carried to and fro from your Conservatory, be hurt, or languish, you may this Month give them a Milk-dyēt, *viz.* dilute it with a part of Water, discreetly applyed, as you find amend.



amendment; or by planing them in a hot Bed, letting them down into a pit in the Earth, two or three foot deeper than they are high, and so covering them with a Glass-Frame; which refreshing, often enlivens and restores them, according as the young Tree is either wanting in warmth or nourishment.

Fruits in Season, and Prime.

Cherries, Black, White, and Red. *Flanders Heart Duke, Early Flanders, Lukeware, Spanish Black, Common Cherry, Naples Cherries, &c. Strawberries, Rasberries, Currants.*

Pears. *Green Royal, St. Lawrence-Pear, the Magdalen, the First Ripe of Pears, the Madera.*

Apples. *The Pippin, the John Apple, the Redsenail, the Robillard,*

Leo ♌, or the Lyon.

J U L Y.

**W**ater young Trees not long planted, as also Layers and the like: Re-prune Peaches and Abricots, save many of the likely young Shoots, to be layed in the Ground; that they may further encrease; for now usually the old bearers perish, and are succeeded by new ones; cut them close, and even; well pruning your Wall-Fruit of the Leafs that are superfluous, hindering the Suns warmth from the Fruit, but bare not the Fruit too much, lest it prove injurious, especially to Vines.

When the Fruit requires filling, or is forming, make holes, about a Foot and a half from your Wall-Fruit, without wounding the Roots, and pour in water; you may let the setting-sticks you make them with, stand in them a little loose, so that water may come to the Roots leisurely; or this may be done with semi-circle Trenches, at a like distance.

Towards

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 65

Towards the latter end of this Month, visit the Vines again, and stop the luxuriant Branches, or Shoots, at the second Joynt, above the Fruit, if you have not finished it before; but let there be some umbrage in your exposing it to the Sun, that there may not be too much of the heat: Hang Bottles of cool water near your Red Roman Nectarins, and other luscious Fruit, to destroy the Wasps that come to eat, and spoil them, and also Flies: Set the hoofs of Neats Feet, to take Ervgs in, which are equally mischievous; and at noon shake them into water to destroy them.

Destroy Ants, to preserve your Orange-trees when Flowered, by pouring scalding Water, or rather Urine, on their hills: Pull off the Snailles that you will find under the Leafs, above the Fruit; but not the Fruit that is bitten, for then they will fall to biting afresh: Have an Eye upon Weeds, pull them up where they sprout; begin to hang them as soon as they peep out of the Ground; and by this means, you will rid more in a few Hours than in many when they are grown up.

Lay Lawrel, Mirtles, and other delicate green: Water choice Shrubs, and when ever you shift them, trim the Roots, and give them good store of compost; Clip Box after gentle Showers of Rain, and in watering it well thereupon, the scent will not be offensive to any thing that grows near it. Graft by approach, Inarch and Inoculate Oranges, Jesemins, and curious Shrubs, taking off the surface of the Earth; about the latter end of this Month, put cooling fresh Earth to them, that they may the better weather the hot Season.

In the dryest Season strow Pot Ashes, or sprinkle Brine, which Improve Grafts, and destroy Worms. Water your Green Walks with water, wherein Tobacco Stalks have been boiled, and it will kill Worms, and other Insects that Infest them.

Fruits in Season, Prime, or yet remaining good.

Cherries. The Egriot, Brigg'saux, Great Bearer, Morrell, Morocco-Cherry, and Carnations.

Peaches. The Violet Muscat, Nutmeg Peach, Isabella, Newington, Persian, and Rambouillet. Plums.



Plums. *Lady Elizabeth*, *Primordial*, *Damfens*, *Myrabolans*, *Blue and Red*, and *Amber Violet*, *Violet or Cheson Plum*, the *Kings Plum*, *Deny Damask*, *Pear-Plum*, *Cinamon-Plum*, *Spanish Morocco-Plum*, *Tawny*, and *Abricot-Plum*.

Apples. *The Marget-Apple*, *Deux-ans*, *Winter Ruseting*, *Pippins*, *Andrew-Apple*, *Funeting*, *Cinamon-Apple*, *Red and White*.

Pears. *The Green Chefil*, *Pearl-pear*, the *Primat*, *Russet-pear*, *Summer-pears*.

*Goosberries*, *Currants*, *Rasberries*, *Strawberries*, *Melonfa*.

Virgo ♍, or the Virgin-Sign.

## AUGUST.

**B**egin now early to Inoculate; gather Buds of this Year, and do it before you remove the Stocks: Cut away the superfluous Branches, and such Shoots as are found of these second Spring, but do not disrobe the Fruit of too many Leafs, whereby they may be left too open to the scorching of the Sun: Nail up such as you leave on to cover the Wall's defects: still take away the superfluous Branches from the Vines, but not so much as to expose the Grapes too much to the Suns heat, lest they lose their plumpness, and ripen unkindly. Pluck up Suckers.

Release and unbind the Buds you have Inoculated, if they have taken; prune and stop them; make Cyder, and Summer-Perry.

Now is the exact Season for the Orange-tree's budding, therefore at the commencement of this Month Inoculate upon Seed-stocks of four Springs; and to have the better Buds, cut off the top of some aged Orange-tree, which is of a growing kind, and so get good Shoots.

About *Bartholomew-tide* lay your choice Green; as *Lemons*, *Oranges*, *Mirtles*, *Jesemin*, *Philareus*, *Arbutus*, *Oleanders*, and excellent Shrubs; as the *Pomegranates*,  
and

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 67

and such as will not endure the nipping of the Frosts; taking the Branches and Shoots of the Spring, stake them down with little hook-stakes, in very fertile Earth, well piled with Soil that is consumed; Water them during the hot weather, on all convenient times; and when this Month returns again, they will be fit to remove; transplant them into suitable Earth, and place them in the shade, so that they may be kept moderately moist, but not too wet, for fear of rotting the fibers of the Roots; and at the end of three weeks, find out an Arier place to set them in, till the end of fifteen Days.

Fruits in Season, Prime, and yet remaining Sound.

Apples. *Sheeps-snout, Kirham-Apple, May-Flower, Seaming-Apple, Cushion-Apple, Ladies Longing, Spicing-Apple, John-Apple, Pippin.*

Pears. *The Slipper-pear, Burgomot, Red Catharine, Sovereign, Windsor, Orange, the Prussia-pear, King Catharine, the Deny-pear, Sugar-pear, Summer-popprings, the Lording-pear, &c.*


Nectarins. *The Cluster-Nectarine, the Yellow-Nectarine, the Muroy-Nectarine, the Tawney Red-Roman, the Little Green-Nectarine, &c.*

Abricots and Peaches. *The Savoy Mala-cotton, the Peach des Pot, the Roman-peach, Quince-peach, Man-peach, Burdeaux-peach, Crown-peach, Rambouillet, Musk-peach, Grand Carnation, Portugal-peach, Lower-peach.*

Plums. *The White Date, Imperial-Blew, Black Pear-plum, Yellow Pear-plum, Late Pear-plum, Great Anthony, Turkey-plum, White Nutmeg, Fane-plum.*

Some other Fruits of this Month, viz. *Filberts, Cornelians, Cluster-Grapes, and Muscadine, Currants, Figs, Melons, &c.*



Libra  or the Ballance.

## S E P T E M B E R.

**T**His is a proper Month to gather the ripe Winter Fruit; as Lums, Apples, Pears, &c. For if they hang longer, the Winds being boisterous, will shake them off, and spoil them for keeping, by their fall; observe to gather them always in dry weather; and if the Season affords it, when the Sun has Sucked up the Dews and moisture from the Fruit and Leafs.

Let at Liberty the Buds you have Inoculated, especially if you perceive them pinch, for in that case it may be done sooner. Lay on your Winter-store of dung, spread it finely, and thinly, that the Rain may soak it in, to fertilize the Ground. Prune Pine and Fir-trees, between the ninth and twelfth of this Month, if it was neglected in March; and this will prove the more prosperous Season. About *Michaelmas*, house choice green and the tenderest Plants, in a convenient Conservatory; as Limons, Oranges, Barba, Jovis, Amonium, Dates, &c. ordering them with refreshing Mould, stirring up the rest, and so filling up the Cases, that they may keep the Roots warm, as consumed and rich Soil to wash in, and nourish the fibers; yet keep the Windows open, till the cold admonish you to shut them.

Set such Plants as agree not to be housed into the Earth, placing their Pots and Cases lower than the surface of the Bed, and expose them as much as may be to the South, that the Sun may a little refresh them in the Winter, and the cold Northren Winds be skreened off; cloath them with dry and fresh Moss, and then cover them with Glasses, but in open weather, under the favour of the Sun's warm Beams, or falling of gentle Showers, give them Air to revive and exhilarate them, and keep them from the annoyance of any Creature, that may come to break, bruise, or otherwise spoil them.

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 89

Fruits in Season, prime, and still remaining sound.

Grapes. The *Muscadine-grape*, the *little Blue-grape*, the *juice-grape*, excellent for pickling.

Peaches. The *Malacoton*, the *Laver-peach*, &c.

Pears. The *Misieur Janc*, *Beze-d' Hery*, *Hambden's*, *Argomont*, *Black Worcester*, the *Rowling-pear*, the *Green Old Orange*, the *Summer bon Christien*, *Frith-pear*, *Hedge-pear*, *Lewis-pear*, *Brunswick-pear*, *Winter Poppering*, *Bishops-pear*, *Bing's-pear*, *Diego*, *Emperor's-pear*, *Cluster-pear*, *Bal-m-pear*, *Enelyn*, *Norwich-pear*, *Arundel-pear*, *Greenfielding*.

Apples. The *William*, the *Belle-bonne*, the *Summer Pearmain*, the *Red Greening Ribed*, *Violet Apple*, *Bloody-pippin*, *Harvy Apple*, *Pear Apple*, *Lording Apple*, *Quince Apple*, and several others of less worth or note.

---

Scorpio m, or the Scorpion.

### OCTOBER.

NOW is the proper time for trenching Ground, in order to the well laying it for Orchards, that the Winter may mellow it. Plant your dry Trees, viz. fruit-trees, of all sorts, Wall-trees, Standards, or Shrubs, such as lose their Leaves, but let those for the Wall be not above two years grafting, smooth, and very sound. Abolition is now in season; as for old unthriving Trees, cut their Roots; and of those that over hastily blow, stir well the Ground you have newly planted: Continue in the Encrease of the Moon to gather Winter-fruit that remains, always observing to gather when they are dry, and beware of pinching or bruising them with your Fingers; if they taint and rot, lay them in fresh Wheat-straw in your Loft, and cover them warm.

Plash and make up your Quickset Fences; after the second Year remove Grafts, unless such as are intended for Dwarf.



Dwarf-trees, which may well be let alone till the third Year.

Sow hard and stoney, and hard Kernel feeds, as the of the Pear-plum, Heart-Cherries, Black-cherries, Marrello's, the Stones of Almonds, Apple, Pear, Crab Nuts, &c. Cleanse, by sweeping, your Walks and Alleys of the Autumnal Leaves, lest rotting, they breed Insects to annoy your Ground. Cut away the hedgey grass, spread Mole-hills, and scrape the Moss from off your Fruit-trees.

Fruit in Season, prime, or still remaining sound.

Pears. The *Lambert Pear*, *Roussel Pear*, *Green Butt* Pear, *Cow Pear*, *Saffron Pear*, *Russet Pear*, *Petworth Pear*, *Violet Pear* or *Winter Winsor Pear*, *Thorn Pear*, *Cloue Pear* with some of last Months Pears.

Apples. *Pear Apple*, *Pearmain*, *Parsly Apple*, *Bell et Bon* Honey-meal, *Apis-Lording*, *William Costard*, &c.

Bullis, and many of the last Months Plums, Pines, Grapes, *Arbutus*, &c.

---

Sagittarius ♄, or the Shooter.

## N O V E M B E R.

**N**OW get your Compost in readiness in your Orchard to secure the Roots of tender Plants from the Cold: continue planting and setting Trees: observe in transplanting, how your Tree stood before, and place it to the same Quarter, and about the same depth, fixing it well against the Violence of the Wind, especially West and South: set wet, and sow dry; plant young Trees, either Wall or Standards; provide in Nurseries Stocks to grow on the ensuing Year, and get new Stocks in a Reading for all sorts of Fruits, for Standards, Crab-stocks, &c. for Dwarf-trees, the Stocks of Paradise, or Sweet Apple.

Kerne

Kernels, which may be obtained from Suckers and Layers, Dwarfs on the Portugal Quince Suckers, Pears on the Kernel-stock of Pears or Suckers, Standard-cherries on the Black-cherry-stone stock, Dwarfs for Palisadoes or Walls, &c. on the black Heart or Morello Stock, or the small early bitter Cherry-stock: Inoculate Peaches on the Plum-stock, or their own. In budding on the Almond, it is proper to do it on a Stock that has not been removed; and it is proper it should keep its Situation. Graft Nectarines on Pear-plum or Peach-stocks, Plums on their own Stocks, and of these kinds the black and white Pear-plum Stocks are to be preferred, and those growing from Damson-stones, or such as may be advantageously gathered from the Suckers: And about the middle of this Month shut up your choice Trees, and enclose tender Plants, that so you may not be oppressed with the violent Cold of the Winter to over-power their Heat and destroy them; and if they become very dry, and it be not freezing Weather, refresh them moderately with Water wherein Cow or Sheeps-dung is dissolved, but give them not too much, nor make it over-rich with Dung, for both these are injurious, especially to Orange-trees: as for the Aloes, they require no watering in the Winter, but only refreshing abroad in a fair day, how dry soever their Pots or Cases may appear to be. To know if your housed Trees want Water, is by the Leaves shrinking or shriveling up, especially those underneath; and the paleness of the Leaves shew they have had too much, which lies sapping at the Root, and endangers destroying them.

This Month you may plant Forest-trees for the gracing your Walks or Avenues; sow stoney Seeds, sweep and cleanse your Walks and Alleys of Leaves, &c. and transplant Trees that are durable against Cold, taking up as much of the Earth they grow in with the Root as you can, and immediately set them in a soft Earth that may continue moist till the Rain descends to settle it.

Fruits in Season, prime, and still remaining sound.

Pears. The Dead-mans Pear, Bergomont, Lord Pear, Messire Jean, Burnt-cat, Warden, Lady Pear, Sugar Pear, Ice Pear, Dove Pear, Winter-Bergomont, Bell-Pear.

Apples.



Apples. *Pear Apple, Belle-Bon, the William, the Summer Pearmain, the Lord Apple, the Winter Chesnut, the Short Start, the Russet Pippin, the Puffin, the Cole Apple, the Pippin, the Pomwater, the Golding, the John Apple.*

*Services, Bullis, Medlars, Arbutus, Wall-nuts, Small-nuts, and the like.*

Capricorn *or, the Goat.*

## DECEMBER.

**T**HIS Month properly Vines may be planted; prune and fasten Wall-fruit; thin the over-spreading Branches of Standard, though you may spare them till February; prepare good Stocks for grafting; sow Pomace of the Cyder-pressings to raise Nurseries; you may set any sorts of Stones or Kernels; refresh your Autumn Fruit, lest it taint; feed your weak Stocks, open the Windows of your Fruit-lofts in a fair day.

This whole Month you may continue to trench the Ground, and dung it, preparing thereby for Borders to set palisado'd or Wall-fruit Trees.

In this Month (or you may defer it till January) cut off or prune well the Vine-shoots to the Root, only save two or three of the best Shoots, with three or four Eyes of young Wood: set up Traps to destroy Vernal, that they destroy not your Nursery-seeds, or the Roots of your tender Plants.

Keep close the Doors and Windows of your Conservatory, so matted that the piercing Air cannot enter to injure your choice Greens; and if the Weather be extream, you must have a Steve or Charcoal Fire in it in the manner as shall be directed hereafter; but do not frequently use it any more than Necessity requires.

Take Bay-berries that are dropping ripe, and set them, cover warm the Pipes and Cocks of your Fountains, if you have

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 72

have any in your Grounds, with much soiled Horse-litter, lest they are flawed and cracked by the Violence of the Frost, and put you to much Charge for want of timely Care to prevent it.

Fruits in Season, prime, and still remaining sound.

Pears. The *Spindle-pear*, the *Squib-pear*, the *Staple-pear* white and Red, the *French-warden*, the *Dionery*, the *Pinget*, *Gascon*, *Bergamot*, the *Deadmans-pear*, the *Scarlet-pear*, the *Rowling-pear*.

Apples. The *Russeting*, *Leather-coat*, *Winter Red*, *Carr-head*, *Chestnut Apple*, *Great-belly*, *Pippin*, *Pearmain*, &c.

---

*The best and safest way to gather Summer and Winter Fruit for keeping; and how to order them for that purpose.*

IF you design to keep Cherries for sundry Uses, especially in Preserving, great Care must be taken in gathering of them.

To do this, it is most proper to have a Ladder with a Bearer or Crutch of light Timber, that it may stand as it were of it self, without pressing on the Boughs to endanger their breaking, or the bruising of the Fruit, which may conveniently be removed to all parts: gather by the Stalk, without squeezing the Cherry with any part of your hand, and put them gently into your Cherry-pot or Basket hanging by a Hook on some convenient Bough well within your reach, taking care to break no Stalk but what the ripe Fruit hangs on; lay them gently in, and pour them gently into your Reciever below with as much ease as you can.

This kind of Fruit is best carried in broad Baskets like Sieves, with a smooth yielding Bottom: If you carry them by Water, let not the Sieves be full, lest setting one upon another you bruise and spoil them; but if in Carts or

E

Horse.



## 74 *Of the Art of Gardening.*

Turne back, well line the Bottom or Sides of the Sleeve with Fern, or such other cool Vegetable, to keep them from bruising, and likewise to prevent their sweating.

### *To gather and order other Stone fruit.*

When you are to gather Nectarines, Apricocks, Peaches, Damasks, Pear-Plums, Bullis, and the like, of several kinds, and they seem not to be ripe at once, on one Tree stay not for all of them at once, but cull out those that are, and wait for the ripening of the rest, unless you perceive they have received their full Substance, and the Tree can properly yield them no more than in a fair Day when the Sun sucketh up the Dew. Set up your Ladder as before, and gather them with a tender hand without squeezing or bruising; place in your Basket, or broad Pannier Nettles, and lay them in gently, and so let them stand covered on the Top with Nettles also, and this Weed will be a great means to hasten the ripening of those that are not yet attained to it.

### *To gather Pears the best way.*

In doing this, observe two things.

1. If you gather them for your own spending, and would have them keep, gather them as soon as they change, and are, as some call it, half ripe, and no more; letting the rest that are not come to this perfection hang till they change likewise; and then gather them; and so they will ripen the more kindly, and not, by many degrees, be subject to rot so soon as if you let them be full ripe on the Tree.

2. If you design to transport them far, either by Water or Land, then pluck a Pear, cut it in the middle, and at the Core you find a large hollow space, then gather the rest, and Pack them gently in such Baskets or Hampers you design to carry or transport them in, laying chaff or Wheat-Straw to secure them from bruising; for if they

gather

## With the Gardener's Almanack.

gathered too soon, this kind of Fruit will shrink and wither; or being too ripe, unless very hard Pears, they will be subject to rot sooner than ordinary: Lay them in your Loft on Wheat-Straw.

### *To gather and order Apples in the best manner.*

To know when your Summer Apples are hasting to a Ripeness, observe the Birds pecking at them, and with a shake many will fall; or if of those you gather, the Kernels rattle in them, these are signs of Ripeness.

Gather these in a fair Sunshiny day, and use them in all things as the Pear, for they will not be lasting in keeping, yet that they may be fair, and remain a long while, have a care of bruising them in gathering.

Winter Apples are for a long Duration; gather them in a fair Sunshiny or dry day, when all the moisture are off from them and the Leaves, for the least Wet will subject them to Heat, Sweat, and Rot, when layed in heaps in your Fruit-loft; when you have set up your Ladder, not pressing on the Tree, draw those Boughs gently to you that are somewhat out of your reach with a hooked Stick; gather them with a gentle hand, rather by the Stalks than gripping, and put them leisurely into your Basket, hanging on the Ladder, or on a convenient Bough by a Hook; and when you empty, do it not roughly, lest bruises, or their own Stalks pricking them, cause them to rot: gather them clean from Leaves or Brunts, because the one mingled with them, heats, and subjects the Fruit to rot; and the other hurts the Tree, and hinders it much from breeding the next year, as being the Buds that would produce new Fruit. As for the Fallings that are shaken down by the Wind, or other Accidents, if upon soft Grass, they may be sorted by themselves, and laid up; but if much bruised, immediately make Cyder of them, for they will not keep.

Pack your Apples in Wheat or Rye-straw, in Maunds or Baskets, lined with the same, and so you may fit them for removing at any time, or preserve them from the Injuries of the Frost, and make them keep sound a long time.



Gather them without the Stalk, because with it they will soonest corrupt and rot at that place, laying sweet Straw between every Layer of Apples, and between the several sorts of them, if more than one be in a Basket or Maund.

*To gather and secure Quinces from rotting, &c.*

Gather these in a dry day, when the Moisture is off the Trees and Fruit: pluck them gently from the Stalks, and keep them in clean Wheat-straw, laid or pack'd as thin as may be: Separate them a good distance from other Fruit because their Scent is offensive to it: you may pack them in dry Casks, but so as Air may come at them, for it is a great Preserver of them: all Dampness makes them mouldy, and rot: when you pack them, lay Layings of Straw between them, and such as lie loose in your Fruit Lofts turn them often.

*To gather and keep Medlars and Services.*

The Medlar must be plucked gently before it be ripe for it will soon grow ripe of it self when off the Tree lay them on heaps in your Fruit-Loft on dry Straw, often turning or shifting them. Let them not lie too thick on one another; and if you pack them let it be in sieves or Casks, laying small shavings or dry Straw between them then cover them with a woollen Cloth, and lay a Board on them to press them down with Weights; so being brought unto a Ferment, they will ripen kindly; and take them away that ripen first, and place them by themselves; for if they be suffered to lie with the hard ones till they are ripe, they will grow mouldy; and so do till they are all ripe.

As for Services, you need no more than gather them before they are ripe, Stalks and all, tye them up in little Bunches and hang them on Lines in an airy yet warm place and they will kindly ripen.

*Of the Fruit-Loft, Stowing and Managing  
Fruit for keeping.*

**I**F you are to carry Fruit far by Land or by Water, do it not in hard frosty Weather nor in the Extream Heat of the Summer, nor in the Month of *March* when the Winds are sharp and high.

Winter-fruit must neither lye too close nor too open, too hot nor too cold, free from all offensive Smells; for the Fruit will be apt to attract them, and taint.

A low Room or Cellar that is clean and sweet, either paved or boarded, but not too close, I hold best to lay or shift your Winter-fruit into at *Christmas* if it be open Weather, and so let them continue till *March*.

Then a Room that is ceiled over-head and from the Ground, will do very well from *March* till *May*; and from thence till *Michaelmas* a Cellar is very proper: keep them in all places from moist or sweating Walls, and from dust or any other thing that is offensive.

There are some sorts of Fruit that rarely can be kept beyond *All-hallowtide*, and these must be laid by themselves, then those that will last till *Christmas* by themselves, and those that last till *Shrovetide* by themselves, and *Pearmaines*, *Pippins*, *Joba Apples* and *Winter Russetings*, that will last all the year, by themselves: pick out the specked or rotten ones, lest they corrupt the rest: you need not turn the most lasting Apples till a week before *Christmas*, unless you have mixed them with others of a riper kind, or that the Fallings be among them, or much of the first Straw left amongst them. The next proper time to turn them is *Shrovetide*, and then once a Month till *Whitsuntide*, and always in turning lay your Heaps lower and lower, and the Straw very thin, but handle them at no time in any great Frost, except they be in a close warm Cellar. All Fruit, at every Thaw, are consequently moist, and must



## 48 The New Art of Gardening,

not for some time be touched, unless such as you take for present use; forbear them likewise during great Rains, but at these times it may be proper to let open your doors and windows, to let in the free Air, at Nine in the Forenoon in Winter, and at Six in Summer, but not at all in *March*.

---

To

---

yo  
lin  
bea  
Tr  
pre  
ver  
the  
ly,  
ter  
and  
or  
Cr  
are  
as i  
a C  
bin  
mer  
fine  
set

To make Curious, Pleasant, Wholesome  
Liquors, and Wines of divers English  
Fruits, growing in Orchards and Gar-  
dens.

*To make Cider.*

**T**Ake the Apples you best fancy, or the best your  
Orchard yields, proper to this use, viz. Gol-  
den Pippins, Pippins, Redstreak, or Pear-  
mains, when they are indifferent Ripe, which  
you may try by shaking of the Tree, and their easy fal-  
ling thereupon; and if you have no Mill to grind them,  
beat with a wooden Beater, very weighty, in a wooden  
Trough, or Tub, well fixed and bedded in the Earth, to  
prevent any hollownes at the bottom, till they are become  
very small; put in a little Sugar, or new Wort, to make  
them beat the easier; and when they are Mashed suffici-  
ently, put them into a hair Bag, filling it about three quar-  
ters full; put it into a Press of equal wideness, well fixed,  
and upon it a strong Plank, then bring down the skreen,  
or spindle upon it, directly in the middle, with an iron  
Crow, and press it by turning gradually, till the Apples  
are squeezed dry, having your receiver to take the Liquor  
as it runs through a Fisset fixed in the Press.

This done, strain it through a coarse linnen-cloth into  
a Cask; put to each Gallon an Ounce of Loaf-Sugar, and  
bung it up close for 24 Hours, in which time it will fer-  
ment, and be ready to work at that time: mix a little  
fine Flower and Honey together, as big as a Pullet's Egg;  
set the Cask on a stand, where you intend it shall conti-



## 80 The Art of Gardening.

ane, and put it in, and then let it work; which done and well settled, draw it from the Lees, and bottle it up, or for want of Bottles, into an other Cask, rinsed with Water wherein a little sweet Margorum has been boiled, and it will prove excellent Cyder.

You may make a smaller sort, or a good cooling sort of Drink, by steeping the pressings in Water two or three Days, often stirring them, and then pressing them as before.

You may make a good sort of Cyder of Codlings, in the same manner, but let them not be over ripe when you gather them; wind-falls (presently used) will do as well as the best.

### *Pery, the best way to make it.*

**T**AKE Pears that are hasting towards ripening, but have not attained to it; of such sorts as best pleases you, as Windsor pears, White and Red Catharines, Orange-pears, or such as are pleasant tasted; take off the stalks, cut them in four parts, and pour scalding hot Water to them, wherein some sliced Pears have been boiled; let them steep 24 Hours, then draw the Water off and preserve it.

This done beat the Pears, as you did the Apples, and press them in your Press; in like manner strain the Liquor you receive, and put it into a Cask, and into the Cask hang a Bag of mashed Rasins of the Sun, and a little beaten Mace, for five or six days; and when the Pery has froothed and purged, by putting a little warm new Ale-yest on the top of it, let it settle, and draw it off in Bottles, for this sort of Liquor keeps much better so, than in any Cask; and so when ripe, which will be in five or six Weeks, it will prove an exceeding pleasant and wholesome Liquor.

Mix the pressings with the Water you drew off, and they will make another good sort of Pery, though weaker, and not so well to keep long.

*To make Wine of Grapes.*

**W**Hen Ripening-time comes, take away the most shading Leaves of the Vines, and let the Sun have full power on the Clusters for two or three Days; then in a dry Day pick off those Grapes that are the ripest, letting the rest hang on the stalks to ripen kindly; afterwards bruise and press them in a Fat or Press made for that purpose; in a fine Canvas-bag, but not so violent hard to break the Stones if you can avoid it, for they will give the Wine a bad Taste; then strain it well, and let it settle on the Lees in such a Cask as you may draw it off without disturbing the Bottom or Settlings; then season a Cask well, and dry it with a lighted Rag that has been dipped in Brimstone, fastned to the end of a Stick, and held in the Cask: then air it well abroad, and put the Wine unto it, and stop it up close 44 hours, then give it a venting or purging hole with a Gimlet, and after a day or two stop that, and let it continue in the Cask or Bottle, and it will prove as good in two Months or ten Weeks as any French Wine.

*To make Wine of Cherries.*

**T**Ake away the Stalks and Stones of your Cherries, and bruise them with a round wooden Ladle, or your hands very clean wash'd, and when they have stood about 24 hours, and fermented, make a Bag of two clean Napkins or other fine Linnen, and holding it over a great earthen Crock, or a wooden Vessel, pour the pulp and juice into it, and hang the Bag over the Vessel, that as much as will may voluntarily drain; pour that out, and then press out the rest and strain it; then let it stand a while, and scum off what Froth arises: after that, pour it off by Inclination, and put it up into your Cask sweet and well season'd, adding a quarter of a pound of Loaf-Sugar to a Pottle or two quarts, and it will deepen the Colour; and when it has fermented, settled, and grown



fire, draw it off into Bottles, tying them over with Leather when corked, to keep the Corks tight, and the strength from flying out, and in 10 or 12 days it will be excellent cooling Wine, but the longer the better.

*To make a good wine of Currants.*

**P**ick the Currants, when they are full and ripe, clean from the Stalks, put them into an earthen Vessel, and pour on them hot Water, a quart to a gallon of Currants, bruise them well together, and let them stand and ferment; then after covering close about 12 hours, strain them as the Cherries: put the Liquor up into a Cask, put to it a little new Ale Yeast, two or three spoonfuls; and in other things, in all respects as the Cherry-wine: and when it has purg'd and well settled, bottle it up.

*To make excellent Goosberry-Wine.*

**T**Ake the ripest Goosberries, deprive them of the stalk and blossom, and pour to a gallon a quart of hot Water wherein a slic'd Quince has been boild, and some of the Goosberries; cover them 24 hours in a very close Vessel, then bruise them with the Water, and press out the liquid part by degrees, so that the Stones may not be broken: then to a gallon put a pound of Loaf sugar, and when there is a good Settlement in an earthen Jar or other Vessel close stop'd, draw it off into Bottles, and it will keep good all the Summer and Winter.

*To make Raspberry-Wine.*

**T**Ake the Raspberries clear from the Stalk, to a gallon put a pottle of White-wine, and let them infuse in an earthen Vessel two or three days close covered; then bruise the Berries in the Wine, and through a fine linnen

Bag strain and gently by degrees squeeze out the liquid part, let it gently simmer over a very moderate Fire, or place a Stern in which it is, on hot Wood-ashes or Embers, scum off the Froth or what else arises, strain it again, and with a quarter of a pound of Loaf-sugar to a gallon, let it settle; then in half a pint of White-wine boile about an ounce of well-scented Cinamon, and two or three Blades of Mace, and put the Wine strained from the Spices into it, and bottle it up, and so it will prove an excellent Drink and Cordial.

*To make Mulberry-Wine.*

**T**AKE Mulberries just growing to be ripe, that is, when they are changing from Red to Black, to a gallon put a quart of Rhenish-wine, let them infuse in a close Vessel 40 hours, and then in all respects use them as the Raspberries: and it will be a great Cooler in hot Weather, and a Cordial in hot Diseases. If the Liquid be too thick, or encline to roeping, at any time, even when you drink it, you may add more Wine as best suits your Palate, and so you will find it answer your Cost and Labour.

*To make Wine of Services.*

**T**HIS, though not usual, is very pleasant and cordial; and to make it, Take the Services from the stalks when they begin to be soft, bruise them with your hands that you may not break the stones, infuse them in warm Sherry, a Gallon of them in two quarts, and as much clear Small-beer, then strain and press out the Liquid part, fine it, and put powder of White-sugarcandy a quarter of a pound to a Gallon, and bottle it up for use.

Thus



Thus having gone through whatever I conceive material to be practised for Advantage and Improvement in an Orchard, &c. I shall proceed to the like in the Delicacies of Gardening, as to what relates to Profit and Pleasure: which will be my succeeding Task in such a degree, that nothing in Print has hitherto come near it by many degrees.

---

---

O F  
GARDENING:

And first of the

*Kitchin* -- GARDEN.

What is necessary to be done and observed therein for Setting, Sowing, Rearing, and Bringing to Perfection Seeds, Herbs, Plants, Roots, &c.

---

C H A P. I.

*Of the Soil, Site, and Form of a Plat of Ground futable to be improved for a Kitchin-Ground.*

**T**HE main thing in this, as in the former, is to find out a fitting Plat of Ground; and if it be not fertile of it self, so to cultivate and manure it, as it may answer your Expectati-



ons, and in this especially, at first there must be a great care taken, or you may bestow much labour and cost to little purpose.

The Soil of an Orchard and Garden may be said only to differ in this, that the Soil of the latter must be somewhat dryer than the former, because Herbs and Flowers being mostly more tender than Trees, cannot well endure too much Moisture or Drought in such excessive measures as Trees will do; and therefore choosing a moderate dry Soil, if Drought come, it is easier remedied than to take away Wetness that infests the Ground from Springs or the lowness of its lying, whereby it receives and keeps long the Rain-water.

The Soil of your Garden must be plain and well levelled at every Square, to be cast into the fittest Form; and the Reason is, the Garden-product wanting such Help as should stay the Water, which an Orchard hath, and the Roots of Herbs being mellow or loose, is soon either washed away, or lose their Vigour by too much washing and moisture.

Again, if a Garden-soil be not clear of Weeds, especially of Knot-grass, it will never produce any thing handly; and as the Richness or Barrenness of the Soil appears to produce, so manure less or more, at first digging it up a full Spit or something more, and trenching in the Dung; so that upon the falling of Showers it may soak indifferently alike to fertilize the whole Mass, or such Parts as your particular-Materials require: and to keep down the Weeds, sow Ashes mingled with a little slack'd Lime, which will also destroy Worms and other Insects that infest Walks, Allies, Borders, devouring the Seed in the Earth, or the tender Roots or Leaves of Plants when sprung up. This must be done in October or November, that all things may be well prepared against the Spring, having your Tools and Instruments always in a Readiness, that no Occasion may be omitted to facilitate the Work in its proper Season.

As for the Site of your Garden, it may be the same with that of your Orchard, seeing they both tend to one end, of Profit and Pleasure; however, the leveler

it lies, the more commodiously it produces. It must not be much exposed to bleak Winds, for there are many tender Herbs, Flowers, and Plants, necessary to be sowed, set, or planted, which will not live if that be admitted, and few will well prosper; and therefore the Garden-plat must be well fenced and secured from the North and North-east Winds, especially with high Walls or good Quicksets, well lined and thickened with Shrubs at the bottom, not only to keep out the Cold, but Cats, Dogs, Hares, Conies, and other things that greatly annoy Gardens, especially in their first propagating, by breaking or spoiling the tender Plants or Flowers; as likewise do Poultry, which must not be permitted to enter.

Let your Garden-plat be designed, as near as you can, in a good wholesome Air, not near any Fenney or Marshy places, or any other whence Damps, Fogs, or Stenches may arise, or blasting infectious Airs, to blite or poison the Plants, Herbs, or Flowers.

As for the Form of the whole Plat of Ground, the Square is accounted most commodious; next that the Oval, then Oct-angular; but here I can set no general Rule, because every Ground cannot be accordingly proportioned, and therefore it must be done as the Conveniency will admit; but as for special Forms, in the lesser Gardens, they are divided into many, and particularly Squares; and of these Knots, and other Fancies, there are as many Devices as the Gardeners Invention will admit of; for which the Skilful are to be commended in bringing with them Boards nailed to Stakes driven well in the Ground into various curiou Figures, or to do it naturally by setting of Box, Hysop, Privet, Marjorum, Savory, Lavender, Draff, Rosemary, or the like, in various Circling, Intwining, or Mazy Forms; so that Herbs, Flowers, and curious Greens, may grow in their proper order Exceeding delightful to the Eye. These may be made of green turf planted with double Dazies or Violets, made up with Brick, Tile, Trotter Bones, or the like; but they are best raised with Boards: And indeed in Knots there are great Varieties, as, the Diamond-squares, or Ground Plat; for Knots, the Cinquefoil, or many mazy Branches like the Leaves  
of



of Cinquefoil ; the Cross-bow or four Bendings from the out-sides of the Square like the heads or bendings of Cross-bows, with a Diamond and a Square at the middle of it, and other Flourishes to fill up the Vacancies of the Angles and Bends ; the Interwoven, or Knot-flourished Diamond ; The Oval ; The Maze, or Labyrinth ; and many more, which in words cannot be well Expressed, but rather require Figures, being far more obvious to the Eye than to the Ear, and of which I shall have more occasion to speak when I come to treat of Choice Flowers, &c. And therefore at present I shall proceed to other Matters.

---

*Further Directions for the well-ordering this kind of Garden in many material particulars : In its Sight and furnishing with Herbs, Plants, &c.*

**A**S for the Quantity of a Plat of Ground to make a sutable Garden there can be no particular Rules given, but every one may take such a proportion of Ground as conveniency will admit : but let me caution all, not to undertake more than can be well looked after with hands enough, for the well Management of things in their proper Seasons ; for a small plat of Ground well ordered, turns to greater Advantage than a large one neglected, or that upon sundry Occasions cannot be so well compassed in due time : for if the Weeds get the mastery for want of hands to rid them, it will not be easy to root them out : also watering a large Garden in droughthy Weather requires much time and pains ; and therefore my Opinion is, that one of a moderate quantity of good Ground is to be preferred, and may produce a Sufficiency of Herbs and Roots for use, and a Supply for the Market. But to come nearer to the intended Purpose.

Herbs are of two sorts, one for Scent and pleasant Prospect, the other for Food ; and therefore it is proper they be

be sowed or planted separate, and not too much mingled together, to hinder each others growth by the greater's overtopping and shadowing the lesser: and therefore the Garden for Flowers and curious Herbs ought to be separated from the Kitchen-Garden by some distinction (tho one Plat of Ground may contain them both) because your Garden-flowers will not only suffer Disgrace, but be annoyed, if among them you sow Onions, Lettice, Carrots, Parsnips, and the like, which drawn in their due Season, must moreover leave Roughness and Deformity on the Earth, and if not set at convenient Distances, take up the Roots of the Flowers with them, and make a Confusion and Disorder where Order and Comeliness should be: besides, the times of setting and ordering them are various, and the Ground being much stirred for the planting the one, injures the other; Cabages, Colliflowers, Colworts, and the like, making great Shadows to keep out the Sunbeams: Asparagus, and the like, runs its Root much spreading, which drawing up, brings away with it those lesser Plants and Flowers it has undermined or entangled: and so many other things which in their fading time are to be drawn, and others planted in their steads. And in the Kitchen-Garden you need not be at the trouble to raise your Beds so high as in the Summer-Garden, yet it is requisite you leave Alleys to go between, for the Advantage of Weeding, and gathering what is necessary in due season, without treading on or any ways bruising what remains, for these kind of Herbs and Roots will go deeper into the Ground, as requiring more wet than the other, and will better endure it: yet here you must observe to place your Herbs of the biggest growth by themselves, that all may have a proportion of the Sun's Heat, and the freeness of the Air, to make them thrive, and come kindly on for use, setting the biggest in the out-parts of Squares or Borders, and the lowest in the middle.



The several Growths of Herbs and Plants distinguished, to know the better how to place them.

**T**Hough Garden Herbs, Flowers, &c. are various and very numerous, yet in some measure they may be divided into two sorts; and briefly thus:

Of the Tallest Growth are,

*Angelica, Fennel, Tansy, Holly-hocks, Elecampane, Loveage, Succory, Lillies, French Poppy, Endine, French Mallows, Clary, and such like.*

Of the Middle Growth are,

*Alexanders, Cardus, Benedictus, Langdibief, Oculus Christi, Aniseeds, Coriander, Featherfew, Wallflowers, Gilliflowers, Bugtoss, Parsley, Marigolds, Beets, Berage, Lavender, Camfry, and the like.*

Of the Smaller Growth are,

*Parsly, Hearts-ease, Marjorum, Savory, Leeks, Chives, Chibbats, Liquorice, Strawberries, Hysop, Peniroyal, Scurvy-grass, Time, Wood-sorrel, and many others, too tedious here to enumerate, and therefore I have given these as a Taste, and many others will follow in their due place. In the most sunny places of your Garden place the tenderest Plants, or such as you would have very forward; observing to keep them as warm as their Nature requires, either with Soil or Covering; when sharp Winds are abroad, the Weather is nipping, or that Blites or Blasts are expected.*

*Sundry*

*Sundry sorts of useful Herbs, their Encrease, well-Ordering, and Preserving, &c.*

IT will now be convenient that I give Instructions for the well-Ordering and Renewing Herbs, &c. proper for the Kitchen-Garden. And of these in order.

*Angelica* is renewed, with the Seed which it bears in plenty, the second Year, and then fades. You may remove the Roots the first Year: and in this manner you may use *Alexanders*.

*Aniseeds* make their growth the first Year, and bear much Seed, by which they must be renewed the next: and also *Coriander*.

*Borage* and *Bugloss* are wholesome Pot-herbs, and very cordial Herbs otherwise used: they are also renewed by Seed.

*Camomile* will easily grow, being set of divided Roots on Banks not too moist; and the more it is pressed, the better it will thrive.

*Chibals*, or *Chives*, part in the Root like *Lillies*, and must be renewed by transplanting the smaller Roots every 3d or 4th Year.

*Clary* is produced of the Seed, and seeds every second Year.

*Coast-root* parted may be set in *March*, and then it will bear the 2d Year.

*Elecampane* and *Lovage* are long lasting; they seed yearly, and in transplanting you may divide the Roots.

*Endive*, *Succory*, and *Fennel*, divide their Roots, and you may remove them before they put forth their Shanks.

*Featherfew* encreases by the shedding its Seed, without sowing.

*Hyssop* may be set by Slips or young Roots, and is long lasting, growing indifferently in most grounds.

*Leeks* seed the second Year unremoved, yet, unless you then remove them, they die.

La-



*Lavender Spike* is proper to be removed every seven or eight Years: Slips twined of these, as also *Hyssop* and *Sage*, take Root, if set warm, at *Michaelmas*. *White Lavender* must be sooner removed or transplanted.

*Lettice* seeds the first Year, and dies; yet you may transplant them for Winter-Lettice, and prevent their running to Seed.

*Mallows*, French or Jagged, seed the first or second Year. Sow them in *March*.

*Marigolds* are usually produced of Seeds, and you may transplant them when two Inches grown.

*Oculus Christi* seeds and dies the first Year.

*Parsley* is sown of Seed the first Year, and seeds the second.

*Pennyroyal* or *Pudding-grass* lasts long, spreading duly new Roots, which may be divided into multitudes, and removed, and is an excellent Pot-herb.

*Rosemary* may be improved by Seed, or set in Slips, immediately after *Laramas tide*, in a moist good Earth.

*Rue*, or *Herb of Grace*, is an excellent Preserver of Health, as also *Carduus*; this will grow of Slips.

*Saffron* is proper for this Garden, as being a great Cordial at need. Remove the Roots every three Years: it flowers at *Michaelmas*, when the Chives of *Saffron* must be gathered.

*Sage* may be kept from seeding, by cutting the aspiring tops; then it will spread, encrease in Leaves and Sprouting.

*Savory* seeds the first Year, and dies.

*Sweet Sicily* is either to be sown of Seeds, or the dividing of Roots; and transplanting, it lasts long.

*Thyme* may be encreased either of Slips, Roots, or Seeds; and if you let it not run to Seed, which you may prevent by topping, it will last 3 or 4 Years at least.

*Sweet Marjorum* is produced best by Seeds, but not lasting; seeding and dying the first Year mostly.

*Charvel* is improved of Seed, and will continue some time.

*Tansy*, or *Garden-Mint*, are easily propagated by Seeds or divided Roots, and will flourish and continue a long time.

time. And though there are others I might set down, let this suffice as a sufficient Store for this kind of Garden.

### *Rules in general for ordering Herbs, &c.*

**I**N setting Herbs, ever observe to leave the Tops no more than a handful above the ground, and the Roots a foot under the Earth.

Twine the Roots of Herbs you set, unless too brittle. Observe always to sow dry, and set moist.

Set Slips without Shanks at any time except very hot Weather, as about *Midsummer*, and in hard Frosts; and prevent such from seeding as you would have continue long, for that weakens and decays the Root by drawing the Heat from it.

Gather Herbs when the Sap is full in the top of them.

Place *Pennyroyal*, *Camomile*, *Daisies*, &c. on Banks.

*Artichokes*, *Cabages*, *Parsnips*, *Carrots*, *Saffron*, *Skirt-roots*, *Onions*, *Colliflowers*, *Colworts*, *Savoys*, &c. require whole Plats of ground for their better thriving; though, set at distance, they may be interlined with other things of low growth. Gather all your Seeds ripe and dry, and lay not heaps of Dung to the Roots of Herbs, lest the Over-rankness burn them up.

Set Herbs and Plants distant according to the greatness or smallness of them.

Such Herbs as you intend to gather for drying to keep for Use all the Winter, do it about *Lammastide*: dry them in the Shade, that the Sun draw not out their Virtue, but in a clear Air, and brezy Wind, that no Mustiness may taint them; then on Lines hang the Bundles pretty thin cross a Room where usually there is a Fire made in the Winter.

Thus far having directed you in what is most material for the furnishing and ordering the *Kitchen-Garden*, as to Herbs, &c. I shall now shew you what is proper to be done relating to Roots and other things, not, or but very lightly, touched on.



*Of Roots proper for the Kitchen-Garden, their well-Ordering and Improvement.*

**R**oots are one of the main things to be considered in a Kitchen-Garden; and the chief of these for Sweetness and good Nourishment is the

*Parsnip.* This is proper to be sown in the Spring, in rich and well-stir'd mellow Soil that is deep dug, so that their Roots, with little Interruption, may descend, and grow in compass: and when you perceive they are grown to some Bigness, tread down the tops, that the Roots may grow the larger. In the Winter-season, when you take them out of the ground, beware of cutting them: Take off the Mould clean; and if you are to keep them, you may put them in Sand, which will preserve them a long time: The fairest you may let go to Seed to supply another Crop, trenching and mellowing the ground in which you sow them, to keep them as much as may be from Wet.

The *Skirt-root* is a very sweet Root, much nourishing, and provocative: It is well raised in a light and fat Mould, which may be done of Slips planted in Rows or Ranges in the Spring-time, about half a foot distance. In Winter, when you take up the Roots, it will not be amiss that you lay the Tops in the Earth till the Spring, for your further Encrease.

*Radishes* are easily produced of Seed, yet require a good black mellow Mould, that they may grow large and deep, and such Ground as no Soakings or Spewings of Water are in, to rot or spoil them.

*Potatoes*, in a good fat Garden-mould thrive amain, and if the Roots be accidentally cut with a Spade, or otherwise, each part of it will grow, and recovering the Wound, turn to a perfect Root: and so little Care they require, when once well taken in the Ground, that they can hardly be got out.

*Jerusalem Artichokes* are somewhat of the Nature of *Potatoes*, but more soft and fleshy when boiled, and will grow as *Potatoes* in any good Mould, and continue without renewing for many years; and to propagate these, set them with a Stick, the growing End upward.

*Onions* are necessary for Sallets or (strewed with Pot-herbs) Broth, Sawces, or divers others Uses. They best thrive in a fat warm Soil, and are proper to be sown in *March*, or the beginning of *April*; for if sown sooner, they must be covered at first to keep them from the Chills of Extream cold; and where they grow very thick, they must be drawn whilst young, for the Use of the Kitchen, or be transplanted; and when they are grown to a reasonable Bigness, you may tread down the Spindles or Stalks, that the Root may yet grow bigger. They prosper well when sown with Bay-salt, and are fit to be drawn the Latter end of *August* in a dry season; and being rubbed clean, tyed in Bunches, and hung up in a moderate dry Out-house, or laid thin on Straw, that so being well dried they may be made up in Bundles or Ropes, or disposed of by Measure, as the Custom for Sale is; some of the largest you may let stand for Seed, to gain a fresh Supply the next Season.

*Garlick* is a very useful-Root in many cases, but most Physical. In any rich ground it prospers with little more regard than sowing or setting taken of it. It produces in a little time a wonderful Encrease, and despises the Injury of Weather above all Roots: and if the Tops be kept down, the Roots will grow much the larger.

*Turnips*, though usually growing in the Field, yet prosper best in a good Garden soil, being propagated from the Seed; and when they come up, which may be earlier or later, as you sow them, they must be howed, and kept pretty thin, the better to propagate. Sow a little slacked Lime with the Seeds, to keep the Insects from destroying them on the Ground, or to prevent worm-eaten Roots; or if the Caterpillar, Slug, or Snail, take the new-sprung Plants, do the like upon them, and a few Showers will bring them up apace. When you draw them, leave the largest for Seed.



*Beans, Pease, Artichokes, Asparagus, Cabages, Colliflowers, Savoys, Lettice, &c. to order and improve.*

**B**Beans are proper to the Kitchen-Garden: set them in distant Rows in the outmost parts of it with a setting stick. They thrive best in rich stiff Land, and are to be put in, to make them forward and large, about five or six inches in the ground, between St. Andrew's Day and Christmas, observing to do it at the Wane of the Moon, especially in an open Winter; but if the Frost comes hard after your Beans are sowed, it will go near to destroy them, or stint their growth when come up: and therefore if you apprehend this Danger, you may delay your setting them till Candlemas. Set them at an equal distance one from another by a Line, that they may have room to grow up without encumbering each other, and the Air pass more freely between them; as also the Sun's warm Beams to mature them. Range them for a better conveniency of the Sun, from South to North; and between the Ranges, for the better Improvement of the ground, you may sow Carrots, Lettice, Beets of the like.

To make Beans grow well, if you sow them in the Spring, steep them in water where in Cow-dung and the Dregs of Oyl have been well mixed: When they first put hoe the Earth, to refresh the tender Stalks, and cut up the Weeds that incumber them, when they have podded, cut off the Tops, which will make an Excellent dish boiled and buttered; besides, the Pods and Beans will be the larger, having the more Juyce to nourish them from the Root: strip not off those that are first ripe, for that wounds the Stalk and hinders growth of other Pods, but rather cut them off with a Knife.

Garden Pease, for Forwardness, Largeness, and Sweetness, above those of the Field, are in great Esteem; and

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 97

of these there are several sorts that may be sown or set, some for Earliness, others for Largeness and Pleasantness of Taste, others for their Lateness, when the usual sort is out of Season. The *Hotspur's* become the soonest ripe of all others from their time of sowing: To these succeed the large White Pease; after them the large White Hastings; and after them the large *Rounceval*: then later than these come those called, from their Sweetness, Sugar-Pease, which in their Pods are much coveted by the Birds, and therefore must, as much as can, be kept from them.

As for the Ground these best thrive in, if you would have them large it must be a rich Mould; but they will prove more tender and sweet in a warm ordinary Soil.

As for those you design early, sow them the latter End of September or Beginning of October, that so before the Frost takes them they may get good Sprouting, and some Head; and if the Slugs or White Snails come upon them, scatter Lime on the Rills, and it will both destroy them, and keep the Roots warm from the Frost.

If you would have a latter Crop of Pease, sow them a little before *Midsummer*, after a Shower has fall'n, or the Earth be moist with the descending of the Dews: Lay them deeper then the former in your Rills, that the Sun may not too much take away the Moisture of the Earth from them: When they come up, draw the Earth to them with a Hoe, and keep the Alleys free from Weeds; and so do twice or thrice, till they have got a head and overcome the Weeds: and thus they will come to Perfection, and be fit for the Table in September. As for *Rouncevals*, you may set them with a Stick as you do Beans; and if you would have them grow big, crop off the Tops, which will make an excellent boil'd Sallet; and set some Bushes or Sticks in the Rows or Intervals that their Spines may take hold on, and the easier raise the weight of the Haws from the Ground, that the Sun may ripen the Pods the better, and bring the Pease to a larger and fuller Perfection than otherwise, lying on the Ground, they would be. *French*, or *Kidney-beans*, are very necessary for furnishing out the Kitchen-Garden with wholesome Food in the proper



## 8 The New Art of Gardening.

**Season.** These are to be set in a mellow Ground; set them with Setting-sticks, as other Beans; and when they spring up, set Wands with Snags or Branches to twist about, that they may rise and spread more to the Sun for ripening the Pods: if when they grow up in Summer the Weather be very dry, water them, or the Stalks will pine for want of moisture, and not produce the desired Effect. The Snails are great annoyers of these Beans, and therefore while they are tender they must be looked well after, and cleared of them.

**Artichokes** are greatly in Esteem for their good Taste and pleasant Nourishment, and their lasting a long Season, yet there is difficulty required in raising and bringing them to bear a full Largeness; but briefly take the following Directions.

Prepare the Ground very well, and tend to raise the plants in, mix it very deep with good mellow Dung, trench it well, and raise a little, laying it pretty light; then for Plants take the Slips that grow by the sides of the Roots of the old Stubs, which plant about the beginning of April or sooner if the great Frosts are over; and you must take care to water them till they are firmly rooted, when kindly Rains fall, and the Season be very dry; plant them about four foot asunder, if in a Rich Ground, that they may spread, and their Heads be the larger: but if you Expect not large ones, by reason the Soil will not produce them you may plant them nearer.

To preserve the Root for sending up new Shools, when the Fruit is cut, leave the Stalks about four Inches from the Ground, raise the Earth lightly about them to keep them warm in the Winter, and afterward, covering them with Litter, Straw, or long Dung, yet not too close, to moulder or rot them; and when the Winter is past, uncover them by little and little, at three different times, with about four days Interval between, lest the Air coming too suddenly to them, Injure them, being as yet tender.

This done, dress, dig about them, and trim them very well, taking off the small Slips to transplant, not leaving about three of the strongest and most likely thriving to the foot of each Root for Bearers, and supply the Roots as deep

deep as conveniently you can, with good fat Mould. Every fifth Year it is proper to renew the whole Plantation, because too long standing in one place, Impoverishes the Earth that it produces but small Choaks; yet in good deep mellow Ground you may permit them to continue, if you see fit, till eight Years or longer.

*Asparagals* makes another dainty Dish, and is highly necessary to be planted in the Kitchen-Garden. This is raised of Seed, requiring a good fat Soil, and at two Years growth may be transplanted into Beds.

These Beds must be well prepared with Dung, first digging about two foot deep and four wide, made level at the bottom; and so with some of the Mould mix good rotten Dung, and fill them up, considering it will sink: then at about two foot distance put in the Plants; and in each a Bed you may plant three or four Rows, and in time they will extend themselves throughout the whole Bed.

Let them take good Root before you cut them, that the shoots may grow up strong and large and not be stunted or stubbed with unseasonable cutting: the small ones you may leave, that the Roots may grow bigger, permitting those that spring up at the end of the Season to run to Seed, which will turn to good Advantage.

At the beginning of the Winter, when you have cut up the Stalks, cover the Beds four or five fingers thick with good Mould mixed with good new Horse-dung, which will preserve the Roots from the Frost, and about the middle of *March*, if the hard Frosts are over, uncover the Beds, and spread good fresh Mould over them about two fingers thick, or somewhat more, and lay the Dung in the Halls, or some place near them, that it may rot, and be in a Readiness to renew them when occasion requires.

If you take the *Asparagus* Roots about the beginning of *January*, and plant them on a hot Bed with good distances from the Frost, the Weather being open, and the Sun any thing warm, you may have *Asparagus* at *Canalemas*; when you cut the *Asparagus*, remove a little of the Earth from about the bottom, and cut as near the Root as you can; but beware you do not cut or wound those that are



peeping up, or not yet appearing above the Earth. *Colliflowers* take a due place in this Garden; and of these you may either sow the Seeds in *August*, and carefully preserve them from the Injuries of Winter, or you may raise them on your leaf Beds in the Spring, and remove the young Plants, when they have indifferent large Leafs, into good Ground prepared for the purpose: but the approved way is to dig small pits, and fill them with good light Mould, and therein plant your *Colliflowers*, which you must take great care to water, especially in dry Seasons.

*Cabages* are another great Advantage, and these are of several Colours and Forms; though in this place I shall take notice of the ordinary Country Cabbage only, and of others elsewhere.

Sow the Seed at any convenient time between *Midsummer* and *Michaelmas*, so that growing up whilst the Weather is warm, it may gain strength to defend it self against the violence of the Winter, which is however many times too sharp for them; or you may raise them on hot Beds in the Spring: Transplant them in *April* unto well stirred and good Rich Mould; and to have them large, it must be warm and light Soil, and they must daily be watered till they have taken good Root, though ordinary Ground well digged and manured will produce store. The Seed you reserve must be of the best Cabages, placed during the Winter low in the Ground; To preserve them from the sharp Winds and Frosts, cover them with earthen Pots and warm Soil over the Pots; and when the Spring comes, plant them forth.

*Savoys* are a kind of Cabages, though not coming to the Firmness and Magnitude of the other, yet are Sweeter and earlier than the common Cabbage; and this may be planted and raised as the other; also may the small Dutch Cabbage and the long loose Cabbage of a Muskey Scent, and the sweetest of all others.

Pumpions or Pumpkins are very useful in many cases, and to raise them plant the Seed first in a good Mould in a warm place, and when they are fairly risen, transplant them into a Dung-bed made to that end, and now and then water them

them with water wherein Pigeons Dung has been steeped, and then about blossoming time take away all the by-shoots, leaving one or two main Vines or Runners, and beware not to hurt the Heads of them, and this small weed, as I may term it, will produce fruit of a prodigious bigness.

Lettice cannot be omitted in this Garden, as being an excellent cooling Sallad raw or boiled, and is easily raised of the seed growing in any tolerable good ground. If you have a desire to have them white, or as the French term it to blanch them, then when they are headed and begin to Cabbage, bind them about in a fair day when the dew is off them with straws, or raw Hemp, cover the Plants with small Earthen pots, and lay some Soil on them, and so they will become white.

Beets are of singular use, being a very wholesome Pot-herb, they must be sowed, and then transplanted into a fat Soil, they are usually sown in the Spring, and the roots left in the ground, will produce fresh leaves many years.

*Hot Beds, how to prepare and fit them for such things as require to be set in them.*

**W**Here the ground in Garden-plats is naturally cold, Art must be used to callesie or heat it, lest in setting or sowing many Plants or seeds you lose your Labour, Charges, and what is more vexatious, your expectation.

If the Land be of a light and warm nature of it self, there is required no more than common Horse-dung or Cow-dung to be mixed with the Mould in trenching and digging, and that will sufficiently enrich it.

But where Mould inclines to a cold clay, or a ground that's stubborn or stiff, mingle some light Sand with it, or at least some light and very fertile Mould, and make a Laystall of Dung with this Compost in some convenient place, let it lye and rot, the better to mingle it, a whole Winter, and in the Spring it will prove good warm manure to cherish and enliven the roots of your Plants, or



make warm Beds by mixing it with a good quantity of the natural Soil, and the best of this kind is Sheeps-dung, that of Pigeons or Poultry.

When you have made a Bed manured with this dung well mixed with the Soil to the depth of a Spades graft, or more, rake it over as even as may be with an Iron-rake, and the Mould and dung being made fine, you may sow your seeds thereon, as Mellions, Cucumbers, Onions, Leeks, or the like, but the two former separate from the latter, then rake them in as even distance as you can, for of the first two a few seeds are sufficient, then put fine fat mould in a pretty wide Sieve, and riddle it over the seeds about an Inch or more, and the product will answer.

If you must chose a plot of ground, necessity so urging, there being no other to be had where the bleak Winds have power to beat upon it, notwithstanding all the care of Fencing, &c. Then lay your ground up in ridges a foot or two in height, somewhat upright on the back or North-side, and more sloping or shelving to the Southward, and it may be layed about three or four foot broad on that side you sow, especially tender seeds, and one bank lying behind another the ground that rises will keep off the bleak nipping Winds, so that they will in a great measure fly over the tender Plants new sprouting up, or when they are somewhat grown, and the Sun will have more force upon them to make them grow up and ripen; and this will do well where the ground is over moist, so that things affecting moisture may be set low, and things of a drier bearance higher.

In *February*, or earlier you may make a hot Bed for Cucumbers, Mellions, Radishes, Colliflowers, &c. in the warmest place of your ground, defended from winds as much as may by Pails, Walls, or Reed-fences, about six or seven foot high, of such a distance or capacity as the occasion requires; then you must raise your Bed about two or three foot high, and about three or four over, of new Hogs-dung, or at least, not above six, eight or ten days old, treading it very hard down on the top; and the better to keep up the sides, if there be occasion, place Boards, lay fine rich mould about three or four Inches thick, and  
when

when the extream ferment or heat of the Bed is over, which you may perceive at the end of five or six days by thrusting in your Fing, then set or sow your seeds as the magnitude or nature of them requires.

This done, erect some little forked sticks four or five Inches above the Bed that may support the frame of sticks, which must be layed over, and then covered with straw, defend the Plants or seeds from the wet and cold, only in a warm day you may open your covering an hour before, and after noon, and when they shoot still earth them up to keep the lower part warm, and when they are pretty well grown, and the season enables them to bear the weather, you may transplant them.

*Watering, the proper times; and what Plants, Herbs, &c. most require it, and in what Seasons.*

**W**ATERING is one thing exceeding necessary, and some Plants require it much more than others, or especially in dry Seasons they would be burnt up, they must be minded with water on their first removal, at whatsoever season it be, and therefore not to be neglected, tho' early in the Spring, yet be cautious in watering the Leaves of the young and tender Plants, rather confine it to the earth about the root, lest the heat mildew and injure them.

When the Plants or Seeds are more hardy, yet you find the nights very cold, water in the Forenoon, but when the nights are warm, and the weather warm, let it be done in the Evening after Sun-set; you may mix your water with a little fine mould, to take away the harshness of it; if it be Spring-water, or be drawn from some cold pit or Well, let it stand in the Sun in Tubs to heat and air well, but Pond or River-water is more soft and natural to Plants or Herbs; and the better to fatten it, and render it more acceptable, you may infuse in it Hens-dung, Pigeons, or Sheeps-dung, and it will better enliven your Plants. For Plants that are, or are to be large, as



Cabages, Colliflowers, Artichoaks, &c. you may let the ground sink a little like the indenting of an Oyshell, that the water may the more directly press to the root, yet excess of watering is dangerous, for over-abundance will be apt to wash the Vegetive fertile Salt out of the ground about the root of the Plant, and impoverish it.

And you had better water seldom, and do it thoroughly well, than often, and do it scanty, for if the water comes not to the bottom of the root, that the Fibres may suck moisture, it little avails.

If the season or ground be very dry, when you sow seeds, sow them somewhat deeper, but water them not till they have been in the ground several days, and it is well settled about them.

When you transplant, water the Plant in setting, but not superabundantly, lest it chill the root or ground too much.

Observe that the water run not into Puddles, but be well and equally distributed with a watering Pot, or other Vessel that has a Sievey Nose, and by that means it will be sprinkled softly, not forcing up the earth, but delating and gradually sinking into it to refresh the Plants, &c.

*The several sorts of Strawberries, the manner of Setting, Transplanting, and Improving them.*

**S**trawberries are very material to be produced, for the furnishing out of Banquets, and many other things, and of these there are divers sorts worthy of a Gardeners Care.

The great sort thrive excellent well in new broken Beds, or in such places as they have not before grown, especially on the sides of Mellow-banks, where the force of the Sun is convenient to nourish them.

As for the ordinary red ones, you may furnish your self with store of their roots in new fallen Copfis, or in stand-  
ing.

## With the Gardener's Almanack, 105

ing Woods where Vacancies or Avenues lye open to the Sun.

The ordinary red and white Strawberries may be either planted in Beds, or the sides of Banks as your Garden gives most conveniency, and will hold there for a long time, but the large ones must be kept stringed and removed every two or three years, and they require not so much the Sun-beams as the other; they delight much in a Sandy Soil, and the best Plants are such as come of the strings, if well planted and ordered.

There are a sort of Green Strawberries, though not so common use, and but in few places to be found, and they lye on the ground under the slender and tall Leafs, very green in colour, and sweet in taste.

There is yet another sort, a very excellent scarlet-colour, such as they call *New England*, and there abound in great plenty; but here they will grow well, as has been proved in divers curious Gardens, delighting in a mellow fat Soil somewhat sandy.

To preserve these several sorts over the Winter, that they may come earlier and prove better, cover them from the Frosts with a little Straw, Peashawm, or such like shelter; and if you would have Strawberries in *Autumn* cut away the first blossoms, and being hindred blowing in the Spring, they will blow anew much later, and bear in the latter season.

To make Strawberries very large; when they have done bearing, cut them to the ground, keep their Spires down, strew Cow-dung or Pigeons-dung on them, and water them after it.

---

F S



---

THE  
GARDENER'S  
ALMANACK:

OR,

Things proper to be done in  
the *Kitchen-Garden* in the  
several Months of the Year.

---

Aquarius ♒, or the Skinker.

JANUARY.

*What is required to be done in the Kitchen  
Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month prepare Dung for your Garden; and  
the Dung of Pidgeons or Poultry is excellent for  
Asparagus and Strawberries, &c. when it has pas-  
sed the first Heat.

Dress

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 107

Dress your Sweet-herb Beds rather every second Year with new Mould, than Dung or over-strong or rank Soil; Dig Borders, set Beans and Pease; sow, if you think convenient, for early Colliflowers; sow Lettice, Radishes, Charvil, and other more curious Salleting: and if you see it convenient, raise your hot Beds,

Set up Traps for Vermin among bulkous Roots, that will now be in danger.

---

Pisces ♉, or the Fishes.

F E B R U A R Y.

*Things required to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month sow Beans, Pease, Rouncevals, Marigolds, Corn, Salleting, Radish, Parsnips, Aniseeds, Garlick, Onions, Carrots: plant forth your Cabages, also Potatoes, which may be set in some Corner in the worst of your Ground: sow Parsly, Spinage, and hardy Pot-herbs that will endure the Weather. Still plant Colliflowers; to have them early; make a Beginning of your hot Beds for choice Plants, as Cucumers, Mellons, to be sowed in the Full of the Moon, but rely not altogether on them. Sow Asparagus, &c.

Things of the last Month are yet in season; and indeed most Winter Roots and Plants continue the Winter Months, except spoiled by excessive Rains, melting of Snow-water, or violent Extremity of Frosts, which however rarely falls out in all Gardens, and may be prevented by Care.



Aries ♈, or the Ram.

MARCH.

*Things necessary to be done in the Kitchen Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month dung and trench well your Ground where it is required; and it is the most proper and chiefest Season for raising hot Beds for Gourds, Mellons, Cucumbers, &c. which about the sixth, eighth, or tenth Day, will be in a good liking to receive the Seeds: prick them forth at a distance according to a true Method.

If you design them later, ten or twelve days after the first begin again, and proceed to the like a third time, ever remembring to keep your hot Beds as much as may be from Showers, the droppings of Trees or Eaves of Houses; for if the Heat be too violent, you may easily cool them, but not add Heat when once spent, without new making up again.

Slip and set Lavender, Sage, Thyme, Rosemary, and other lasting Herbs, Shrubs, &c.

Sow in the Beginning of this Month, Endive, Leeks, Radish, Succory, Beets, Chard-Beet, Parsnips, Skerrets, the latter in fresh Earth, that is rich and mellow; when pretty moist, place but one Root in a Hole, keeping a foot distance between them.

You may now sow Sorrel, Parsly, Bugloss, Charvil, Borage, Sallery, Smallage, Alexander, &c. and several of these will continue many Years without renewing, and most of them may be blanched by earthing up, and laying Litter over them.

Sow likewise Onions, Garlick, Orach, Purslain, Turnips, (to have early) monthly Pease, &c. Transplant

Best.

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 109

Beet-Chard sowed in *August*, and the Chards will be very large.

Sow Cresses, Fennel, Marjorum, Carrots, Cabages, Basil, &c. But whatever of these sorts you plant or sow, be not very hasty in watering them, nor too much, by reason it will close and harden the Ground; therefore in watering, do it not with too great a Stream, but rather labour to imitate the fall of moderate Showers.

About the middle of this Month dress up and string the Strawberry-beds, uncover Asparagus, loosning and spreading the Mould about them, the better to give them Ease in penetrating: And now you may transplant their Roots to furnish new Beds.

Stake and bind up your weakest Herbs or Plants against the Violence of Winds that usually happen in this Month. Sow Lapins and such Seeds as the Spring requires to bring forward, and keep all Weeds down as low as may be: See to the repairing the Banks or Borders in Alleys and Walks, and secure your Seeds newly sown, from Birds or Insects.

---

Taurus ♂, or the Bull

A P R I L.

*Things necessary to be done in the Kitchen Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month, about the beginning, Sow sweet Marjorum, Hyssop, Thyme, Scurvy-grass, Basil, Winter-savory, and indeed, all tender Seeds that are desirous of hot Beds. All sweet Herbs require to be stirred up and new moulded, that they may then well take fresh Root.

Sow Purslane, Colliflowers, Lettice, Raddish, and the like: you may sow Carrots and Radish together in one Bed,



Bed, but so, that one may be drawn before the other is much advanced; also Lettice, Purslane, Parsnips, and Carrots on one Ground, where the Plat is small; then you must consider to take each in its proper Season, so that one may not incumber the other; though it would be more advantageous to change the Ground for Parsnips and Carrots now and then;

Plant Artichoak Slips, sow Turnips to have them early, and set *French-beans*.

As yet you may slip Lavender, Sage, Penniroyal, Rosemary, Lavender, &c. and the more you clip them the better they will thrive, and continue the longer without transplanting, especially Sage so sowed in Spring and Autumn.

To have very good Salleting all the Year, plant Purslane, Lettice, Radish, &c. in Summer, on very rich Ground, and in Winter and Spring in hot Beds well covered; and as soon as their Leaves open to the breadth of your Thumb-nail, draw them up by the Roots, and so continue sowing them monthly.

About the middle of the Month you may make a beginning to plant forth Mellons; also Cucumers; and this you may continue to the end of the Month. After all warm Spring or Summer Showers look for Snails and Worms, and, as well as may be, clear your Garden of them. Set Lupins, Carpet-walks, and ply weeding, and speedily take away, Hoe, or pull up, lest the Weeds, &c. take Root again, and prove injurious to the Ground; for by the Cleanness of a Garden from Weeds and all such like destructive Incumbrances, not only the Industry and Proficiency of the Gardener is proved even to such as make but Visits, but also great Commodities arise thereby; for a Garden once well cleared in the Spring, saves much Labour in Summer.



Gemini II, or the Twins.

M A Y.

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month sow Marjorum, Thyme, and other hot and Aromatick Herbs, and such as are the most tender: Sow Purslane, Lettice, to have them large-sized and cabaged, painted Beans, &c.

Now take care of your Mellons; and towards the End of this Month give over to cover them any longer on Ridges with Mattraffes or Straw, &c. Continue weeding, and suffer not any to remain and run to Seed, that by the scattering of it the Garden may be the more incumbered to your Prejudice and Labour, that might have been saved at once.

You may also now lift ~~the~~ cooling Mould about the Roots of your hot Plants and Herbs, which will greatly refresh them, but so that it may not be ~~newed~~ <sup>newed</sup> on the Leafes to hinder their growth by soiling them when Showers fall, or in your watering.

As for watering, as I have said, do it at the Root, some distance, that it may leisurely soak in round about to the Fibres, &c.

## The New Art of Gardening,

Cancer ♋, or the Crab.

J U N E.

*Things to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**S**ow Charvil, Radish, Lettice, and the like, and other things for young and tender Salleting. Gather such Sweet-herbs as you intend to dry and keep for your several Uses, which may be done for the whole Year by laying them not too thin, but upon moderate heaps, which you may move and turn till they are tolerably dry, but not brittle; and this is to be done with as much Expedition as may be; and for their keeping the natural Colour, it would be well done in the Shade; however, a little of the Sun is proper, to prevent their being musty. Now Mellons and Strawberries are in season, and some other cooling things, Nature prudently providing such for the refreshing Mankind, and the kindly Preservation of Health in hot Seasons, while the hotter come seasonably in the colder Months

Leo ♌, or the Lyon.

J U L Y.

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**He Beginning of this Month sow Lettice, Radish, &c. for young and tender Salleting; also latter Pease, that



## With the Gardener's Almanack. 112

that they may be ripe in *October*: Let Herbs designed for it run to seed, and carefully save it for a new supply.

Long-sided Cabages planted in *May* may now be removed, and cut away all rotten and putrefied Leafs from them, and be yet diligent in the weeding and cleansing part of your Garden, Hoeing up the Weeds so soon as they begin to appear above the Ground; and by this means a greater riddance will be made in a little time than in a longer when they grow up Root-deep, and prove more cumbersome to the Ground: Destroy Worms and other Insects by sprinkling hot Ashes in the places they most frequent, and it will utterly destroy such as are touched by it when a little Rain descends on it: it also is a great Enemy to the Weeds, though Grass is improved by it, and it proves an excellent Manure for that purpose; but lay not on too much in hot Weather, unless much Rain falls to dissolve it and moisten the Earth; by which means it may leisurely soak in and disperse it self.

---

Virgo ♍, or the Virgin-Sign.

AUGUST.

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month sow Radishes, particularly the black ones, to prevent going up to Seed, pale-tender Cabages, Colliflowers for winter Plants, Lettice, Carrots, Corn, Sallet, Marygolds, Spinage, Turnips, Onions, Parsnips, Angelica, curled Endive, Scurvygrafs, &c.

To prevent Plants running up too hastily to Seed, draw the Root a little out of the Ground, lay them slaunting, and cover them again with fresh Mould, and by that means it will be prevented.

To



To secure Collesflowers to bear good Heads that are apt to overspread, or open flowers before their Heads can be quite perfected; take them out of the ground and bury them in some cold place, as a Cellar, and both root and stalk to the very head, and so without being exposed to the Sun, they will harden and bear firm heads.

Now take up your Onions that are well grown, as also Garlick, transplant Lettice you design shall continue for the Winter.

Gather Seeds and clip such Herbs as you design should continue well in the Winter before the Full of the Moon.

And towards the latter end of this Month sow Purslain, Chard-Beet, Charvall, and such like Herbs for use, raking the Mould finely over them, and laying the ground smooth and even, yet so well covered that the Birds cannot see them to destroy them; and if showers fall and wash them out of the ground, cover them again in the same manner.

Libra ♎, or the Ballance.

## S E P T E M B E R.

*Things properly to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**S**ow Skirrets, Lettice, Spinage, Rhadishes, Parsnips, &c. Cabbages, Collesflowers, Onions, Anniseeds, Scurvy-grass, &c.

It is now proper to transplant Asparagus-roots and Artichoaks.

Sow Herbs for Winter-store, as also roots, get Strawberry Plants out of Copices or Woods, and plant them in your Garden about a foot asunder.

Towards the end of the Month Earth up the Sallad-Herbs,

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 115

Herbs, and Winter-plants, set forth such Cabbage and Collesflower-Plants as were sowed in *August*, prepare Compost to be used in trenching and preparing, and lay your ground well for the approaching Winter, where it is disencumbered, and the occasion requires it, and if the cold season hastily advances, get warm covering for your tender Herbs, either to preserve them well all the Winter, or till such time as you have occasion to spend them.

---

Scorpio m, or the Scorpion.

### OCTOBER.

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month, that it may lye for Winter Mellowing, trench the ground.

Sow Geneva-Lettice, which will with a little care continue for good Salading all the Winter with Glass-bells and Straw over them in the hard frost or cold, but touch them not presently after a Thaw, lest you break or crack the Glasses.

This Month you may sow Rhadishes, clear the Alley of all Leafes that have fallen, lest they corrupt and produce, or at least shelter vermin to annoy your Plants and Seeds, and foul your Garden with their Excrements. Prepare covering for tender Herbs and Plants, and be diligent in rectifying what is amiss in every part that your Garden may not be only pleasant and delightful to the eye, but profitable in encrease, by being disencumbered of offensive things.

Sagittarius.



Sagittarius ♐, or the Archer.

## N O V E M B E R.

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month Trench, fit or prepare your Garden-ground for Artichokes, carry Compost out of your Mellon-ground, or mingle it by often turning with good Earth, so lay it in Ridges prepared for your business of the Spring.

Always note to sow moderately dry, and plant moist, but what you sow cover not too thick with Earth, and there are many Seeds you cannot sow too shallow, so that they are covered sufficiently to preserve them from the Birds destroying them.

Set and sow early Beans and Pease, which you may continue till *Shrovetide*.

Cut off the Tops of Asparagus, cover the roots with dung, or make Beds that they may be prepared for the Spring-planting.

Take up Potatoes a sufficiency for the Winter spending, and if they have been of any continuance, though you search narrowly, a sufficiency will escape to repair the stock.

Lay up your Winter-store of Carrots, Parsnips, Turnips, Cabbages, &c. as also Seeds.



Capricorn *or*, *er*-the Goat.

D E C E M B E R.

*Things proper to be done in the Kitchen-Garden this Month.*

**S**OW for early Beans and Pease if a prospect of violent Frosts are not in view.

This Month is proper to Trench your Garden-ground, and dung it well, set Traps to destroy Vermin, and lay Stable-litter over such Herbs or Plants as can least endure the cold; and what things are requisite to cover, cover them now, for either the Frosts are begun, or very near approaching, no Winter passing without more or less force of them, which leave their marks and scars on most Herbs and Plants, making them droop and languish for want of refreshing heat to comfort them.

*How to know particular Flowers that will alter for the best.*

**E**Xperience tells us that those Flowers which differ in number of Leafs, in colours and shape, their seeds will produce flowers much different from the ordinary flowers, though but a year or two before produced all of one flower; nay, a particular flower among many others of one plant will bring more double ones than twenty others that are not qualified in the same nature.

As for Example, the Stock-Gilliflower that hath five Leafs or more, to six or seven, the seeds of such a particular flower will produce more double ones than those Plants that bring forth but four Leafs quantity for quantity

## 118 The New Art of Gardening,

tity of seed, and in this it is shown more than in others; for there being in the middle of it no thrum as in many others, it will bring forth a fine double flower, which when it hath attained to, then is it come to the bounds of nature, for it never bears seed more, but by endeavouring blows it self to death.

The same rule may be observed by the curious Florist in several other flowers that are free from any thrum in the middle, as Auriculas, zeal-flowers, Primroses, Campions, and the like.

When in such flowers you find one leaf more than their usual number, than conclude nature has prepared for a generation; these flowers will likewise bear seeds when double, as the Gilliflower, *African*, &c. and in sowing the seed of these double ones, they will bring you more and better flowers a hundred to one than the single ones; and in pursuing, the seeds of such will be accommodated with sundry Varieties, but chiefly tinged with the colour of the mother-plant, and some of these will proceed as it were beyond the limits of nature, and then they will have Pods in the middle, or break, and never more be capable of feeding.

*July*-flowers have likewise their Signal, which will, and which will not bear seed. Those that will do it, if the weather or other accidents hinder not, have their horns placed in the middle of the flower; it is also to be observed in the marking of flowers that the seed of those that are striped will bring more striped ones, and some of different colours and stripes, their seeds being alike.

### Choice Directions, for sowing of Seed and setting, &c.

**I**N Sowing of flower-seed great care must be taken, or at least in setting where you intend your flowers shall thrive.

Observe then that the ground bear the best proportion that may be to the places, or the particular Mineral vein or quality of the places where, in other parts, such Plants were



were wont to grow; take care therefore not to set Mountainous Plants in moist and low grounds.

As for Bog-plants, when they are transplanted into a Garden, let it be in a natural, or Artificial Bog, or near some water, by which there is great improvement of all sorts of Flags, and particularly *Calamus Aromaticus*, or the Spice scented Reed.

You may make an Artificial Bog by digging a hole in any stiff clay, or there may be clay brought if the ground afford it not, to bind the Hole or Pit, in the floor or bottom, and so thick on the sides, that the wet cannot soak through, and fill this with Water; then put in Earth of the nature of that where they grew, but somewhat richer, and tempering it with the water, make your Bog to a proportionable moisture of that from whence they were taken, and planting them therein, they thrive and flourish more than in their native soil.

*Things convenient to be considered in the manner of Laying, &c.*

Cut the thing you intend to lay in its proper season, after the manner as is usual in cutting *July*-flowers, and laying them, unless in some Plants that take any way like the Vine, and it is so much the more convenient in Roses, and any Woody-layers, that with an Awle you pierce the stock at the place layed, as it is done by circumposition, *viz.* the Mould to be born up to the bough, which is to be taken off, and then before the Sap rises in February, or the beginning of *March*, it is most proper to be done.

During the time of drought, frequently water your Layers; that is, every day, or they will not come to take Regular roots, but rather a Knob or Button full of fresh Sap upon the tongue of the Cut in the Branch so layed down; yet these Branches cut off, by their well watering in the Summer, have grown pretty well in their transplantation.



The Seasons most proper for this business, are in the beginning of the Spring, or the declining of the great Summer-heat, for in those Seasons they more freely enjoy moisture proper for the producing roots, and are respited from excessive heat and cold.

*Artificial Sets how to make them.*

**T**O do this, bare the roots of Plants of Woody substance, and make a cut in the like manner of that which is made in Layings from the Plant; and into the cleft put a stone or little plug of wood to keep it open, that gaping, the part cut may turn upwards; then with light Mould cover the root three Inches, and the lip so lifted up will sprout into Branches, being nourished by the root of the old Tree; and when the Branches are grown, cut off this Plant with its roots, and it will grow and thrive of it self very well; and if possibly you can leave an eye on the lip of the root, which after Incision you lift up, and the Branches will the more speedily issue out of the root so cut, which method is properly called the starting a root.

To make off-sets of Bulbous roots, with your nail cut it lightly on the bottom in the crown of your root, whence spring the Fibers, and as a healer to the wound, sprinkle some dry dust upon it, and so many wounds as you make, *Ferarius* affirms in so many off-sets will the Genital virtue dispose it self, but this has not been frequently experimented.

*To change the Colour of Flowers when in Blossom, &c.*

**B**urn Brimstone under Roses, and it will turn the lips, and the greatest part of the fouldings, while the smoak of Tobacco will make a red Rose turn blewish or purple. Vitriol sprinkled or streaked on any Flower that is purple, will turn it to a deep scarlet, but this will not

long continue, for the Leafs of the growing flower the next day will wither.

The flower of Brimstone sowed with flower-seeds, will in some manner alter their natural colour, and make them the better for Doublers.

*A few useful Observations from Astrology.*

**S**ow and plant when the Moon is in *Taurus*, *Scorpio*, or *Virgo*, and in good aspect with *Saturn*.

Dress your Garden, and trim your Flowers and choice Shrubs, when the Moon is in *Libra* or *Capricorn*.

Set or cut your Shrubs that you would have the growth of them retarded when the Moon is decreasing in *Cancer*.

Set, cut and sow what you would speedily have shoot out again and spring, or grow in the Encrease of the Moon.

When you sow to have double Flowers, let it be in the Full of the Moon; and as oft as you transplant them, let it be in the Full of the Moon.

Neither plant, sow, nor set any thing on that day whereon there happeneth an Eclipse either of the Sun or Moon, or when the Moon is afflicted by either of the Infortunates, *Saturn* or *Mars*. But from these things I must now proceed to other, advantageous to the Gardener,

---



T H E  
GARDENER'S  
ALMANACK:

Directing what is to be done in  
the *Flower-Garden*, &c. in the  
several Months throughout the  
Year, &c.

Aquarius ♒, or the Skinker.

J A N U A R Y.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-  
Garden this Month.*

**F**lowers in this Month, if the Season appear extream,  
must have great care taken of them, especially such  
as least endure the cold ; however you may let Ranuncu-  
lus's and Anemony-roots, and need not cover them ; for  
great Rains are more prejudicial to them than Frosts ;  
however, such as are sowed in October or September, for  
earlier



earlier Flowers, you must secure from great Frosts and Rains; as likewise the Carnations, or such seeds as run the hazard of being washed out of the ground, or by extreme Frosts chilled or over-frozen; and in this case, where the Snow lyes too heavy on them, strike it off and cover them, lest they burst and are spoiled; except on hot B<sup>ds</sup>, and then there is no danger of them.

About the end of the Month put Mould about the Roots of the Arunculas that have been uncovered by Frost, and where your choicest are set in Pots, fill up the chinks with warm Mould; and so you need not house them, because they will endure the Weather.

*Flowers blowing or continuing.*

**P**recoce Tulips, Winter Aconite, some sorts of Anemones, Black Helebore, Winter Cyclamen, Oriental Jacinthus, Brumal, Hyacinth, Levantian, Narcissus, Laurustians, Primroses, Mazareno.

However, note that these Fruits and Flowers are more slow or hasty according to the heat or coldness of the soil, as qualified by accident or nature, situation, &c. and that all Monthly Flowers are to be understood to continue from their first appearing to their decay.

*Pisces ♉, or the Fishes.*

F E B R U A R Y.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**A**S the Weather is seasonable air, your House d Carnations, particularly in moderates, shower or warm days,

days, and set them in again at nights if nipping Winds or Frosts threaten them, and so you may do by other Flowers that are not very tender ; as in this Month, except extream cold prevent it, divers will be, as I may term it, in prime.

*Flowers blowing or continuing.*

Single Anemonies, Winter Aconite, Hyacinthus, Stelatus, some Double Anemonies, Tulips, Præcoce, Persian Iris, Lucoium Bulbosum, Deus Caninus, Black Helebores, Verttall Crocus, single Hepatica, Vernal Cyclamen, Red and White, Early Daffodillies, the great white Arnithogals, Mezereno, the large leaved yellow Violets, and some others.

Aries  $\gamma$ , or the Ram.

M A R C H.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

This Month place Stakes, and bind up your weak Flowers to prevent the violent Winds injuring them.

Sow Pinks, plant Box, and the like; sow Carnations, and Sweet Williams, from the middle to the end of the Month ; Alternus, most Perennial Greens, Phillerea, and the like; or these may be done later in the Month, towards the end, as the Season happens warmer or colder.

Sow in Pots or Cases with fine Willow Earth, Auricula-seeds, let the Earth be a little loamy, and place what you sowed in September in the Shade, sprinkling a little



## With the Gardener's Almanack. 125

little water on them. Plant Latter Anemony-Roots successively in parts of the Countries that are warm. Transplant Ranunculas and Fiberous Roots about the middle of the Month, as Primroses, Turbosc, Cammomile, Auriculas, Gentianella, Matricaria, Helebore, and other Summer-flowers. This is also a proper time to set Levicoium, and towards the end of the Month slip Wall-flowers, or Keris, Connolualus, Lupins, Ordinary or Spanish Gessamine.

About the middle or latter end of this Month sow Later-flowers on hot Beds, especially such as are the natural growth of hot Countries, for they require much heat till the natural earth be warm enough to supply them by the heat of the Sun, perfecting their seed, and bringing them to a proportionable stature; and when the Amaranthus is grown pretty high, remove it into another hot Bed, and so you may order *African* and sensitive Plants, particularly these ever keep under Glasses.

About the concluding of this Month, set in the Shade Aurunculas Plants or Seedlings, such as being choice you have reserved in Pots, Carnation-Seedlings may be Transplanted; also give Earth to the Layers that is fresh and proper for them, placing them about a week in the Shade, then cut off all the infected or drooping Leaves, and the choice ones may now have their cover removed.

The parting Frosts and cold Winds are now prejudicial to your choice Tulips, and therefore cover them with Mats or other convenient shelter, and take the like care the most esteemed Anemonies, Chema-Iris, Auricula's, early Cyclamen, Brunal Jacinths, &c.

Sow Basamum-Mas, Balsamine Doctils, Indian-Phaeolio, Lentiscus, Datura, Pomum-Amoris, Floss Africanus, Cana Indicum, Casicum Indicum, Flos Passionis, Amaranthus, and the like. These require hot Beds till a warmer season, yet Nostratum Indicum, Volabulis, African Marigolds, &c. may tolerably well subsist on cold Beds, though not so forward. Your thorn Cuprus-tops, require to be wraped about with wisps of Straw, Hay, or the like, if the Easterly winds continue sharp, and cover with Peashaum or dry Straw your Evergreens that are



Seedlings, such as Pines, Bayes, Phillyria, Fir, Cyprus, till two or three years be gone over them in the Nursery, and are large enough to transplant, lest the sharp winds dry them up and spoil them.

This you may do any time in the Winter where extremity requires it, but in fair warm weather, or intermissions from cold you may uncover them, the sharp winds more harming than the Frost or Snow.

About the end of the Month, with a moderate caution of the continuing sharp winds or fall of the Frosts, you may uncover your choicer Plants; but in sharp winds neither sow nor transplant, lest by their drying up and withering, they frustrate your expectation.

In the Full of the Moon sow Stock-gilliflower-seeds, that they may produce double Flowers; and though some think they can make this doubling by art, by using Infusions, Magnomism, or Medicines, yet they will find themselves mistaken; or especially it is with greater certainty done by removing, transplanting, enriching the mould, strewing and hardening the Ground, and so for variation and change, taking from the root the freer nourishment.

Now set *Lentiscus*, Oranges, Lemons, Dates, Ammomums, Aloes, and the like, lest enduring Plants and Trees in the Portico.

*Flowers blowing or continuing, &c.*

**A** Arbor Indæ, Præcoce Tulips, Rubus Adoratus, Crown Imperial, Spring Cyclamen, Anemones, Winter Aconite, Black and White Helebores, Crocus Bellis, Single and Double Hepticæ, Chama-Iris, Leucoion Fritillaria, Violets, Primroses, Tuberosus-Iris, Hymnodactyls, Persian Iris, Dutch Mezereon, Dutch yellow Violets. The great White Ornithogalum, Deus Caninus, Chelidonium, the Double Flower'd small Spanish Trumpits, or Jaquills, Hyacinth, Zeboin, Brumal, Oriental Jaquills, Great Chalciom, and such like Attendants on the Spring.

Taurus ♂, or the Bull.

A P R I L.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**I**N the beginning of this Month sow Digitalis, Double Marigolds, Delphinum, Cyanus; of the various sorts, Green Pansy, Tufts, Macipula, Holiocks, Scorpoides, Medica, Scabeous, Belvider, Columbines, which every four or five years renew, to prevent loss and decay.

Now continue new and fresh hot Beds to accommodate such Plants, as without them will want their perfection, till the Earth has contracted a sufficient warmth to sustain them abroad; and those Fibrous Roots as the last Month were not transplanted, now transplant them, as Primroses, Violets, Heptica, Matricaria, &c. and the Seedling Auriculas set in the Shade.

Sow Carnations, Pinks, &c. cleanse and trim up the old Roots from dead and rotten Leafs; Sow Sweet Williams after rain, that they may flower the following year; also Lucoium in the Full of the Moon, and set Lupins.

Part the off-sets from the Indian Tuberoses, but beware you break not their Phangs, and these off-sets in due time will produce Flowers; set them in pots of natural Earth, not such as is forced with a Layer of rich Earth underneath to succour the Fibres, but not touch the Bulbous-Roots; set the pots in hot Beds, and water not the Plants till they begin to spring, and set them then under a South-wall, and in dry weather water them much, and in August they will produce curious Flowers.



In this manner order the Garnsey-Lilly, or Narcissus of Japan ; Sea-sand mingled with the mould, wonderfully prosper them, especially near the surface, and order the Protuberant fangs of the Yuca in like manner as the Tuberoses.

About the middle of the Month you may expose or set out your Floss Cardinalis, Slip and set Marums Ranunculas ; Water Annemonies and such Plants as are in Cases or Pots, as the driness of the season requires it.

Prune or orderly Regulate Annemonies, Gilliflowers, Carnations, or the like, where they stand too thick, or are subject to Mat together, and so being thined they will produce the fairer Flowers.

Protect your Ranunculas, Pennash, Tulips, Auriculas, Annemonies, from storms of violent Rain, Hail, or the too scorching Beams of the Sun, by covering them with Mats supported with Hoops, or bent Wands Cradlewise.

Bring forth your choice and tender shrubs in a fair day, but the Orange-trees may be continued housed till the next Month, and when you water them, let it be done with Rain or Pond-water luke-warm, but not too much at a time.

### *Flowers Blowing or Continuing.*

**R** Anunculas of *Tripoly*, White Violets, Annemonies, Auricula Ursi, Caprifolum, Crown Imperial, Caprifolum Gentianella, Deus Caninus, Bell-flower, Tritillaria, Double Hepticas, Starry Jacinth, Florence-Iris, Double Daisies, white and tufted Double Narcissus Chamae-Iris, Cowslips, Primroses, Pulsatilla, Ladies-Smock, Tulips, Medias, Radix, Cava Geranium, Perituria, Lutea, Caitha, Talustris, Persian Lillies, Luconum, Pæonies, Muscaria Reversed, Double Jonquills, Persian Jessamine, Acanthus, and some others.



Gemini II, or the Twins.

M A Y.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-  
Garden this Month.*

**S**Hade your Carnations and Gilliflowers about this season, when the Sun has passed the Meridian, and at the Full Moon plant in Beds your Stock-Gilliflowers, transplant forth Aramanthus, and water Ranunculas; sow Antirrhinum, or set it, gather such Annemony seeds, as you find to be ripe, and preserve it for a new supply, keep it very dry to preserve it from moulding or musting; cut the Stalks of those Bulbous Flowers that you find dry.

About the latter end of this Month take such Tulips as their Stalks are dried, covering the roots you find bare, to prevent their being scorched by the heat of the Sun, or washed up with sudden showers, and if any of these Roots you take up be cankered, the best remedy is speedily to bury them in fresh Mould.

*Flowers blowing or continuing, &c.*

**R**Anuncula's of all kinds; the latter set Annemonies, Anapodophylon, Chema-Iris, Blattaria, Citifus, Maranthes, Heleborine, Cyclamen, Augustifoi, Cyanus, Yeilow Lillies, Aspodel, Froxinella, Cullumbines, Bubous-Iris, Digitalis, Garanum, Horminum Criticum, Gladialus, Double Cotyleden, Caltha Plauftris, Tulips of various sorts and Colours, Jacca Lychnis, Double Bellis, White and Red Millerolium Luteum, Phalangium Orcliis, Spanish Pinks, Lillium Convalium, Rosa, common Guilder,

der, Cinamon and Centifol, &c. Cherrybay, Oleaster, Trachelium Hisperis, Cowslips, Anterrhinum Sedums, Syringa's, Veronica, single and double; Musk Violets, Valerian, Stock-Gilliflowers, Ladies-slipper, Chalcedons, Star-flower, Ordinary Crowfeet, Red Martagon, Campanulas, White and Blue Buglos, Homer's, Maly Persian Lillie, Bee-flower, Purple Thalictrum, Pansies Lucioium, Bulbosum Secotinum, Syimbrum, single and double Sambucus Peonies, Sea-Narcissus, and some others.

---

Cancer ♋, or the Crab.

J U N E.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month gather such ripe Flower-seeds as are valuable, and proper to be saved, as Narcissus, Anunculas, Oriental Jacinth, &c. preserving them dry; shade your Carnations from the Afternoon's Sun; Transplant Autumnal Cyclamen, if you design to change for a place more advantageous; take up Iris Chalcedon. Now you may make a beginning to lay Gilliflowers; also take up the best sort of Ranunculas and Anemonies, after moderate showers of Rain, the Stalks dry and withered, and the Roots in a good temper.

Take up the Bulbs of Tulips, cover those presently that lye naked on the Beds, or transplant them to a cooler Soil; water dry, or parched Beds, as also the pots of Japan Narcissus; prevent some Scabious from running to Seed, which now may be done by removing them, and to the following year they will produce very good Flowers.

Take up the Roots of such Flowers and Plants as will endure



## With the Gardener's Almanack. 131

endure not to be out of the ground, and immediately transplant them in fresh Soil, as Oriental Jacinth, Cyclamen, Frittilaria Iris Crown Imperial, Dets Caninus, Muscaris, Bulbous Jacinths, &c.

### *Flowers Blowing or Continuing, &c.*

**D**ouble Peppies, Phalalangium, Allobrogicum, Amaranthus, Asphodell, Hedisarum, Gladiolus, Clamantis Panonica, Blataria Millafolium, Yellow and White Martagon, Red and White Gentian, Helebores Nigella, Astrea Atticus, Bulbous Iris, Hedisarum, Early Lark-heel, Genistia of Spain, Pinks Ornithogalum, Mount-Lillies White and Red, with some others.

---

### *Leo ♌, or the Lyon.*

## J U L Y.

### *Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**S**lip Stocks the beginning of this Month, with other Lignous Plants and Flowers; lay Carnations and Gilliflowers, not suffering to remain above two or three Spindles for the Flowers. Take away the superfluous Buds; support those that remain with Staves against the Wind; destroy Erewigs, and other Insects that annoy them.

Layers, in a good light loamy Earth, will take Root in six Weeks; set as many of them as may conveniently in one pot, to save room; in Winter let not too much wet come at them; if it prove too wet, lay the pots side-ways, and shade those that blow from the heat of the Sun in the Afternoons.

Tak.



Take up early Cyclamen, Bulbs and Tulips, which you may immediately plant, or if conveniency permit not, you may do it any time; within a Month after, trim them, and cut off the Fibres, spreading in an airy place very dry, but do not separate the off-sets of Tulips, and the like, till the principal Bulbs be fully dry.

Gather seeded Tulips, and permit the seeds to continue in the pods, also the seed of Early Cyclamen, and immediately sow it in Pots or Cases.

Remove Crocus that are Seedlings of the last September, giving them wide Intervals till they come to perfection.

Take up some sorts of Aurunculas, Persian-Iris, Crocus, Crown Imperial, Frettilaria and Colchicums, plant the Iris, and the two last as soon as you have taken them up, if you have conveniency, else in August or September, may do tollerably well; or you may defer their taking up till then, and replant Colchicums, remove Deus Caninus, &c.

Sift your Beds for the off-sets of Tulips towards the latter end of this Month; also for Bulbous-Roots, Ranunculas, Anemonies, and the like, which will prepare them for setting or plunging, such things as are in your Pots, and require to be set in the naked Earth till the next season; some sort of Anemonies may now be sowed in Ground that is temperately moist; cut away the withered stalks that incumber the Roots of your Flowers, covering the bared Roots with fresh Earth. To destroy Worms and other Insects, strew Pot ashes on your Grass-plats, and Carpet-Walks; and to the same end water your Gravel-Walks with water wherein Tobacco stalks have been boiled.

*Flowers blowing this Month or continuing.*

**A** Spodes Amaranthus, Phalangium Delphinum, Veronica Odoriferous, and Purple Sultan, Connalnuus, Volabi is, Thiapse Criticum, Geranius, Triste, Fraxenela, Hedisaureum, Corn-flower, Alkengi, Double and White Jacca, Scorpion-grass, Monthly-Rose, Jacinths, and some others.

Virgo

Virgo ♍, or the Virgin-Sign.

AUGUST.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month take up Bulbous, Iris, sow the Seeds of them, as also of Cullumbines, Candy-Tufts, Lark-heels, Holyocks, Iron-coloured Fox-gloves, and other Plants that have strength to endure the approaching season.

Plant some Anemony-Roots for Winter-flowers; take up the last years Seedlings, Transplant them for Bearers, also Autumnal Crocus, Deus Caninus, and Colchicum's.

Sow Oriental Jacinths, Narcissus, and replant such Roots as will not well abide out of the Earth, as Higanths, Deus Caninus, Lillies, Martagon, Fretarilla, &c.

As yet you may slip Gilliflowers, and take up Bulbous-roots: As your Alaternus Seed grows black and ripe, gather it daily, spread it to sweat, and put it up dry for use; water Italian-særr: and other Seeds, that you find ripe, may now be gathered, especially from Shrubs.

About the middle of this Month, divide the Large old Roots of Auriculas, and Transplant them in a light moist Earth, Loamy or Sandy, yet fertile, and in the shade; you may now likewise sow the Seed of them, also Anemony-seed towards the latter end of this Month. That of Ranunculas, &c. place them in light Mould in Cases moderately covered with Earth, frequently refresh them, and keep them in the Shade. Likewise Hepatica, Iris, Fraxenella, Jacinths, Cyclamen, Primroses, Tulips, Martagon, Ererillaria, and the like; though some of these from the  
Seed,



Seed, flower not in four or five years, as the Tulip, unless set so shallow that it cannot sink deep into the ground; however take care not to disturb their Beds, weed them well, and shade them till the great heats are past, lest too much driness spoil the Seed; but as for Primroses and Hepatica there need not be so much care taken of them.

*Flowers blowing this Month or lasting, &c.*

**A** Nagasis, Nigella, Luchnis, Yellow Millefolium, Lucoion, Monthly-Rose, Chlappi Creticum, Cyclamen, Vernum, Yellow Mountain, Hearts-ease, Colchicum, Autumnal Hyacinth, Starworth, Holiocks, Elio-clerison, Eringium-plumum, French Marigolds, Daffies, Pansies, Lark-heels, Catchbly, Lobells, and some others.

Libra ♎, or the Ballance.

## S E P T E M B E R.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**T**HIS Month plant a few of the various sorts of Anemonies, to be the earlier, in naturally rich or improved Earth, particularly the Latifol, do it when the first rains are over.

And now very properly you may sow Auricula-seeds, placing the Cases in the Sun till April following. You may also plant some Tulips, Colchicum, Daffodils, &c. Likewise Fiberous Plants, such as Primroses, Violets, Matricaria, Capillaries, Cammomile, Helebore, Hepatica, and the like; also Transplant Cyclamen and Chalcedon.

If you think fit, you may now sow Phillerea, Alaternis,

or



or you may do it in the Spring. Likewise Tulips, Martagon, Delphinium Nigella, Poppey, Candy Tufts, Crown Imperial, and all Annuals that are not impaired by the Frost in General.

Sow the Seeds of Primroses, and Transplant Seedling Digitalis; and early this Month plant Lychnis-slips; House your Tuberoses from the wet in this season, and preserve the Roots out of the Pots in Sand, or wrapped up in Paper, place them in dry Boxes near the Chimney.

Fasten Autumnal-flowers and Plants to Sticks, that may secure them from breaking in violent Winds.

Take off Gilliflower Layers with Earth, and place them in Shaded Borders or Pots: You may now raise Crocus of Seeds, and such Flowers or Plants as will not prosper if Housed, set in Pots in the Ground three or four Inches lower than the surface of the Beds you plunge them in; expose them as much as may be to the South; Cloath them with Glass-Bells; but in warm Showers, or when the Sun shines pretty warm, you may uncover them, and give them air, and so you may preserve the most precious Flowers, as Cistus, Marum-Syriacum, Floss-Cardinalis, Geranium, Noctolens, Seedling Arbutus, Accacia Aegyptica, Anemonies, Ranuncula's, &c. and so order them till April. Guard your Marum-Syriacum with Furzes, or Bushes from the Cats, for if they come at it, they will eat and destroy it.

*Flowers blowing this Month or continuing, &c.*

**A** Nagallis of Portugal, Amaranthus, Clematis, Autumnal Cyclamen, Linaria Cretica, Limonium, Indian Lillies, Narcissus, Chrysanthemum, Stock-Gilliflowers Sun-flowers, Spinosum Indicum, Persian Autumnal, Narcissus, Pomum Aurium, Amoris Nasturtium, Indicum Gentianella, Annual. Tuberas, Indian Jacinths, Yellow Millefolium, Virginian Phalangium, and some others.

Scorpio m, or the Scorpion.

## OCTOBER.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**T**His Month House Turf-ose, Narcissus, and keep it dry till *April*; sow Seeds as in *September*; as yet plant Anemonies, particularly the *Tenuifolia's* in fresh Sandy Earth, likewise set Ranuncula's taken from under the Turf, but let the bottom of the Bed be rich Mould, so that the Fibers of the Roots may reach it, but not the main Roots, which only cover with Natural Earth about two Inches deep, and preserve them from the Frosts with Straw or Mats, but in the warm times of the day give them the free air. Now Plant Vernal Crocus, and Ranunculas of *Tripoly*, remove Holyocks, and about this time you may plant choise Tulips, and they will be sufficiently forward, as also secured from danger; mix Natural Earth, somewhat impoverished, with fine Sand, and Plant them in it, though at the bottom, within the reach of the Fibres, you must place rich Earth.

New beware your Carnations be not injured by the Wet, therefore in excess of Rain, cover them so that the Air may however come at them, or lay them on the sides, and with fresh Mould trim them up; you may now without danger bury all sorts of Bulbous Roots, as likewise Iris.

Sow Phillirea and Alaternus-seeds, Mow Carpet Walks, beat and Rowl them, as also Cammomile Beds, and make an end of your last Weeding, cleanse your Walks and Allies from fallen leaves, which corrupting will produce Vermin.



*Flowers blowing or continuing this Month, &c.*

**L** Ymonium, Lychnis, Amaranthus, Three coloured  
 After, Atticus, Heliotrops, Tuberos, Jacinths,  
 Marvel of Perue, Autumnal Narcissus, Gilliflowers, Vir-  
 gin Phalangium, Pomum Amoris, and Æthiop. Garani-  
 um Triste, Aleppo Narcissus, Pansies, Spherical Narcis-  
 sus, Cyclamen, Saffron, Clamentis, and some others.

Sagiterius ♄, or the Archer.

N O V E M B E R.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-  
 Garden this Month.*

**C** Over the Ranunculas that are coming up, prepare  
 rich Earth made so with about Half-dung, sift on  
 it some Sandy light Mould and Earth gotten out of Hol-  
 low or doated Willow-Trees, put it in Cases or Pots in  
 the Sun, and sow in it Auricula-seeds.

If the Weather be open and seasonable, plant the fairest  
 sort of Tulips in Earth not over rich, and let them be  
 under shelter about the middle of the Month; House your  
 tender Plants and Flowers, also set the choicest Carnati-  
 ons under a Pent-house, or some such like shelter under a  
 South-wall, and in sharp Weather put a covering over  
 them, but not so close as to exclude the benefit of the  
 air; and for shelter of your Seedlings, and choice Plants,  
 prepare Mattresses, Pots, Cases, and Boxes, plant Fiberous  
 Roots, also Althea-futax, Roses, Cytifus, Cyringas, Pæo-  
 nies, and the like; cleanse and sweep the Walks, &c.



*Flowers blowing this Month or continuing, &c.*

**M**eadow Saffron, Anemonies, Bellis, Stock-Gilliflowers, Pancies, Clamatis, Double Violets, some kind of Carnations, Antirrhinum, Veronica, Musk-Roses, and some others.

Capricornus *v.*, or the Goat.

## DECEMBER.

*Things proper to be done in the Flower-Garden this Month.*

**P**reserve your Carnations, Ranunculas and Anemonies from Excessive rains, House all tender Plants; seek out and destroy Insects and Vermin that annoy your Gardens, prepare warm Litter to lay over such choice things as are to continue abroad; if the Frost comes, carry store of Dung, lay it in a readiness in some convenient place to rot against the Spring, that it may be the fitter for your use, and order other things as has been directed in *January*.

*Flowers blowing this Month or continuing.*

**I**ris Clusi, some Anemonies, Common and Persian Winter Cyclamen, Black Hellebore, Antirrhinum, Drops or Snow-flowers, Single Primroses, Stock-Gilliflowers, and some others.

And thus Reader have I given you an Exact Account of what is most material to be done in the several Months, &c.

*Flowers*

*Flowers, Shrubs, and choice Plants, enduring several Degrees of Cold, how they are to be preserved.*

**T**HE Degrees of Cold any choice Flower or plant will bear without damage or destruction, is requisite for a Gardener to know; that so he may order them by a timely care to prevent loss, and being reputed no proficient in his Imployment; and these are commonly divided in three degrees.

*Flowers and Plants not dying but by Extream Cold.*

**S**ingle Violets, Serapentaria, Trifolium, White and Double Narcissus of Constantinople, Agnus Castus, Malva, Arborescens, Persian Jessamine, Molay, Althæa, Frutax, Crithmum Maritimum, Ornithoglon Arabian, Feseli Æthiop. Veronica, Teuchiummas Tythymal. Myrtifolia, Jacea, Sarsaparilla, Abrotonum, Male and Female; Adiantum Verum, Aconita Verum, Bell's Hispani, Rosemary, Lavender, Cherry Lawrels, Pulbons Iris, Cytisus Marantine, Red Lunatus, Ceneraria Pomgranads, Oriental Jacinths, Double White Lychnis, Double Matricaria, Pancration, Spinous Poppy Marcoc, Sylynelchium, Cneorum Matthioli, the Eryngium plain, and Italy Blue, Mountain Fritillaria, Spanish Genista white Flowered. Olives.

And these, unless in violent or excessive, colds may last set into the Conservatory, or Green-house; or <sup>you</sup> may protect them abroad in pots, cases or Boxes and Matresses, or thinner covering.



*Flowers and Plants enduring the second degree of Cold.*

**S**ummer-purple, Cyclamen, Anemum Plinii, Citron, Digitalis-Hyspan, Aspilanthus creticus, Jacobaea Marina, Suza Iris, Oleanders, Alexandrian Lawrel, Oranges, Lentiscus Myrtles, Lanentine, Tufted Narcissus, choicest Carnations and Gilliflowers, Narcissus of Japan, Red Cytisus, Vernal Cyclamen, Canna Indica, Double and Single Asiatick Ranuncula's, Hedysarum Clypeatum, Virginia Jasmine, Thymis Capiratus Verbenanodi Flos Cretica, Geranium-triste, Cheme-Læa Alphestris, Carbo; and some few others of the choicest sorts; and therefore when the Frosts approach so that they seem to set in they must be hastened into the Conservatory, &c.

*Flowers and Plants the least of all enduring Cold.*

**A**Rabian Ornithogalon, Tuberose Narcissus, Acacia Ægyptiaca, Helichryson, Balsamum, Amaranthus, three colours, American Aloes, Aspalathus of Oret, Chamelæa tricoccus, Indian Narcissus, Summer-sweet Marjorum, Pistacios, Dactyls, the great Indian Fig, Lylac with the white Flower, Coultea Odorata, Cistus Ragusæus, with the white Flower, Cretica, Lavendula Multifol. clus. Styrax Arbor, Nasrutium Indicum. The two Marums of Syria; Capsicum Indicum, Pomum Æthiop. Aureum, Spinosum Phascol, and some few others that are very choice and tender, and therefore a Gardener who undertakes to order them must have a special care suffers not the Nipping Frosts or cold winds to sur-  
pr. late abroad, lest they die, and his Labour and Ex-  
pect. on have thereby an equal frustration.

The of all other tender Flowers or Plants, must first  
be reme. d into the Conservatory or Green-house, and  
carefully ded and ordered according to the Directions  
that



that will follow in the close of this Book, relating to the well-ordering and regulating a Green-house, or Conservatory ; and if you have not opportunity or convenience to remove them so early as necessity requires, then cover them as they stand for a time with Matresses, or thinner covering, according as the Season is colder or hotter, or the cold dews fall, which after *Bartholomew-tide* fall very cold in the night, and are great enemies to choice Plants and Flowers, bringing mostly with them Nipping morning Frosts, as they are called *Mildues*, and other misfortunes, so that a little neglect does a great deal of mischief, which much time, cost and labour cannot renew or recover.

Therefore again I say be careful in this, and gain advantage and credit.

*A further Description of Flowers; as to their  
Shapes and Colours.*

**DOROTHEA.**

**T**his is an esteemed Flower, of a deep brown purple, whiped very curiously about the Edges, daped with red and lighter purple, a curious white bottom, and Tarnis purple.

**BACCHUS BOLE.**

This Flower is not Tall, yet a very full, Large and Broad Leafed Flower, being of a sad light purple and a proper white, divided equally, having the three utmost Leafs edged with a Crimson colour, Blewish bottom, and dark purple and Tarnis.

**MEMORABLES.**

This Flower, is of a pale tan'd Leather colour, bright yellow and sad purple, and is for its variety compared with many now in good Esteem.

*Royal Shuttle-maker.*

This Flower, has sharp pointed Leafs, turning a little, curiously marked with a bright Carnation pale yellow and deep Scarlet, the bottom Tarnis black, and is well improved by offsets coming out above the lowermost Leaf.

**DIANEA.**



DIANE A.

**T**His Flower is properly raised from Seeds of the Diana, differing from it in that it hath white Leafs edged and whiped about, and feathered in the middle with deep brown purple, and Tamis dark blue.

*Purveyor of Rome.*

This Flower hath i's Leafs very Green and Large in the Stalk, rising high, and dividing into several Branches striped, or at least each Leaf of the Flower listred about with yellow, the rest deep Scarlet.

PEONIE.

This Flower, though common, is a great grace and ornament to the Flower-Garden, it is Male and Female; the first of these are single, and known by the constantly coming of the Leafs whole and undevied; the Roots are round and long, and the Flower of a purplish Red; and of the Male there is but one kind, but of the Females many, some bearing Double, others Single Flowers, resembling in shape the common red Rose; and these being usually, I need not Elaborate to describe their kinds being mostly u- for adorning windows in House-Flower-pots.

*The Bee-Flower.*

This grows not above six Inches high, having three or four narrow Leafs, bearing on the Stalk three or four Flowers one above another; and where there happens to be four Leafs, three of them are usually small and sharp pointed, of a blush colour, turning up towards the top of the Stalk; the fourth is round, in Colour like a Bee that is Sucking a Flower, which has deceived many at first sight, who have supposed it to be really so. This has two Roots joyned together, and round, and when the Flower fades, usually one of them perishes, and the other remains sound for further encrease.



*The Bladder-nut.*

This grows low if neglected to be pruned up and kept from the Suckers; the Bark is whitish, and the Leafs like Elder-flowers, white and sweet, hanging many on a stalk, after them Greenish bladders, each containing one Nut, sending up many Suckers, by which it greatly encreases.

## RUBENTED.

This is the great pale Red or Peach-bloom coloured Flower-de-luce, being Bulbous-rooted, and is more in esteem than the many other Trifes, so called from their several colours, resembling them in the Rain-bow, and is adorned with small Yellow spots in each of the three falling Leafs.

*The Spanish Yellow Trish.*

This Flower is of a curious Golden colour in all parts of the blowing Leafs: There is yet another of this kind with a pale Yellow flower, with a deep yellow spot, and of these there are indeed many diversities, some paler, some bigger, some lesser, and others of a deeper yellow colour; one with white falling Leafs, except a yellow spot, which is usual to all Bulbous-Iris, or Flower-de-luces. Also the *Spanish* party coloured Flower-de-Luce, whose Leafs are white, that fall, but the Arch'd ones of a Silver colour, and the top-leafs of a bluish-purple; some again of a fair bluish-purple, others of a Reddish-purple, another Sky-coloured, Arched with Yellow-falling-Leafs, &c.

*Hungarian Rose.*

This Rose differs from the usual common Red, one in its Green-shoots, its Flower being of a pailer Red, having faint spots spread over the Leafs of the whole double Flower.

The

*The Double Velvet Rose.*

This Rose has its shoots of a sadish red green colour, little thorny, the Leafs being of a sadder Green than the common red Rose; the Flowers are consistent of two or three rows of Leafs, of a dark red Velvet-colour, having some distinction of lighter red in them, rarely producing many Flowers.

*The Marble Rose.*

This resembles the former in growth, but is larger and more folded, being of a light red, Marbled with a lighter bluish Grey-delint, and gives a curious scent.

*The Virgin Rose.*

It is in the Leafs greener than the last, being smooth and without any thorne, the flower not very thick or standing, but spreading the Leafs, and standing forwarder from each other; the Leafs that are of a pale red, or bluish colour, are streaked on the faces, the back-sides being of a whitish colour, blowing usually fair, and are of a very fragrant scent.

*The Evergreen Rose.*

This is so called, because the Leafs fade not in Winter, but remain Green, and continue till new ones come in the Spring; the flowers are cluster'd four or five together at each end of the Branches, which consist but of five Leafs single, of a curious white colour, having a Muskey scent.

*The Moly of Hungary.*

This Flower is of two sorts, the first hath three or four long broad green Leafs, which go up with the stalk a foot high, one above the other; and are on the top be-



set with some Reddish bulbs, of a pail purple; the root small and fit for Everests; the second is in resemblance of the first, only the stalk bears smaller Leafs, and a greater cluster of dark green bulbs, the Flowers alike, &c.

### S P I D E R W O R T.

Those of *Spain* and *Italy* of these kinds are chiefest in esteem, they are very secure Plants against Weather, and prosper in almost any Soil, especially where it is moist, bearing a Star-like flower, white and something inclining to blushing.

### Dames Violet.

This is called the Queens Gilliflower, and by some the *rose Sciences*; there are two sorts of them, both single, one of a pale blush, the other white, producing but four Leafs.

### The Double White Gilliflower.

This is accounted the nobler, having many Branches on a stalk, and many flowers on a branch, standing close together in a long spike, the flowers being of a curious white colour, thick and double, and give their choicest scent in the Evening on the declining of the Sun.

### Double Poppys.

These are not to be omitted though they give no fragrant scent, since their beauties are an Ornament to the Flower-Garden; they are of various colours, though of one kind; some red, others purple, some white, others scarlet, and some again white-blush, others parcy-colour; one Leaf half scarlet, and half white, some striped with the same colour, but those chiefly esteemed, are of a Gold yellow, double flowering, and produce much seed.



*Bastard Bitters.*

This grows about two foot high, bearing a Reddish flower, having many brownish woody stalks; and on the lower part of it are many winged Leafs, seven, nine, or eleven together, resembling those of a young Ash, though somewhat larger, longer, and purpled about the edges, being of a sad green colour.

*Male Cistus.*

This has not its growth above a yard high, small and shrubby, composed of many brittle slender woody branches, bearing flowers of a fine reddish purple, like single Roses each having five small round Leafs, many yellow threads in the middle that soon fall away, &c.

*Virgin Silk.*

This with one or more round stalks rises near four foot high, set with two long broad veins, at several Joynts green and round pointed, and on the top of the stalk, out of the shiny hose, a great tuft of flowers issue, sometimes thirty or forty hanging down on long foot-stalks, each containing five small hollow Leafs of a purple colour, which fading, are succeeded by long crooked coes, standing upwards, which produce flat brown Seeds.

*Indian Scarlet Jesamine.*

This comes up from a large spreading Root, with one, two or more flexible branches, which must be supported when they put forth their Tendrills, by fastening to any woody substance, and there will come forth two winged Leafs, much like them of Roses, and at the end of the branches come forth the flowers, many in number, long like a Fox-glove, and at the end opening into five fair broad Leafs, with a stile and small threading in the middle, of the colour of Saffron; some of these Plants have on

the inside the flower, small and red Leafs; others veined with small yellow lines, the ground being a deep Scarlet.

*The Rose Bay-Tree.*

This is of two sorts, one bringing Red, the other white flowers, not other ways differing, its stem growing to the bigness of an Inch and a half compass, dividing into three branches at each Joynt; bearing long, hard, thick, and dark Leafs at the end of the branches; the flower issues of a white in the one, and deep Bluish in the other; containing four long narrow Leafs, yet round pointed, falling away without Seed.

*Candy Tufts.*

These are small Plants, whitish green Leafs, their stalks set with narrow long notches, and at the top is produced many small single Flowers, placed close together, some white, and others with purple spots in the middle; others all of a purple colour; they are produced of Seeds, the Roots yearly perishing.

*Flower Gemle of many Colours.*

This produces a Flower of a lighter colour, of Purple-velvet, and Gold-colour; Lemon, Orange, some Straw-colour, and crimson; they have a thick stalk, with many large green Leafs, of many branches, &c.

*The Shrub Spicera.*

This Flower rises a yard, or something more in height, with divers woody stalks set with long green Leafs, nicked on the edges; and the top of the stalk produces many Flowers of a pale Peach-bloom colour, close together in a long Spike, lessening by degrees, like Pyramids; the woody Root despises the Winter's rage, and may be propagated by Layers.



*The Cloath of Silver coloured Crow-foot.*

This produces lesser Flowers than some others of its kind, having its Leafs pointed, six, seven, or eight in number, of a pale yellowish Blush-colour, striped on the inside, but more on the out-side with Crimson, the Root Gymmous.

*The Double Yellow Crow-foot.*

This is called the Ranuncula of Asia, having its Leafs spreading, and divided like a Carrot; from the Root, rise many small stalks, each producing a shining yellow small double Flower.

*The Ranuncula of Aleppo.*

This Flower is of a curious Orange-colour'd Hawker, round and very double striped with Yellow.

C A R O L U S.

This Flower is curiously marked and striped with shades of Murry-purple through the several Leafs of it, Blue at bottom, and Purple Tans, making a very curious show.

*The Indian Fig.*

This springs Leafs one out of another, from one Leaf put half into the Earth: which taking root, puts out others, being a finger-thick, flat and round pointed, and of colour a pale green; showing at first brown prickles at the upper end, and at the tops of the Leafs the Flowers break forth, set with two Rows of pale Yellow Leafs, having a yellow thum-tiped with Red in the middle; after the Flower fades, the head they stood on, in the middle, grew large, in the form of a Fig, but in these Countries comes not to perfection; it is a tender Plant, and must be set in



Pots, so that it may be Housed in the Winter, lest the Frost rot and destroy it.

*White Hellebore.*

This makes its first appearance with a round large head, of a green whitish colour, and afterward opens in many fine green Leafs, signally pleated in every part, taking a compass about each other at the bottom, from whence a stalk rises about a yard high, small Leafs extending to the middle of it, which dividing into many branches bears a considerable number of Star-like Flowers, small, and of a yellowish green colour.

*The Double Purple Virgins-Flower.*

This hath many woody Branches, covered with thin brown out-bark, and green underneath, winding about what it takes hold on; the Leafs are at the Joynts, consisting of three parts of it notched; on one side, and some on both; the Flowers appear from the Joynts on long foot-stalks, standing like Crosses, of a sullen dark Red; the outward Leafs broad, and the inward folded like a Button, so that the outward ones fall off before the inward ones spread themselves, this is proper to be supported against a wall, and such of the small Branches as die in Winter, prune off in the end of March.

*Marum, or Herb Mastick.*

This rises about a foot high, with hard stiff stalks, and the many Branches into which it divides it self, are set with fine Green small Leafs, two at a Joynt, at the top of the Branches it sends forth small white Flowers, and among the Tufts downy threads; all the Plant, as well as Flowers, being of a curious scent, and may be improved by Slips set in April.

*The Autumn Mountain Crocus.*

This is of a pale Blue colour, it stands on short foot-stalks, appearing but little above ground, but soon grows a little higher, and is prized, because it comes when other Flowers are going out being of a curious softness.

*The Silver cupped Spanish Moly.*

This appears with two or three long rush-like leaves, fading when the stalk is at its height, that aspiring a yard or more, bearing a considerable head of Flowers that soon open, grow on long foot-stalks, and spread much, the Flowers being of the colour of Silver, with lines down them on both sides, the Leaves fashioned small and hollow in the manner of an Encrease-well, with little trouble.

*The Great yellow Freziliary.*

This has a stalk about two foot high, the Flower is long, small, and of a pale Yellow, and is well in com-  
pature of a Garden among May-flowers, whose number is as numerous as various.

As for these last, Reader, I have given you most of them in the *English* Names; as for the Months Flowers blow in, I have set them down particularly, as you will find in this Book, in the Months adapted to the *Flower-Garden*; so that nothing may be omitted to satisfy the Reader in his Curiosity.



---

H, J, M

# GARDENER'S ALMANACK.

For what is necessary to be  
done in the *Green-House*,  
and *Conservatory*, in Pre-  
serving and well Ordering  
choice Shrubs, Plants, Flo-  
wers, &c. with the time of  
Houseing, &c.

---

**G**reens, as well as Flowers, are to be considered, and  
care taken of them, because they are not only  
pleasant to the Site of a Garden, but serve for  
many profitable uses, besides Adornment and Fragrancy.  
Therefore,



In MARCH,

*What things are proper to be done.*

**P**lant Box in Parterres, Sow Bay-seeds, Fir-seeds, Phillyrea, Alaternus, and most Perennial Greens; and after the Equinox a few days, prune Pine and Fir-Trees; Sow towards the end of the Month Myrtle-Berries steeped a while in warm water.

Wrap with Straw-wicks the Tops of thorn Cyprus; cover with Straw, or Peashawm, your exposed Evergreens, as also Bays, Cyprus, Phillyrea, Pine, Fir, &c. that are Seedlings, till they have continued in the Nursery about three years, and are capable of being Transplanted, lest the sharp Winds too much dry and injure them; and uncover them not till the latter end of the Month, or the ray of the Frost be pretty well over; especially the Evergreens, lest the Wind and Sun conspire to wither and destroy them; and this you may do in bleak Winds, or sharp Frosts all the Winter.

At the latter end of this Month you may set your Orange-Trees, Myrtles, Lemon-Trees, Ammonius, Dates, Lentisci, Olenders, Aloes, and such like Plants, that are tender and impatient of cold, in the Porches of your Conservatory: and if the Weather be mild and warm, the sharp Frosts and Winds being over, you may open the Windows and Doors, but do it gradually, and not altogether, and trust not to the leaving them open a nights, unless the season be very well settled; and some hardy Evergreens may be Transplanted, if the season be warm and temperate. It is also a proper time to raise Stocks to bud Lemmons and Oranges on; and to do it set the Seeds early in the Month, in Pots, half a dozen of the Seeds of Civil Oranges may be placed in a Pot filled with Earth, viz.

That Earth which is taken the first half Spit under the Turf, in rich Pasture-ground, where Cattel have much been fothered, and mix of rotten Cow-dung one part with it, and if then it happen to be too stiff, sift moderately a little Lime and rotten wood, or sticks of willows; and for binding, if occasion requires it, add a little Loamy Earth, and plunge the pots into hot beds, which may be renewed in *May*, and so ere Winter the shoots will be near a foot, and in three years fit to inoculate, which at the end of this Month you may also bud, by placing two Buds opposite one to the other, not above an Inch from the Earth.

---

## IN APRIL,

### *What things are proper to be done.*

**T**HIS Month. Sow Phillyrea, Pine-Kernels, Fir-seeds, Alternus, and the most sorts of Perennial Greens. Take your tender and choice Shrubs of the Conservatory, and air them in a fair day, and about the middle of the Month, if the Weather be fair and temperate, else let them remain till *May*; and when you see occasion to water them, about four Gallons of warm-water will serve to do about Trees, but let it be Rain or Pond-water, which will most nourish them.

You may also graft your tender Shrubs, and the like, by approach, as Jesamines, Pomgranades, Oranges, Lemmons, and the like.

Towards the end of the Month will be a proper season to remove and transplant Oleanders, Myrtles, Spanish Jesamine, young Orange-Plants, Pomgranades, &c. first suffering them to sprout, placing them about a Fortnight in the shade; Refresh and trim them, as also Spanish Jesamine, within an Inch or two of the Stock, when it begins



## Early the Gardener's Assistant. 1757

to put out or shoot. If the cold Winds are passed, towards the end of the Month, after gentle showers, 296. Clyp Barba-Jovis, Box, Cyprus, Myrtle, Phillyrea, Alternus; and to prevent Box smelling after it is Clyped, water it immediately, and the scent will vanish.

### In M A Y,

#### *What things are proper to be done.*

**B**Ring forth your Orange-Trees, Remove and Transplant them. See the particular manner of it in what relates to Orchard-management of Fruit-Trees.

Give such Houfed-shrubs and Plants as you think not convenient to bring yet abroad fresh Earth at the surface, a handul deep, or somewhat more, loosening the rest of the Earth with a forked Stick, without bruising or wounding the Roots.

Brush and cleanse the Leafs of your Plants, from dust, or some other ill conveniencies they have gathered in the Green-house; and if you neither remove nor transplant them, take off the surface of the old Earth, and finely sift on some rotten old Cow dung.

For the several sorts of Greens, except Oranges and Lemmons, you need not in taking up to transplant them, or trim the Roots much, unless they are very much intangled or matted; and as they encrease in growth and stature, remove them into larger Pots or Cases, and put lesser into those you remove them out of, and this need not be done above once in two or three years.



Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate

Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate

Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate

**N**OW Inoculate Roses, Jesamine, and some other  
 choice Shrubs; set Slips of Myrtle in cold moist  
 ground, and they will the better take Root. Likewise by  
 Slips you may multiply Cytilus-Innatus in Ground that is  
 moderately moist, but let them not exceed a handful in  
 length, and be of the same Spring; and use this Month  
 neither Seeds nor Layers of them; Water now such things  
 as require it; Trim up your Knots, and put every thing  
 in order that by defect, accident, or luxuriance have in-  
 tangled, or put themselves out of decency, or regular  
 form, and proceed to place the spreading shoots, or ten-  
 der Slip of this years growth in your Verdant Bowes, or  
 Arbours.

Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate

Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate

**J U L Y**  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate  
 Inarch, first, by a sharp, and moderate

**Y**OU may this Month continue to Slip Myrtle,  
 Lawrels, and other useful Greens. Water Shrubs  
 newly Planted, as also Layers of Granads, Myrtle,  
 Orange-Trees, Anomum; which Shrub must be frequent-  
 ly watered, and cannot well be done too much, requiring  
 likewise very much Compass to support it, as do also the  
 Granades and Myrtles; so that take care when you trim  
 their Roots, or change their Earth, that you give them  
 the fattest and most natural Soil.

Inarch,

Inarch, graft by Approach, and inoculate Oranges, Jefamine, and other curious Shrubs: Take up Antumnal Cyclamen, gather the early Seeds of it, and sow it in Pots.

About the latter End of this Month lay new Earth on the Surface of the Cases wherein your Orange-trees are planted, and cool them as much as you can, and plunge your Pots in cool Earth to avoid the excessive heat of the Sun.

## IN AUGUST.

*What things are proper to be done, &c.*

**T**HE beginning of this Month is the proper Season for success in building of Orange-trees: Therefore inoculate seedling Stocks of about 3 or 4 Years growth; and to have good Buds for this purpose, take off the head of an old Orange-tree that is of a good kind, which will furnish you with the best, by making large Shoots.

About the 24th of this Month is a proper and very safe Season to remove and lay your Perennial Greens, Lemmons, Oranges, Myrtles, Oleanders, Phillyreas, Pomegranads, Monthly Roses, Arbutus, Jesmims, and other choice Shrubs, and such as ill endure the Frost; peg the Shoot and Branch of the last Spring in very fertile Earth, water them as you see occasion, during the Summer; and when this Time comes again the next Year, you may transplant or remove them into fit Earth, set in the shade with moderate Moisture, but not too much, lest it rot the young Fibres; and then at 3 Weeks end place them in a more airy station, but not till fifteen Days after; you ought not to venture them in the Sun, especially if it shine hot.



## IN SEPTEMBER.

*Things proper to be done, &c.*

**P**lant Irish-chalcidon, and Cyclamen, continue to sow Phillyrea and Alternus, and Annuals that are not impaired by the Frost.

Prune Pines and Fir-trees some-what after the Equinoctial, if it was not done in March; for I prefer that Month as a properer Season.

About *Michaelmas*, later or sooner, as the Weather proves seasonable, fair, without Fogs or great Mists, is a proper Time to retire your tender Greens, &c. observing at the same Time that they be dry on the Leafs, &c. as Lemmons, Oranges, Indian, and Spanish Jessamine, Dates, Lemon-Clusi, Aloes, Sedums, Oleanders, Barba-Jovis, Citylus, Lunatus, Amomum, Plin, Chocmeleatricoccos; put them into your Conservatory with fresh Mould, stirred amongst that which is on the Top of their Cases and Boxes; then add rich and well consumed Soil, for their better nourishment during the Winter, but you need not shut the Doors and Windows of the House, till the Cold is much more increased, and by its sharpness gives you warning to do it: As for Myrtles they may be left abroad till the latter End of October.



## IN OCTOBER.

### *Things proper to be done, &c.*

**I**N this Month you may sow Cyprus, if the Frost be not rife, but do not much clip your Shrubs of any kind; sow Alternus and Philligra-seeds, and look after your Green-house to place all things in good Order, and clear them of dead or decaying Leafs, or any other Annoyances; and remove such things as are yet abroad, according to their Degrees bearing Cold, into shelter; and put Dung to the Roots of such as are yet left abroad, but not too much, nor too hot, lest it injure them to too much heat, so that they will be the less able.

## IN NOVEMBER.

### *Things proper to be done, &c.*

**T**HIS Month cover your young exposed Evergreens with Straw or Hawme, if the Winds be very sharp, lest they be dried up and spoiled; and quite enclose your tender Plants, Peranual-Greens, and choice Shrubs, if the Frosts come on in your Conservatory, excluding particularly the cold Winds; and if they there appear very dry, and not freezing, you may water them with Water qualified with Cow or Sheeps-dung some-what warmed.

Plant Roses, Althea-frutex, Citysus, and sow stony Seeds.

You may now plant Forrest-trees for Walks, to make a curious green Shade in their proper Seasons, either in Walks or Avenues, and cover your tender Greens in the Nursery, with Mattrisses and warm Straw.

## IN DECEMBER.

### Things proper to be done, &c.

**I**N this Month little can be expected to be done as to Gardening, and therefore may be termed to the careful Gardener a Month of Rest; wherein he ought to take care of himself in providing wholesome, nourishing Diet, warm Cloaths and good Fires; yet let him look after such things as yet require his Care, especially in the Green-house, or Conservatory, which now will prove an easie Task, the main being to keep the Windows and Doors well closed, and lined with Matts or other Conveniencies, to prevent the piercing Air entering through the Crevices; for now the Orange-trees are most likely to be in danger, and therefore if the Weather be extream, assist them with the kindly heat of Fire, but not too much, for that does more harm than cold.

Set dropping ripe Baberries, and Pine-kernals in a good mellow Mould, and see what else is requisite; and so I conclude the Year with my wishes, that the honest Gardener's undertakings may be always successful and prosperous.



THE  
GREEN-HOUSE  
AND  
CONSERVATORY  
FOR THE

Preservation of Plants, Shrubs, Choice Flowers, &c. From Winds, Frosts, or cold Airs that would otherwise chill and destroy them.

**G**reens that last all the Year are for the most part not to be kept without great Care, sometimes abroad, and sometimes in the Conservatory; and since few Books give any satisfactory Account of, to accommodate the English Gardener: I conceived it highly necessary to place such Rules and Directions on that occasion at the latter End of this Work, as cannot chuse but make it more acceptable to the Ingenious, than any that have gone before it.

That a Green-House or Conservatory to preserve choice Greens and Flowers from the nipping Winds or chilling Frosts, I cannot conceive any that deal this way are ignorant, though some are for having it in one Fashion, and others in another; and indeed I shall not undertake to contradict Fancy in this matter, yet there remains something to be said that many are ignorant of, and being known and put in practice, may highly conduce to their Advantage.

Con-



Consider then that free breathing Air is that which continues the life and growth of Plants, as well as Animals, and where they are stifled and kept in too close, though with Heat and subterranean Fires, as Stows, &c. in the cold Weather, as many use for want of free Air to breath, they express a Languor by the parching of the Brims of the Leafs; and sometimes a Decay and Dryness of the whole Leaf, which could they have moderate Heat and Air to pass in and out moderately for their Refreshment, would be remedied, and this can be done no better than by Earthen pipes conveniently placed, some in a Stow set on the out-side of the House, conducting Heat, and others conveniently placed to let out the stagnated or sulphurous Air that sickens the Plants, and let in that which is fresh and pure to revive and refresh them, that they may continue and flourish, at least keep their lively Verdure; and this is far better than Pans of Charcoal, or Stows within, that corrupt and stifle the Air; and such a Stow may be erected with a Chimney or Funnel, a Fire-hearth, and an Ash-hole at a moderate Price, and the Expence of much less Fewel than the others; the Pipes to let in Heat need not exceed three, and one or two of them as occasion requires, may sometimes be stopped, as less or more Heat is requisite, the Season being very sharp or relenting, and so may you order those of the like Number, to let in and out the Air.

In this House you must have your Door and Windows to the South; and the Door that is placed in the side of it requires a Porch, with another Door matted, to keep the Crevices, and shutting Close, so that going in or out one Door may be shut upon you before the other is opened, that the cold Air may be kept out, that otherwise would rush in with much Violence.

As for the Windows they must have wooden Shutters, as well as Sashes of Glass well framed in, that when the Cold is extream they may be totally shut up; and when there is relentings or Sun-shiny Days, the wooden Shutters may in the Day-time by degrees be opened to let in the Sun and Air more freely, but not the Glass ones be drawn up, unless it proves very warm and sunshiny, and then

## With the Gardener's Almanack. 163

then not too suddenly but with Caution, and Discretion, that the Plants may take it kindly, and not find too sudden an Alteration in the change of the Air, which may prove very prejudicial.

So range your Pots and Cases wherein your choice Plants and Flowers stand, that each may receive a Benefit of Air, and warmth according to its Degree, but not so near as to interfere or intangle with one another, for then they will keep in the contaminated, thick or gross Air, and there will be no free breathing amongst them; as in this Case there ought to preserve a Vivacity or Liveliness in them.

The Greens require little watering in the Conservatory, or Green House, and many of them none; as Aloes, and the like; because it makes them sickly and fading, the Air being sufficient to moisten them, especially in the cold Season; and when by the curling and withering of the Leafs you find a Necessity to do it, warm the Water, and mix it a little with Pigeons or Poultry's Dung; pour it on moderately some Distance from the Roots, that it may leisurely soak to them, and not in any abundance.

Take off such Leafs as wither or grow dry, and stir the Stalk or Bole of the Plant gently, that the Root may be a little loose to have the freer breathing of Air; open the Mould a little on the Top, and sprinkle fresh Mould on the Surface, and over that a small scattering of warm Dung; and if any Weeds or Grass grow up, take them away, smoothing over the place again, keeping such a distance between your Rows of your Pots or Cases placed on Forms, Stools, Tables, or the like, that you may easily pass between them to do any Office that is required for their Commodity or Advantage.

Spread at the bottom of your Green House, Wood-Ashes finely sifted, and over them lay dried Rushes, and they will suck up the Damps apt to arise out of the Earth, and add a considerable Warmth to the place.

Let the Cieling be low to reflect the Heat that proceeds from the Stow, and hang it about with Linley-woolsey-bays, or some such coarse Stuffs which will take off



off the Cold that is subject to penetrate the Walls, and prevent their Mustiness often occasioned by sweating after Frosts, or some relentings of Frosts, foggy Weather, or immoderate Rains, when the Air is thick and gross; and likewise add a considerable warmth for the preservation of such things as are the most tender: It matters not at which End of your House you erect your Stow, whether East or West, so it be in a convenient place. It may be made of Stone or Brick to be erected four Square of the ordinary size, of a single plain Furnace, like that of a Chymist, used in his Laboratory, usual there for common Operation, consisting of an Ashole and Fire-hearth, which may take up about two Foot from out to out: Yet so it must stand that the Grate or Fire-hearth may be about a Yard above the Floor or Area of the Green-house, that thereby the Heat coming through the Pipes conveniently placed, may be the more level, and even dispersed to the Middle, Bottom and Top of the House, that every part may participate as much as is convenient of it; and in this good ordering, even in the Cold of Winter, you will perceive many of your Greens to shoot out and flourish, some blossom, and some produce Fruit, many Flowers blow to admiration; as if, by this reviving Heat and good Manage an Artificial Spring of Summer was produced, which, will much redound to the Credit and Profit of a Gardener, especially such as manage these Affairs for the Nobility and Gentry of the Kingdom, who are curious in them, and take pleasure to see what they cannot reasonably expect at such a Season.

819

Thus Reader, I hope I have fulfilled my Undertaking, in omitting nothing that might materially conduce to the well ordering of an Orchard or Garden, pleasant and profitable to the Owners, in all their Particulars and Niceties; so that an indifferent understanding Man may reach and comprehend the Instructions laid down, which being put in practice as the Seasons are specified, cannot but render a Gardener Acceptable.

F I N I S.





# CONTENTS.

- T**HE New Art of Gardening, with the Gardeners Almanack: In what is necessary for the well ordering of Orchards and Gardens, &c. Page 1
- Chap. I. Of the good site of a piece of Ground, intended for an Orchard, &c. P. 3
- Chap. II. What soil is most fit for an Orchard, and the ordering it in that kind P. 4
- Chap. III. Quantity of Ground, and shape, manner of fencing, and other Matters tending to the preservation of your Orchard: P. 6
- Chap. IV. Sets, how to be chosen and ordered, either to grow up to Trees, or to be grafted on, &c. P. 7
- Chap. V. Proper times for planting and removing; with the manner of setting the distance, and placing of Trees, &c. P. 10
- Chap. VI. General Directions for the right ordering, keeping and preserving of an Orchard P. 12
- Chap. VII. Rules and approved Directions for grafting after the best and most thriving Method P. 15
- Chap. VIII. Times proper for grafting; how to choose the best Grafts; the way of keeping and ordering them P. 17
- Chap. IX. Other ways relating to grafting, as incising, packing on, inoculating, grafting in Scutcheon, &c. P. 18
- Chap. X. Of the Apple-trees, how grafted and ordered, the Advantages accruing thereby, &c. P. 20
- Chap. XI. Of the Pear-tree, how grafted, ordered and improved, &c. P. 24
- Chap. XII. Of the Quince-tree, how ordered, grafted, improved, &c. P. 33
- Chap. XIII. Of the Medlar and Service-tree, how ordered, grafted, improved, &c. P. 35
- Chap. XIV.

# The CONTENTS.

Chap. XIV. Of the Pomegranate-tree, how it must be ordered, grafted, and improved	p. 26
Chap. XV. Of the Citron, or Limon-tree; how planted, and improved	p. 27
Chap. XVI. Of the Mulberry-tree, how ordered, planted, grafted, and improved	p. 28
Chap. XVII. Of the Orchard, Hazelnut, and Philbert-trees, their Improvement	p. 30
Chap. XVIII. Of the Walnut-tree, and common Nut-tree, how to order them	p. 31
Chap. XIX. Of the Chesnut-tree, and Pine-tree	p. 32
Chap. XX. How to order and improve Cherry-trees	p. 33
Chap. XXI. Of Plum-trees, and how to order them	p. 34
Chap. XXII. Of the Peach-tree, and its ordering, &c. Also of the Abricot-tree	p. 35
Chap. XXIII. Of the Date-tree, and how it may be propagated	p. 37
Of the Almon-tree. Of the Barberry-tree. Of the Goosberry, and Current-trees	p. 38
Of the Raspberry-tree. Of the Fig-tree	p. 39
Of the Cornelian Cherry-tree, and Orange-tree	p. 40
Chap. XXIV. Wall-fruit trees, how best to order them. Their Virtues, &c.	p. 41
Of the Abricot-tree	p. 42
Of the Peach-trees, Nectarins, Malacottoons, &c.	p. 43
Of Plum-trees. Of the Fig-tree	p. 44
Of the Current-tree, as Wall-fruit. Chap. XXV. The best ordering and right dressing of Fruit-trees, for their better thriving	p. 45
Chap. XXVI. Soil proper for remedying Diseases in Fruit-trees, and destroying Vermin and Insects that infect them, &c.	p. 48
Chap. XXVII. Of Nurseries for Stocks, and their Improvement	p. 51
Chap. XXVIII. Some further observations in transplanting of Fruit-trees, with the Errors of some thereto discovered	p. 53
The Gardener's Almanack; containing what is to be done in, or relating to the Orchard in their proper Seasons throughout the Year, in each particular Month	From p. 56, to p. 72
The best and safest Way to gather Summer and Winter-fruit for keeping, and how to order them for that purpose	p. 73



# The CONTENTS

To gather and order other Stone-fruit. To gather Pears the Best Way	P. 74
To gather and order Apples in the best manner	P. 75
To gather and secure Quinces from rotting, &c. To gather and keep Medlars and Services	P. 76
Of the Fruit-Lost, stowing and managing Fruit for keeping	P. 77
To make Cider	P. 79
Perry, the best way to make it	P. 80
To make Wine of Grapes. To make Wine of Cherries	P. 81
To make a good Wine of Currants. To make excellent Gooseberry-Wine. To make Raspberry-Wine	P. 82
To make Mulberry-Wine. To make Wine of Services	P. 83
Of gardening; and first of the Kitchen-garden. What is necessary to be done and observed therein for setting, sowing, rearing, and bringing to Perfection, Seeds, Herbs, Plants, Roots, &c.	P. 85
Further Directions for the well-ordering this kind of Garden in many material particulars: In its sight and furnishing with Herbs, Plants, &c.	P. 88
Several growths of Herbs and Plants distinguished, to know the better how to place them	P. 90
Sundry sorts of useful Herbs, the Increase, well-ordering, and preserving, &c.	P. 91
Rules in general for ordering Herbs, &c.	P. 93
Of Roots proper for the Kitchen-garden, their well-ordering and Improvement	P. 94
Beans, Pease, Artichocks, Asparagus, Cabages, Colliflowers, Savoys, Lettice, &c. to order and improve	P. 96
Hot Beds, how to prepare and fit them for such things as require to be set in them	P. 101
Watering, the proper times; and what Plants, Herbs, &c. most require it, and in what Seasons	P. 103
The several Sorts of Strawberries, the manner of setting, transplanting, and improving them	P. 104
The Gardener's Almanack; Or, things proper to be done in the Kitchen-garden in the several Months of the Year	From P. 106, to p. 117
How to know particular Flowers that will alter for the best Ib. Choice Directions for sowing of Seed and setting, &c.	P. 118
Things	



# The CONTENTS.

Things convenient to be considered in the manner of Laying, &c. p. 119

Artificial Seta, how to make them. To change the Colour of Flowers when in Blossom, &c. p. 120

A few useful Observations from Astrology p. 121

The Gardener's Almanack; directing what is to be done in the Flower-garden, &c. in the several Months throughout the Year, &c. From p. 122, to p. 138

Flowers blowing this Month, or continuing Ibid.

Flowers, Shrubs, and choice Plants, enduring several Degrees of Cold, how they are to be preserved. Flowers and Plants not dying but by extreame Cold p. 139

Flowers and Plants enduring the second Degree of Cold. --- Flowers and Plants the least of all enduring Cold p. 140

A further Description of Flowers as to their Shapes and Colours From p. 142, to p. 151

The Gardener's Almanack; for what is necessary to be done in the Green house, and Conservatory, in preserving and well-ordering choice Shrubs, Plants, Flowers, &c. with the time of Hoofing, &c. From p. 152, to p. 160

The Green house and Conservatory for the Preservation of Plants, Shrubs, choice Flowers, &c. from Winds, Frosts, or cold Airs that would otherwise chill and destroy them From p. 161, to p. 164



The End of the Contents.

## ADVERTISEMENT.

**S**ETS of Cuts for Bibles, in *Folio*, *Quarto*, and *Octavo*, curiously engraven on Copper, containing near two hundred Plates, are now sold to Booksellers at a cheaper Price than usual, viz. The *Folio* at 9 s. The *Quarto* at 7 s. 6 d. The *Octavo* at 6 s. Also various Bibles of the several Volumes, fit for the said Cuts to bind. By Henry Nelme, at the Leg and Star in Cornhill.

Where Gentlemen, or others, may be furnished with the said Bibles ready Bound, either with or without Cuts: Also Common-Prayers, with the best Cuts Extant.

At the said place, may Country-chapmen be furnished with all sorts of Bibles, Common-Prayer-Books, Testaments, Hymners, Primers, Horn-Books; or other Saleable Chapmen's Books.

---

*BOOKS newly Published, and Sold by Henry Nelme, at the Leg and Star in Cornhill.*

**S**ION in distress: Or, The Groans of the Protestant Church for many Ages past, under the cruel Tyranny of Popish Persecution, and merciless Torments. As also the Marks of the Anti-christian *Romish* Church; the Arraignment of the *Scarlet-Whore*, and the Complaints of the Persecuted Nations against her, from the Primitive Times, down to the Year 1680; with her final Doom and Sentence. To which is newly added, *Sion's* Relief, and joyfull Triumph over all her Enemies, under the Reign of His Sacred Majesty, K. *William III.* Price bound 1 s.

The New Help to Discourse: Or, Wit and Mirth intermixt with more serious Matters. Together with the Country-man's Guide; containing Directions for the true Knowledge of several Matters concerning Astronomy and Husbandry, in a more plain and easie Method than any yet Extant: By *W. W. Gent.* The fourth Edition, with many new Additions. Price bound, 1 s.



*Books Printed for H. Nelme.*

An Essay on the Agreeableness of the Christian Faith with Natural Reason: By way of Dialogue. Written in Latin by *Sebastianus Castellio*; with his Apology for himself: Englished by C. B. Price bound, 1 s.

*Hugo Grotius's* second Part of the Truth of Christian Religion: Or, The Confutation of Paganism, Judaism, and Mahometism. Translated by C. B. a Divine of the Church of England: Exemplified by Memorials of the truly Pious and Christian Lives of Alderman *Wharmore*, Bishop *Wilkins*, Bishop *Reynolds*, Alderman *Adams*: By the same Author. Price bound, 1 s.

Christ's famous Titles, and a Believer's Golden Chain, handled in divers Sermons; together with his Cabinet of Jewels, or a glimpse of *Sion's* Glory: As also, Christ's Voice to *London*. The great Day of God's Wrath. The Necessity of Watching and Praying, with a Treatise of Death: By *W. Dyer*. Price bound, 1 s.

Supplications of Saints, a Book of Prayers and Praises, in four Parts: By *T. Sorecold*. Price bound, 1 s.

The Secretary in Fashion: Or, Instructions for writing Letters. Price bound, 2 s.

Familiar Letters on several occasions: Written by Mr. *Dryden*, Mr. *Wycherly*, Mr. *Congreve*, Mr. ———— Mr. *Dennis*, with some passionate Love-letters; and a Translation of *Voiture's* Letters; by Mr. *Dryden*, and Mr. *Dennis*. Price bound, 2 s. 6 d.

*Alexander and Philocrates*: Or, The Pleasures and Disquietudes of Marriage. A Novel. Price bound, 1 s.

Love in Distress; Or, The lucky Discovery. A Novel. Written by the Honourable, the Lady ———— Price bound, 1 s.

The Child's Instructor, leading to true Spelling and Reading English; with useful Counsel and weighty Arguments, perswading them to Remember their Creator in the days of their Youth. Also a Confession of Faith, and Catechism for younger People: By *B. Keech*. Price bound, 4 d.

The Sinner's Tears, in Meditations and Prayers: By *T. Fettiplace*. Price bound, 1 s.

A Dictionary of hard English Words, with their Interpretation: By *E. Cotes*. Price bound, 1 s. 6 d. The



*Books Printed for H. Nelme.*

The newest, plainest, and the shortest Short-hand, containing, 1. A brief Account of all the Short-hands already Extant; with their Alphabets and fundamental Rules. 2. A plain and easie Method for Beginners, less burthensome to the Memory than any other. 3. A new Invention for contracting Words, with special Rules for contracting Sentences, and other ingenious Fancies, both pleasant and profitable unto all, let their Character be whose, or what it will: By *E. Cotes*. Price stitched, 1 s.

The manner of raising, ordering, and improving Forest and Fruit-trees: Also how to plant, and keep Woods, Walks, Avenues, Lawns, Hedges, &c. With several Figures in Copper-plates, proper for the same. Also Rules and Tables, shewing how the ingenious Planter may measure superficial Figures, with Rules how to divide Woods or Land, and how to measure Timber and other solid Bodies, either by Arithmetick or Geometry, shewing the use of that most excellent Line, the Line of Number, by several new Examples, with many other Rules useful for most Men: By *Moses Cook*, Gardener to that great Encourager of Planting, the Right Honourable the Earl of *Essex*. Whereunto is now added, that ingenious Treatise of *Mr. Gabriel Platt's*, viz. A Discovery of Subterranean Treasure. Price bound, 2 s.

Certain Sermons, or Homilies appointed to be read in Churches, in the Time of *Q. Elizabeth*, in Folio, of a large Roman Print. Price bound, 6 s.

The Anatomy of Melancholy, what it is; with the Kinds, Causes, Symptoms, Prognosticks, and several Cures of it: By *Democritus*, Jun. Price bound, 10 s.

The Gentleman's compleat Jockey: Or, Experienced Horseman, or Farrier; containing all things relating to Horses: By *A. S.* Price bound, 1 s.

The Husbandman, Farmer, and Grazier's compleat Instructor, in feeding, breeding, buying, and selling Cattle; with approved Remedies for all Diseases and Grievances incident to them; Viz. Bulls, Cows, Calves, Oxen, Sheep, Goats, Hogs, and all other Domestick Cattle, and Poultry, with the experienced Vermin-killer. Price bound, 1 s.

*Books Printed for H. Nelme.*

*Clavis Bibliorum*: The Key of the Bible, unlocking the richest Treasures of the Holy Scriptures: By Francis Rous, D. D. Price bound, 7 s.

The compleat *English* School-master, or the most natural and easie Method of spelling *English*: By E. Cole, Author of the *English* Dictionary. Price bound, 1 s.

The Comical and Tragical History of *Fernando*; Wherein is contained his Birth, Travels, Adventures, last Will and Testament to his two Sons, to whom he bequeathed his Purse and Wishing-cap; as also their Lives and Deaths. Translated from the Original, with some Additions, taken out of other Books relating to this History: Illustrated with divers Pictures.

Mr. *Rutherford's* Letters, The third Edition. Now divided in three Parts: The first containing those which were written from *Aberdeen*, where he was confined by a Sentence of the High Commission, drawn forth against him, partly upon the Account of his declining them, partly upon the Account of his Non-conformity: The second and third containing some, which were written from *Ameth*, before he was by the Prelates persecution thrust from his Ministry; and others upon occasions afterward, from *St. Andrews*, *London*, &c. by a Well-wisher to the Work, and People of God. Price bound, 3 s. 6 d.

The Christian's daily Walk in Holy Security and Peace; being an Answer to these two Questions. 1. How a Man may do each present Day's Work with Christian Cheerfulness? 2. How to bear each present Day's Cross with Christian Patience? shewing, 1. How to walk with God in the whole course of a Man's Life. 2. How to be upright in the said walking. 3. How to live without taking Care or Thought in any thing. 4. How to get and keep true Peace with God; wherein are manifold Helps to prevent and remove damnable Presumption; also to quiet and ease distressed Consciences: By *Hen. Scudder*. Price bound, 2 s.

A Looking-glass for Persecutors; containing Multitudes of Examples of God's severe, but righteous Judgments, upon bloody and merciless Haters of his Children in all Times,



## Books Printed for H. Nalme:

**Times, from the beginning of the World to this present Age:** Collected out of the Sacred Scriptures, and other Ecclesiastical Writers, both Ancient and Modern. The second Edition: By *Sam. Clark*, Minister. Price bound, 1 s.

**The English Academy:** Or, A brief Introduction to the seven liberal Arts. Grammar, Arithmetick, Geometry, Musick, Astronomy, Rhetorick, and Logick: To which is added the Necessary Arts and Mysteries of Navigation, Dialling, Surveying, Mensuration, Gauging, and Fortification; practically laid down in all their material Points and Particulars, highly approved to be known by the Ingenious, and such as are desirous to profit, or render themselves accomplished; chiefly intended for the Instruction of young Scholars, who are acquainted with no other than their Native Language; but may also be very useful to other Persons that have made some progress in the Studies of the said Arts. The second Edition: By *John Newton*, D. D. Price bound, 1 s.

**A Call to the Unconverted to turn and live** And accept of Mercy while Mercy may be had, as *er* they would find Mercy in the Day of Extremity from t. *Living* God, by his unworthy Servant, *Richard Baxter*. The fix and twentieth Edition, with the Addition of 10. Prayers. Price bound, 1 s.

**Apples of Gold for young Men and W. ien, and a Crown of Glory for old Men and Women:** Or, The happiness of being good betimes; and the honour of being an old Disciple; clearly and fully discovered, and closely and faithfully applied; Also the young Man's Objections answered, and the old Man's Doubts resolved: By *Tho. Brooks*. The seventeenth Edition. Price bound, 1 s. 6 d.

**A New System of the Apocalypse, or plain and methodical Illustrations of all the Visions in the Revelation of St. John.** Written by a French Minister. Price bound, 1 s.

**Index Biblicus:** Or, an exact Concordance to the Holy Bible, according to the last Translation: By *J. Jackson*. Price bound, 4 s.

*Iatrica:*



*Books Printed for H. Nelme.*

*Latrica: Seu Praxis Medendi.* The Practice of curing Diseases: Being a Medical History of near two hundred famous Observations in the Cure of Diseases, performed by the Author hereof. Whereunto is added, by way of *Scholæ*, a compleat Theory, or Method of Precepts, wherein the Names, Definitions, Kinds, Signs, Causes, Prognosticks, and various Ways of Cure are methodically instituted, digested, and reduced to vulgar Practice. To which is newly added as an Appendix, Observations upon the Lethargy, *Carus*, Frenzy, Madness, Defects of the Internal Senses, and Hurts of the External Senses: with several Remarks worthy Consideration, and a Catalogue of the Author's Works: A Work of singular Use to all the Practisers of the Art of Physick and Chyrurgery, whether Physicians, Chyrurgeons, Apothecaries, or charitable and well-disposed Gentlemen and Ladies, who have espoused the Afflictions of the Poor and Needy: By *W. Salmon*. Price bound, 6 s.

A Word to Sinners, and a Word to Saints: The former tending to the awakening the Conscience of secure Sinners unto a lively Sense and Apprehension of a dreadful Condition they are in, so long as they live in their natural and unregenerate Estate. The latter tending to the directing and perswading of the Godly and Regenerate unto several singular Duties: By *Tho. Gouge*, Minister of the Gospel. Price bound, 1 s.

The Poor Man's Family-Book, 1. Teaching him how to become a true Christian. 2. How to live as a Christian, towards God, himself, and others, in all his Relations; especially in his Family. 3. How to Die as a Christian in Hope and Comfort, and so to be Glorified with Christ for ever: In plain familiar Conference between a Teacher and a Learner. With a form of Exhortation to the Sick: Two Catechisms, a Profession of Christianity, Forms of Prayer for various uses, and some Psalms and Hymns for the Lords Day. With a request to Landlords and Rich men to give to their Tenants and poor Neighbours, either this or some fitter Book. By *R. Baxter*. Price bound 1 s.

English

## Books Printed for H. Nelme:

English Liberties : Or, the Free-Born Subject's Inheritance, containing, 1. *Magna Charta* : The *Petition of Right* : The *Habeas Corpus Act* ; and divers other most useful Statutes : With large Comments upon each of them. 2. The Proceedings in *Appeals of Murder* ; The Work and Power of *Parliaments* ; The *Qualifications* necessary for such as should be chosen to that great Trust. As also the Oath and Duty of Grand and Petty Juries. 3. The Terms of Liberty of Conscience, confirmed to Protestant Dissenters, by Act of Parliament, in the second Year of the Reign of our gracious Sovereign Lord and Lady King *William* and Queen *Mary*. 4. An Abstract of the Penal Laws against Popish Recusants, Priests and Jesuits, &c. 5. The Office and Duty of a Constable, Church-warden, Surveyer of the High-ways, or Scavenger, in all their respective Qualifications, in which the meanest Capacity may be enabled and instructed in the Performances of his Office. Price bound, 1 s.

The delightful History of the Life and Death of that Renowned and Famous *St. Patrick*, Champion of *Ireland* ; containing his Heroick Actions, and Valorous Atchievements in *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africk*, with other Remarkable Passages, from his Cradle to his Grave. Price bound, 1 s.

An Infallible Way to Contentment, in the Midst of Publick or Personal Calamities : To which is added Encouragement against the Fear of Fire and Poverty, Evil-Tidings, and Death it self : By the Author of the Devout Communicant : The Third Edition Enlarged. Price bound, 1 s.

The World conquered ; or, A Believers Victory over the World, laid open in several Sermons, on 1 *Joh* 5. 4. By *R. Allein*. Price bound, 2 s.

Immoderate Mourning for the Dead, proved unreasonable and unchristian : Or, Some Considerations of general use to allay our sorrow for Deceased Friends and Relations ; but more especially intended for Comfort to Parents upon the Death of their Children : By *F. Owen*, Price bound, 1 s.

Devil is an Ass. A Comedy acted in the Year, 1616. by the City's Servants. The Author *Ben. Johnson*. The



## Books Printed for H. Nelme.

The Staple of News. A Comedy acted in the Year, 1625.  
By His Majesty's Servants. The Author, Ben. Jonson.  
Price sticht, 1 s.

Bartholomew Fair: A Comedy acted in the Year, 1614.  
By the Lady Elizabeth's Servants; and then dedicated to  
King James, of most blessed Memory: By the Author,  
Ben. Jonson. Price sticht, 1 s.

## School Books Printed for H. Nelme

More English Examples to be turned into Latine, be-  
ginning with Nominative Case and the Verb, as 'tis va-  
ried throughout all the Moods and Tenses, and after fitted  
to the Rules of Grammer. To which are added, Cauti-  
ons for Children to avoid Mistakes in making Latine, &c.  
By Edward Leedes, School-master in Bury St. Edmonds.

Seneca's Tragedies. Printed at Oxford.  
Greek Testament, in 24. of a large Print. Price bound,  
1 s. 6 d.

Lucius Florus, in 24.  
Quintus Curtius, in 24. Price bound, 1 s.

Methodus Græcam Linguam docendi (multa Grammaticorum  
arte omissa) ad Puerorum captum accommodata & ab Edwardo  
Leedes, cui id rei creditum est intræ Scholam Buriensem in  
Pago Suffolciensi, in usum Discipulorum tradita. Price  
bound, 1 s. 6 d.

Catechesis Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, Una cum precibus aliquot se-  
lectis in usum Scholæ Regis Edwardi ejus Nominis Sexti, in  
Burgo Sancti Edmundi. Price 3d.

Joannis Barclaii Argenis. Editio Novissima: Cum clave,  
Hoc est: No ninum propriorum elucidatione hætenus nondum  
edita. Price bound, 1 s. 6 d.

There is now in the Press, and will be speedily  
published these two useful Books.

1. A Compendium of Astrology, with an Astrological  
Practice of Physick: By J. Ball, Student in Physick and  
Astrology. Price bound, 1 s.

2. The Mystery of Husbandry: Or, Arable  
and Wood-land improved. By J. Leonard.  
bound. 1 s.





1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25